LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

B. L. GILDERSTEEVE, Ph.D. (Göttingen), LL.D.,

Professor of Greek in the University of Virginia.

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY,
NEW YORK AND BALTIMORE.
1872.
PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

In this new edition of my Latin Grammar, I have not made any essential change in the Inflections, as I am thoroughly in accord with the wise self-restraint of the German authors, Professors LATTMANN and MÜLLER, who have presented simply the results and not the processes of Comparative Grammar. A few sections and a few notes have been added, and here and there I have allowed myself to vary from the original, but in the main I have kept to the translation, as made by Professor THOMAS R. PRICE, of Randolph Macon College, a scholar whose attainments need no testimonial from me, a man whose friendship I count among my most valued possessions.

To the revision of the Syntax, which was originally based on KRITZ, and largely indebted for its practical features to LATTMANN and MÜLLER, especial attention has been given; and, whilst I have not deviated from the general arrangement, which was dictated by the design of writing a parallel Greek Grammar, the variations in detail are so numerous that this part of the book may be considered a new work.

The orthography has been brought nearer to recent results, but I have not aimed at a painful consistency.

In the treatment of the metres I have had regard to the system of HEINRICH SCHMIDT.

It would be pedantry to enumerate all the grammars that I have consulted, worse than pedantry to acknowledge my obligations to the great
masters of the department, without whose aid no tolerable Latin grammar can be written, and unworthy of the aims of my life to advertise my own efforts or to call attention to the supposed excellences of my own methods.

To all who have encouraged me by their sympathy, or aided me by corrections and suggestions, I am truly grateful. To none do I owe more, both for encouragement and for aid, than to my tried friend and esteemed colleague, Professor Peters, whose acute criticism and practical experience have been of great service to me in the prosecution of my Latin studies.

B. L. GILDERSLLEEVE.

SEPTEMBER, 1872.
## CONTENTS

The references are to the paragraphs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFLECTIONS .................................. 1—191</th>
<th>Stems in a P-mute .......................... 157</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alphabet ................................. 1</td>
<td>Stems in a K-mute .......................... 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowels ..................................... 2</td>
<td>Aspirate Stems in H and V .................. 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consonants ................................. 5</td>
<td>Stems in a T-mute .......................... 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syllables .................................. 6</td>
<td>Liquid Stems ................................ 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantity ................................... 10</td>
<td>Stems in S .................................. 172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accentuation .............................. 14</td>
<td>Stems in U .................................. 173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parts of Speech ........................... 15</td>
<td>Deponents .................................. 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflection .................................. 16</td>
<td>Change of Conjugation ...................... 176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantive .................................. 17</td>
<td>Inchoative Verbs ............................ 181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender ...................................... 18</td>
<td>Irregular Verbs .............................. 183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cases ....................................... 21</td>
<td>Obsolete forms of the Verb ................. 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declensions .................................. 25</td>
<td>SYNTAX ...................................... 192—697</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First ......................................... 27</td>
<td>Syntax of Simple Sentence ................. 193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second ....................................... 29</td>
<td>Nominative and Vocative .................... 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third ................................-------- 38</td>
<td>Concord ..................................... 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth ....................................... 67</td>
<td>Voices ....................................... 203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifth ................................-------- 69</td>
<td>Tenses ....................................... 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek Nouns .................................. 71</td>
<td>Present Tense ................................ 218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular Nouns ......................... 74—81</td>
<td>Imperfect .................................... 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives ..................................... 81</td>
<td>Perfect ..................................... 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison ..................................... 86</td>
<td>Pluperfect .................................. 233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs ....................................... 86</td>
<td>Future ....................................... 234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals ...................................... 92</td>
<td>Future Perfect .............................. 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns .................................... 97</td>
<td>Periphrastic Tenses ......................... 238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb .......................................... 109</td>
<td>Tenses in Letters ............................ 244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjugation of Sum ........................ 112</td>
<td>Moods ....................................... 245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems of Conjugation ................... 116</td>
<td>Indicative .................................. 246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Conjugation .......................... 119</td>
<td>Subjunctive ................................ 247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Conjugation ....................... 123</td>
<td>Imperative .................................. 259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Conjugation ......................... 131</td>
<td>Tenses of Moods and Verbal Nouns .......... 270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Conjugation ....................... 135</td>
<td>Simple Sentence Expanded .................. 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix to Third Conj ................... 139</td>
<td>Multiplication of Subject .................. 281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents of First Conj .................. 141</td>
<td>Qualification of Subject .................. 284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents of Second Conj ................ 143</td>
<td>Attribute ................................... 285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents of Third Conj .................. 145</td>
<td>Demonstrative Pronouns .................... 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deponents of Fourth Conj ................ 147</td>
<td>Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns ... 293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periphrastic Conjugation ............... 149</td>
<td>Possessive Pronouns ....................... 299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations ................................ 151</td>
<td>Indefinite Pronouns ....................... 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Stem ................................ 152</td>
<td>Numerals .................................... 307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect “.................................. 153</td>
<td>Comparatives and Superlatives .......... 811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine “.................................... 154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apposition ............................................... 318</td>
<td>Object Sentences with Particle ....................... 536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicative Attribution, and Apposition ................. 324</td>
<td>Causal Sentences ...................................... 538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplication of Predicate ............................. 325</td>
<td>Sentences of Design and Tendency ..................... 543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualification of Predicate ............................. 326</td>
<td>Final Sentences ....................................... 544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative .............................................. 327</td>
<td>Consecutive Sentences ................................ 553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative ................................................... 343</td>
<td>Temporal Sentences ................................... 561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive ................................................. 357</td>
<td>Antecedent Action .................................... 563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative ............................................... 383</td>
<td>Contemporaneous Action ................................ 570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of Towns and Islands ............................. 410</td>
<td>Prior Action .......................................... 576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions ............................................ 414</td>
<td>Cum (Quam) ............................................ 580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Accusative ...................................... 417</td>
<td>Conditional Sentences ................................ 590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Ablative ......................................... 418</td>
<td>Logical .................................................. 597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Acc. and Abl ................................... 419</td>
<td>Ideal ...................................................... 598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive as a Substantive .............................. 420</td>
<td>Unreal ..................................................... 599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerund and Gerundive .................................. 426</td>
<td>Incomplete .............................................. 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine ................................................... 435</td>
<td>Of Comparison .......................................... 604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb .................................................. 440</td>
<td>Concessive Sentences ................................ 605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negatives ................................................. 442</td>
<td>Relative Sentences .................................... 613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete Sentence ................................... 451</td>
<td>Comparative Sentences ................................ 613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative Sentences ................................ 452</td>
<td>Correlative ............................................. 641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax of Compound Sentence ......................... 474</td>
<td>With atque ............................................. 646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coördination ............................................ 475</td>
<td>With quam ............................................. 647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copulative Sentences ................................... 476</td>
<td>Abridged Sentence ..................................... 648</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adversative Sentences ................................... 485</td>
<td>Infinitive ................................................. 649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disjunctive Sentences ................................... 494</td>
<td>Öratio Obliqua .......................................... 651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Causal and Illative Sentences ......................... 500</td>
<td>Participle ............................................... 669</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subordination ........................................... 505</td>
<td>Arrangement of Words ................................ 671</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence of Tenses ..................................... 510</td>
<td>Arrangement of Clauses ................................ 683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive ................................................ 520</td>
<td>Figures of Syntax ...................................... 685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object Sentences ....................................... 523</td>
<td>Prosody .................................................. 698</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Quod ............................................... 524</td>
<td>Versification ........................................... 723</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With Acc. and Inf .................................. 526</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INFLECTIONS
OF THE
LATIN LANGUAGE,
ON THE BASIS OF LATTMANN AND MÜLLER.

ALPHABET.

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no W.

REMARK.—K is used chiefly in abbreviations—K. (Caeso), Kal. (Calendae). Y and Z occur in Greek words only. Originally, there was no difference in character between I and J, between V and U. In the olden time U did not come after V: servos (servus) equos or eos (equus), quom (cum).

VOWELS.

2. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u; and are divided:
   1. According to their quality, into
      open,  a, e, o.
      close,  i, u.
   2. According to their quantity, into
      short, . . . . . . . . . .
      common, i. e., sometimes short, and sometimes long, -

The following distinction is made:
common: by preference short, -
common: by preference long, -

* In this grammar, every long vowel sound is marked. But see 700 R. 2.
3. **SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.**

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{a} &= a \text{ in father.} & \tilde{o} &= o \text{ in bone.} \\
\tilde{e} &= e \text{ in prey.} & \tilde{u} &= u \text{ in moon.} \\
\tilde{i} &= i \text{ in caprice.} & \tilde{y} &= u \text{ in sûr (French).}
\end{align*}
\]

**Remark.**—The short sounds are only less prolonged in pronunciation than the long sounds, and have no exact English equivalents.

**DIPHTHONGS.**

4. There are but few diphthongs or double sounds in Latin. The theory of the diphthong requires that both elements be heard in a slur. The tendency in Latin was to reduce diphthongs to simple sounds; hence frequent variations in spelling: so *glaeba* and *glēba*, *sod*; *obōedīre* and *obēdīre*, *obey*; *faenum* (foenum) and *fēnum*, *hay*.

\[
\begin{align*}
ae \text{ and } oe &= ae \text{ in Graeme.} \\
au &= ou \text{ in our.} \\
ei &= ei \text{ in feint (drawled).} \\
eu &= eu \text{ in Spanish deuda.} \\
uī &= oui \text{ in French oui.}
\end{align*}
\]

**DIAERESIS.**

5. The sign ·· (Diāresis—Greek = separation) over the second vowel shows that each sound is to be pronounced separately: āēr, *air*; Īōnaeus, *aloë*.

**CONSONANTS.**

6. Consonants are divided:

1. According to the principal *organs* by which they are pronounced, into

   **Labials** (lip-sounds): b, p, (ph), f, v, m.

   **Dentals** (tooth-sounds): d, t, (th), l, n, r, s.

   **Gutturals** (throat-sounds): g, c, k, qu, (ch), h.

2. According to their prolongation, into

   A. *Semi-vowels*: of which

   l, m, n, r, are *liquids*, (m and n being *nasal*).
   h, j, and v, are *breathings*, and
   s is a *sibilant*.

   B. *Mutes*: to which belong

   P-mutes, p, b, (ph), f, labials.
   T-mutes, t, d, (th), dentals.
   K-mutes, k, c, qu, g, (ch), gutturals.
Those on the same line are said to be of the same organ.

Mutes are further divided into

- **Tenués** (thin): \( p, t, k, c, qu \) hard (surd).
- **Mediae** (middle): \( b, d, g \) soft (sonant).
- **Aspirātae** (aspirate): \( ph, th, ch \) aspirate.

The aspirates occur chiefly in Greek words.
Those on the same line are said to be of the same order.

3. **Double consonants** are: \( z = dz \) in adze; \( x = cs \) (ks); \( j \) between two vowels is a double sound, half vowel, half consonant, and always lengthens the preceding vowel; \( jējūnus, hungry \).

**Sounds of the Consonants.**

7. The consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions:

- \( C \) is hard throughout = \( k \) (commonly assibilated before \( e \) (ae, oe) and \( i \).
- \( Ch \) is not a genuine Latin sound. In Latin words it is a \( k \); in Greek words a \( kh \) ; commonly pronounced as \( ch \) in German.
- \( G \) is hard throughout, as in \( get, give \).
- \( J \) has the sound of a broad \( y \); much fuller than \( y \) in your.
- \( N \) has a guttural nasal sound before \( c, g, q \), as in anchor, anguish.
- \( Qu = kw \) (nearly); before \( u, qu = c \); quum = cum; equus = ecus.
- **Quum** is a late spelling, retained for convenience’ sake.
- **R** must be trilled.
- **S** and **X** are always hard, as in hiss, axe.
- **T** is hard throughout.
- **V** was nearer our **w** than our **v**; still nearer the French **ou** in **out**.

**Syllables.**

8. The syllable is the unit of pronunciation, and consists of a vowel, or a vowel and one or more consonants.

A consonant, between two vowels, belongs to the second: \( a-mo, I love \).

Two or more consonants belong to the following vowel: \( a-sper, rough; fau-stus, lucky; li-bri, books \).

**Exceptions.**—1. Liquids, \( l, m, n, r \), join the preceding vowel: \( a-lmus, fostering; a-mbo, both; a-nquis, snake; ar-bor, tree; mn \) follows the general rule: \( a-mnis, river \).

2. When the consonant is doubled, the first belongs to the first; the **1**
second to the second syllable: cas-sis, helmet; al-lum, garlic; map-pan-
napkin; an-nus, year; mit-to, I send.
3. Compounds are treated as if their parts were separate words: ab-igo,
I drive off; res-pública, commonwealth.

9. The last syllable of a word is called the ultima; the next
to the last, the penult; the one before the penult, the ante-
penult.

10. Quantity.—A syllable is said to be long by nature,
when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; by position, when
a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a dou-
ble consonant: ars, art; ollum, neck; abrumpo, I break off;
per mare, through the sea; nex, murder.

Remark.—Nf, ns, and j make a preceding vowel sound long, not merely
the syllable.

Exception.—J in the compounds of jugum, yoke; bi-jugus, two-horse.

11. A syllable ending in a short vowel, followed by a mute
with l or r, is common (anops): tenēbrae, darkness.

12. Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diph-
thong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: saevus, cruel;
conclūdo, I shut up (from claudo, I shut); oōgo (from co-igo),
I drive together.

13. One simple vowel before another vowel-sound makes a
short syllable: deus, God; puer, boy.

Remarks.—1. h does not count: nihil, nothing.
2. Exceptions will be noted as they occur.
3. On the quantity of final syllables see Prosody.

14. Accentuation.—1. Dissyllabic words have the accent
or stress on the penult: équus, horse.

2. Polysyllabic words have the accent on the penult, when
the penult is long; on the antepenult, when the penult is short
or common: mandāre, to commit; mundere, to chew; intégrum,
entire.

Remarks.—1. The little appendages (enclitics), que, ve, ne, add an
accent to the ultimate of words accented on the antepenult: lūmināque,
and lights; lūmināve, or rivers; vōmerēne, from a ploughshare?

2. Other exceptions will be noted as they occur.
PARTS OF SPEECH.

15. The parts of speech are:
I. The *Noun*, embracing:
   1. The *Substantive*, which gives a name: *vir, a man*; *Coles, Cocles*, *dōnum, a gift*.
   2. The *Adjective*, which adds a quality to the substantive.
II. The *Pronoun*, which points out.
III. The *Verb*, which says.
IV. The *Particles*, which are mainly mutilated forms of the noun, and embrace:
   1. The *Adverb*, which shows *circumstances*.
   2. The *Preposition*, which shows *local relation*.
   3. The *Conjunction*, which shows *connection*.

REMARKS.—1. Pronoun and noun have essentially the same inflection; but they are commonly separated, partly on account of the difference in signification, partly on account of the greater antiquity of the pronominal forms. The pronominal element is the formative element of language.

2. The Interjection is either a mere cry of feeling: *āh! ah!* and does not belong to language, or falls under one of the above-mentioned classes.

INFLECTION.

16. *Inflection* is that *bending or change*, chiefly in the end of a word, which shows a change in the relations of that word. The noun, pronoun, and verb are inflected; the particles are not capable of further inflection.

The inflection of nouns and pronouns is called *declension*, and nouns and pronouns are said to be *declined*.

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and verbs are said to be *conjugated*.

SUBSTANTIVE.

17. The substantive gives the name of a person or thing (concrete), or of a quality (abstract).

Concrete substantives are either *proper* or *common*. 
The *proper* noun is *proper*, or *peculiar*, to certain persons or things: *Horatius*, *Horace*; *Neapolis*, *Naples*; *Padus*, *Po*.

*Common* nouns are *common* to a whole class: *dominus*, *a lord*; *urbs*, *a city*; *amnis*, *a river*.

**GENDER.**

18. For the names of animate beings, the gender is determined by the signification; for things and qualities, by the termination.

Males are masculine; Females, feminine. Masculine: *Rōmulus*; *Jūpiter*; *vir*, *man*; *equus*, *horse*. Feminine: *Cornēlia*; *Jūno*; *fēmina*, *woman*; *equa*, *mare*.

19. Some classes of words, without natural gender, have their gender determined by the signification:

I. Names of *months* (*mensēs*, *masc.*), *winds* (*ventī*, *masc.*), *rivers* (*fluvīl*, *masc.*), and *mountains* (*montēs*, *masc.*), are masculine: *Aprīlis*, the opening month, *April*; *Aquīlo*, the north wind; *Al·bis*, the *River Elbe*; *Athōs*, Mount Athos.

**Exceptions.—**1. Feminine are the rivers *Allia*; *Albula*; *Matrōna*, the *Marne*; *Styx*; *Lēthē*.

2. Of the mountains, the *Alps*, *Alpēs*, are feminine, and sundry (Greek) names in a (Gen. *ae*), *ē* (Gen. *ēs*): *Aetna*, *Cyllēnē*; *Sōracte*, and *Pēlion* are *neuter*, and so are names of mountains in a (Gen. *ōrum*): *Maenalē*, *Maenalōrum*.

II. Names of *countries* (*terrae*, *fem.*), *islands* (*insulae*, *fem.*), *cities* (*urbēs*, *fem.*), *plants* (*plantae*, *fem.*), and *trees* (*arborēs*, *fem.*), are feminine: *Aegyptus*, *Egypt*; *Rhōdus*, *Rhodes*; *pirus*, a *pear-tree*; *abiēs*, a *fir-tree*.

**Exceptions.—**The exceptions, which are numerous, are chiefly Greek, and follow the termination, instead of the signification.

III. All *indeclinable* nouns, and all words and phrases treated as *indeclinable* nouns, are *neuter*: *fās*, *right*; *ā longum*, *a long*; *scire tuum*, *thou knowing*; *tristē valē*, a sad "farewell."

20. 1. Nouns which have but one form for masculine and feminine are said to be of *common* gender: *civīs*, *citizen* (male or female); *comes*, *companion*; *jūdēx*, *judge*. 
2. **Substantiva móbilia** are words of the same origin, whose different terminations designate difference of gender: *magister, master, teacher; magistra, mistress; servus, serva, slave* (m. and f.); *victor, victrix, conqueror* (m. and f.)

3. If the male and female of animals have but one designation, *más, male,* and *fémina, female,* are added, when it is necessary to be exact: *pávo más (masculus), peacock, pávo fémina, peahen.* These nouns are called *epicene.*

**Cases.**

21. The Latin noun has six cases:

1. Nominative (Case of the Subject).
   Answers: *who? what?*

2. Genitive (Case of the Complement).
   Answers: *whose? whereof?*

3. Dative (Case of Indirect Object or Personal Interest).
   Answers: *For or To whom?*

4. Accusative (Case of Direct Object).
   Answers: *whom? what?*

5. Vocative (Case of Direct Address).

6. Ablative (Case of Adverbal Relation).
   Answers: *where? whence? wherewith?*

22. According to their syntactical use, the cases are divided into *Cásum Recti,* or Independent Cases, and *Cásum Obliqui,* or Dependent Cases. Nominative and Vocative are *Cásum Recti,* the rest *Cásum Obliqui.*

23. According to their form, the cases are divided into *strong* and *weak:* The strong cases are Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative. The weak cases are Genitive, Dative, and Ablative.

**Remarks.—**These six cases are the remains of a larger number. The Locative, which is akin to the Dative, and coincident with it in the 1st and 3d Declensions, is lost in the Genitive of the 2d Declension, and often blended with the Ablative in form, regularly in syntax. The Instrumental, which is found in other members of the family, is likewise merged in the Ablative.

24. The case-forms arise from the combination of the ending with the stem.

The stem is that which is common to a class of formations.
DECLENSIONS.

Remarks.—1. The stem is often so much altered by contact with the ending, the ending so much altered by the wearing away of vowels and consonants, that they can be determined only by scientific analysis. So in the paradigm mensa, the stem is not mens, but mensa, the final a having been absorbed by the ending in the Dative and Ablative Plural mensae. So -d, the characteristic of the Ablative Singular, has disappeared, and the locative ending has undergone many changes (§, cf. 1. §). The “crude form” it is often impossible to ascertain.

2. The root is an ultimate stem, and the determination of the root belongs to comparative etymology. The stem may be of any length, the root must be a monosyllable. In penna the stem is penna-; in pennula, pennula-; in pennatulus, pennatulo-; the root is pet (petna, pesna, penna), and is found in petere, to fall upon, to fly at; Greek, πέτομαι, πέτων; English, feather.

DECLITIONS.

25. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final sound of their respective stems:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem characteristic</th>
<th>The stems of the First Declension end in</th>
<th>The stems of the Second Declension end in</th>
<th>The stems of the Third Declension end in</th>
<th>The stems of the Fourth Declension end in</th>
<th>The stems of the Fifth Declension end in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>å</td>
<td>Â</td>
<td>ð</td>
<td>a consonant, i and u</td>
<td>â</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Â</td>
<td>ð</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26. 1. The First, Second, and Fifth Declensions are called Vowel Declensions; the Third and Fourth, which really form but one, the Consonant Declension, i and u being semi-consonants.


I. For the strong cases:

Neuter nouns have Nominative and Vocative like the Accusative; in the Plural the strong cases always end in å.

In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions the strong cases are alike in the Plural.

The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Second Declension, when the Nom. ends in -us.

II. For the weak cases:

Dative and Ablative Plural have a common form.

Remarks.—In declining neuter nouns, follow the order of strong cases and weak cases. It saves time, and shows connection.

FIRST DECLENSION.

27. The stem ends in å, which disappears in the ending -is of the Dative and Ablative plural.
DECLENSIONS.

FEMININE.

Sing. — N. mensa, the, or a, table.
G. mensae, of the, or a, table.
D. mensae, to, for the, or a, table.
Ac. mensa-m, the, or a, table.
V. mensa, O table! or table!
Abl. mensā, from, with, by, the, or a, table.

Plur. — N. mensae, the tables, or tables.
G. mensārum, of the tables, or tables.
D. mensās, to, for the tables, or tables.
Ac. mensās, the tables, or tables.
V. mensae, O tables!
Abl. mensās, from, with, by, the tables, or tables.

Remarks.—1. The Gen. -ās is found in poetry. The Gen. in -ās occurs in the word familia, family, when combined with pater, father, māter, mother, filius, son, filia, daughter, viz.: paterfamilias, māterfamilias, filiusfamilias, filiafamilias.

The Gen. Pl. sometimes takes the form -um instead of -ārum, chiefly in the Greek words amphora (amphora, measure of tonnage), and drachma, franc—(Greek coin). The poets make frequent use of this form in patro-nymics and compounds of -cola (from colo, I inhabit) and -gena (from gen, beget).

2. The Locative Dative case singular is like the Genitive Rōmae, at Rome.

3. Dea, goddess, filia, daughter, ambae, both, and duae, two, have the form -ābus in the Dative and Ablative Plural, viz.: deābus, filiābus, ambābus, duābus.

28. Rule of Gender.—The gender is feminine, except when males are meant.

Hadria, the Adriatic, is masculine.

SECOND DECLENSION.

29. The stem ends in -ō, which appears in the older forms of the Nom. and Acc. singular, servō-s, servō-m. In the ordinary forms it is changed into ū, ē, lengthened into ō, or disappears wholly.

MASCULINE.

Sing. — N. hortus, garden.
G. horti, hortiūrum.
D. hortō, hortīs.
Ac. hortum, horti.
V. hortae, hortae.
Abl. hortō, hortīs.
SECOND DECLENSION.

NEUTER.

SING.—N. Ac. V. bellum, war; PLUR.—bella, wars.
G. bellī,
D. Abl. bellō,

REMARKS.—1. In the Genitive Singular, ī is often contracted into ı, the accent remaining unchanged: ingenī, of genius, into ingēnī.

2. In the Vocative Singular, ie (je) is commonly contracted into ī in proper names in -iōs, -iōs (ājōs), -iōs (ājōs), the accent remaining unchanged; as, Antōni, Tulli, Gāl, Vergīlī. Filiōs, son, genius, genius, and meus, my, form their Vocatives in like manner: fillī, genī, ml.

3. In the Genitive Plural, -um for -ōrum is found in words denoting coins and measures; as, nummum (of moneys) = sēstertium, of sestercis; modium, of measures. Faber, workman, has both fabrum and fabrōrum; liberī, children, both liberrum and liberōrum; and vir, man, in compounds has triumvirum, of the triumvirs, and the like.

4. The Locative Singular, which has a restricted use, ends in ī (Apparent Genitive), as Rhōdī, at Rhodes, Tarentī, at Tarentum.

5. Deus, God, is irregular. Singular Vocative, deus. Plural Nomina-
tive (deī), dī, dī; Genitive, deōrum, deum; Accusative, deōs; Dative and Ablative (deīs), dīs, dīs.

30. Rule of Gender.—Nouns in -us are masculine; in -um, neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminine are: 1st. Cities and islands, as, Corinthus, Samus. 2d. Most trees, as, fāgus, beech; pīrus, pear-tree. 3d. Many Greek nouns, as, atomus, atom; paragraphus, paragraph; methodus, method; periodus, period; dialectus, dialect. 4th. Alvus, belly; colus, distaff; humus, ground; vannus, wheat-fan.

Neuters are: vīrus, venom; pelagūs, sea; vulgus, the rabble (sometimes masculine).

31. Most masculines in r drop -us in the Nominative and e in the Vocative Singular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. puer, boy.</td>
<td>puerī.</td>
<td>ager, field.</td>
<td>agrī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. puerī.</td>
<td>puerōrum.</td>
<td>agrī.</td>
<td>agrōrum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. puerō.</td>
<td>puerīs.</td>
<td>agrō,</td>
<td>agrīs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. puerum,</td>
<td>puerōs.</td>
<td>agrum,</td>
<td>agrōs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. puer,</td>
<td>puerī.</td>
<td>ager,</td>
<td>agrī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. puerō,</td>
<td>puerīs.</td>
<td>agrō,</td>
<td>agrīs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
32. The e belongs to the stem, and is retained through all the cases in adulter, adulterer; alter, the other; asper, rough; dexter, on the right (which has either dextri or dexteri); exter, outside; gener, son-in-law; gibber, hump-backed; lacer, torn; liber, free; Liber, god of wine; miser, wretched; prosper, lucky; puer, boy; socer, father-in-law; tener, soft; vesper, evening; and in words ending in -fer and -ger, from ferro, I bear, and gero, I carry, as, signifer, standard-bearer, armiger, armor-bearer.

Ibēr and Celtiber (names of nations) have in the Plural Ibēri and Celtiberī.

In other words, the e is inserted only in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

33. Declension of Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.
M. N. F. N.
---.---.---.---.---.
Sine.-N. bonus, bona, bonum. plur.-boni, bonae, bona.
G. bonī, bonae, bonī. bonorum, bonarum, bonorum.
D. bonē, bona, bonē. bonis, bonis, bonis.
Ac. bonum, bonam, bonum. bonēs, bonēs, bona.
V. bonē, bone, bonum. bonis, bonis, bonis.
Abl. bonē, bonē, bonī.

34. Miser, misera, miserum, wretched.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.
M. N. F. N.
---.---.---.---.---.
Sine.-N. miser, misera, miserum. miseri, miserae, misera.
G. miseri, miserae, mireri. miserorum, miserrum, miserorum.
D. miserē, miserae, miserē. miseris, miseris, miseris.
Ac. miserum, miseram, miserum. miserēs, miserae, misera.
V. miser, misera, miserum. miserī, miserae, misera.
Abl. miserē, miserē, miserē.

Piger, pigra, pigrum, slow.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.
M. N. F. N.
---.---.---.---.---.
Sine.-N. piger, pigra, pigrum. pigeri, pigrae, pigra.
pigrum, pigrārum, pigrārum, pigrārum.
pigris, pigris, pigris.
pigris, pigris, pigris.
pigris, pigris, pigris.

35. The following have Genitive Singular in -lus, and Dative Singular in 1:

ānus, ullus, nullus, one, any, none.
sōlus, totus, alius, sole, whole, other.
uter, alter, neuter, which of the two, one of the two, neither.

Remark.—In poetry, the 1 of the Genitive ending -lus is often shortened, except in alius (rare), sōlus, utrus, neutrus.
THIRD DECLENSION.

SING.—N. nullus, nulla, nullum, none.
     G. nullus, nullus, nullus.
     D. nulli, nulli, nulli.
     Ac. nullum, nullam, nullum.
     Abl. nullō, nullā, nullō.

The Plural is regular.

THIRD DECLENSION.

36. The stem ends in a consonant, or the close vowels i and u.
37. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem-characteristic, following the subdivisions of the letters of the alphabet:

I.—Consonant Stems.
A. Liquid stems, ending in l, m, n, r.
B. Sibilant stems, ending in s.
   1. Ending in a P-mute, b, p. (Compare the Fourth Declension.)
   2. Ending in a K-mute, c, g.
   3. Ending in a T-mute, d, t.

II.—Vowel Stems.
1. Ending in l.
2. Ending in u.

38. The sign of the Nominative Singular, masculine and feminine, is s, which, however, is dropped after l, n, r, s.
The Nominative Singular undergoes various changes.
The Vocative is like the Nominative. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem.

39. Neuters always form

   the Nominative without the case-ending s.
   the Accusative and Vocative case in both numbers like the Nominative.
   the Nominative Plural in s.

REMARK.—Originally coincident with the Dative, the Locative of the Third Declension was finally blended with Ablative, both in form and in syntax. In the names of nouns the old form is frequently retained: Karthāgni, at Carthage, Sulmōnī, at Sulmo. According to some, rūrī, in the country, is an Ablative.

I.—CONSONANT STEMS.
A.—LIQUID STEMS.
1. Liquid stems in l.

40. Nominative without s, as, consul, the consul.
THIRD DECLENSION.

SING.—N. consul, consul. PLUR.—N. consuli, the consuls.
G. consul-is, consul-um.
D. consul-i, consul-ibus.
Ac. consul-em, consul-ēs.
V. consul, consul-ēs.
Abl. consul-e, consul-ibus.

Rule of Gender.—Stems in l are masculine: sōl, the sun, sōlis; sāl, salt, sālis.

Exceptions.—Neuters are: mel, honey, mellis; fel, gall, fellis.

2. Liquid stems in m.

41. Nominative with ă. One example only: hiem(p)ā, winter; Genitive, hiem-ās (fem.).

3. Liquid stems in n.

42. The Nominative Singular of masculine and feminine stems is formed without ă, drops the n of the stem, and ends in ë.

The Genitive Singular has, in some nouns, -ōnis; in others, -īnis.

The Nominative Singular of the neuter stems retains the n, and terminates in -ēn.

The Genitive Singular of neuters ends in -īnis.

43. Masculine. feminine. neuter.

SING.—N. leō, lion. imāgō, likeness. nōmen, name.
G. leōn-is, imāgin-is, nōmin-is.
D. leōn-i, imāgin-i, nōmin-i.
Ac. leōn-em, imāgin-em, nōmen.
V. leō, imāgō, nōmen.
Abl. leōn-e, imāgine, nōmin-e.

PLUR.—N. leōn-ēs, imāgin-ēs, nōmin-ēs.
G. leōn-um, imāgin-um, nōmin-um.
D. leōn-ibus, imāgin-ibus, nōmin-ibus.
Ac. leōn-ēs, imāgin-ēs, nōmin-ēs.
V. leōn-ēs, imāgin-ēs, nōmin-ēs.
Abl. leōn-ibus, imāgin-ibus, nōmin-ibus.

Remarks.—1. Nouns in -do and -go have in the Genitive -īnis, whilst the rest in -o have -ōnis; as, grando, hail, grandinis; virgo, maid, virginis.

Exceptions.—Praedō, robber; harpago, grappling-hook; līgo, mattock, have ōnis; homō, man; turbo, whirlwind, have īnis.
THIRD DECLENSION.

2. To the stems in \( n \) belong \textit{sanguis}, \textit{blood}, \textit{sanguin-is} ; \textit{pollis}, \textit{fleur}, \textit{pollin-is} (both masc.). In these, \( n \) of the stem is dropped before \( s \) of the Nom.


Masculines in \textit{-ōn}, \textit{-ēnis}, are only: \textit{splēn} and \textit{liēn}, \textit{spleen}, and the Plural \textit{rēnēs}, \textit{kidneys}.

44. Rules of Gender.—1. Masculine are nouns in \textit{-o}, save those in \textit{-do}, \textit{-go}, and \textit{-io}, with \textit{caro}, \textit{flesh} : but \textit{ordo}, \textit{cardo}, are masculine, with \textit{ligo}, \textit{margo}; add \textit{harpago}; and in \textit{-io}, all concrete nouns like \textit{pūgio}.

\begin{itemize}
\end{itemize}

2. Nouns in \textit{-en} \textit{(men)} are neuter. See exceptions 43, 3.

4. Liquid stems in \( r \).

45. Nominative without \( s \).

REMARK.—In several words in \textit{-ōr} and \textit{-ūr}, the \( r \) has arisen from \( s \). Hence, \textit{labōs}, as well as \textit{labōr}, \textit{toil}; \textit{röbus} and \textit{röbūr}, \textit{oak}; \textit{vōmis} and \textit{vōmer}, \textit{ploughshare}.

\begin{align*}
\text{Masculine} & & \text{Neuter} \\
\text{e.} & \text{passer,} & \text{pater,} & \text{cadāver,} \\
& \text{passer-is.} & \text{father.} & \text{cadāver-is.} \\
\text{o.} & \text{labor,} & \text{ōrātor,} & \text{röbūr,} \\
& \text{labor-r-is.} & \text{speaker.} & \text{oak.} \\
\text{u.} & \text{für,} & \text{vultur,} & \text{fulgur,} \\
& \text{für-is.} & \text{vulture.} & \text{lightning.} \\
\end{align*}

46. Words in \textit{-ter}, syncopate, \( i.e. \), leave out the \( e \), except later, \textit{brick}, later-is.

\begin{align*}
\text{Singular} & & \text{Plural} & & \text{Singular} & & \text{Plural} \\
\text{N.} & \text{labor,} & \text{labor-r-ēs.} & & \text{pater,} & & \text{patr-ēs.} \\
\text{G.} & \text{labor-r-is,} & \text{labor-r-um.} & & \text{pater-r-is,} & & \text{patr-r-um.} \\
\text{D.} & \text{labor-r-ī,} & \text{labor-r-ibus.} & & \text{pater-r-ī,} & & \text{patr-r-ibus.} \\
\text{Ac.} & \text{labor-r-em,} & \text{labor-r-ēs.} & & \text{pater-r-em,} & & \text{patr-r-ēs.} \\
\text{V.} & \text{labor,} & \text{labor-ēs.} & & \text{pater,} & & \text{patr-ē.} \\
\text{Abl.} & \text{labor-r-e,} & \text{labor-r-ibus.} & & \text{pater-r-ī,} & & \text{patr-r-ibus} \\
\end{align*}

47. Rules of Gender.—Words in \textit{-er} and \textit{-or} are masculine those in \textit{-ur}, neuter.
THIRD DECLENSION.

EXCEPTIONS.—The only feminine is arbor.
   Neuters are: fär, nectar, marmor,
   Aequor, iter, acer, piper,
   Verber, über, vär, cadaver,
   Ador, tüber, and papaever.

acer, maple; ador, spell; aequor, sec; arbor, tree; cadaver, dead body; fär, spell;
marmor, marble; nectar, nectar; piper, pepper; papaever, poppy; tüber, tumor;
tüber, teat; vär, spring.

Furfur, bran, is masculine.

B.—SIBILANT STEMS.

48. The Nominative has no additional s.
   In the other cases, the s of the stem passes over, between two
   vowels, into r.
   Instead of the final stem-vowel e, the Nominative of Masculines has i.
   Instead of the final stem-vowels e and o, the Nominative of
   Neuters has u.

REMARK.—S is retained throughout in the neuter: väs, dish, väsis.
SS occurs in ås, a copper, genitive assis (masc.), and os, bone, ossis (neut.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kind.</td>
<td></td>
<td>body,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>gener-is,</td>
<td>gener-um.</td>
<td>corpor-is,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>gener-i,</td>
<td>gener-ibus.</td>
<td>corpor-i,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>genus,</td>
<td>gener-a.</td>
<td>corpus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>genus,</td>
<td>gener-a.</td>
<td>corpus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>gener-e,</td>
<td>gener-ibus.</td>
<td>corpor-e,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50. Rule of Gender.—Masculine are nouns in -is (-eris), and
    -ös, -öris: except ös, mouth; genitive öris, neuter.
    Neuter are nouns in -us, genitive -eris, -oris, and in -üs, -üris;
    except tellüs, earth, tellüris, which is feminine; and the masculines,
    lepus, hare; leporis; mûs, mouse, mûris.

C.—MUTE STEMS.

51. All masculines and feminines of mute stems have s in the
    Nominative.
    Most polysyllabic mute stems change their final vowel i into
    e in the Nominative.
A K-mute, combining with s, becomes x, as, pāco-s = pāx, peace; rēg-s = rēx, king.

A T-mute before s is dropped, as, actāt-s = actās, age; ped-s = pēs, foot.

52. **Stems in a P-mute.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>U</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trāb-s, beam.</td>
<td>plēb-s, commons.</td>
<td>stip-s, doe.</td>
<td>princep-s, chief.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trāb-is (fem.)</td>
<td>plēb-is (fem.)</td>
<td>stip-is (fem.)</td>
<td>princīp-is,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic:

Urb-s, citī, urb-is (fem.); stirp-s, stock, stirp-is (fem.).

53. **Stems in a K-mute.**

| pāx, peace. | rēx, king. | rēdix, root. | vōx, voice. | lūx, light. |
| pāco-is (fem.) | rēg-is (mas.) | rēdio-is (fem.) | vōo-is (fem.) | lōo-is (fem.) |
| fax, torch. | grex, herd. | salix, willow. | jūdex, judge. | dux, leader. |
| fac-is (fem.) | grēg-is (mas.) | salio-is (fem.) | jūdio-is. | duo-is. |

54. With consonant preceding the stem-characteristic:

Arx, citadel, aro-is (fem.); falx, sickle, falco-is (fem.).

**Sing.—N.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>princep-s, chief.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plur.—**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>princip-ēs,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>princip-um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princip-ibus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princip-ēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princip-ēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princip-ibus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sing.—N.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rēx, king.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plur.—**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rēg-ēs,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēg-um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēg-ibus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēg-ēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēg-ēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēg-ibus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remark.**—All monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the Genitive Plural in -ium, as, urbium, of cities; arciun, of citadels; montium, of mountains; partium, of parts; noctium, of the nights. The polysyllabic stems also in -nt and -rt have more frequently -ium, as, clienium, of clients; cohortium, of companies. Stems in -āt have sometimes both -um and -ium, as, civitātum and civitātium. See 59, R. 3.
Stems in a T-mute.

55. A. Characteristic preceded by a vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. actēs, age.</td>
<td>anas, duck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. actēt-is, (fem.)</td>
<td>anāt-is, (fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. quiēs, rest.</td>
<td>pariēs, wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiēt-is, (fem.)</td>
<td>pariēt-is, (masc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. nōs, suit.</td>
<td>nōs, miles, soldier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit-is, (fem.)</td>
<td>G. P. ium.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. sacērōs, priest. | custōs, keeper. |
| sacērōt-is. | custōd-is. |

u. virtēs, manliness. | palēs, dog. |
| virtēt-is, (fem.) | laus, praise. |

56. B. Characteristic preceded by a consonant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nē. frōns, brow.</td>
<td>ad. frōns, leafy branch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front-is, (fem.)</td>
<td>frond-is, (fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vl. pars, part. it. pula, porridge.</td>
<td>rd. oor, heart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part-is, (fem.)</td>
<td>pult-is, (fem.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cō. necēs, night.</td>
<td>lac, milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noct-is, (fem.)</td>
<td>lact-is, (neut.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SING.—N. actēs, age. PLUR.—actētēs, SING.—pēs, foot. PLUR.—pedēs, |
G. actēt-is, | actēt-um, ped-is, |
D. actēt-i, | actēt-ibus, ped-i, |
Ac. actēt-em, | actēt-ēs, ped-em, |
V. actēs, | actēt-ēs, ped-ēs, |
Abl. actēt-e, | actēt-ibus, ped-e, |

57. Rule of Gender.—All mute stems, with Nominative in a, are feminine.

Exceptions in a T-mute.

Masculines are -ēs and -ēx.
Saving for fērex, forfex, nex.
Lēx, vībēx, faex, and forms of prex.

fērex, dregz.
forfex, shears.
forpex, tōngz.
deunx, 15 as.
lēx, law.
nex, slaughter.
preo, with prayer.
vībēx, veal (better vībīx.)

Calix, cup, and fornix, arch, are masculine. Calx, heel, and calcx, chalk, vary.
THIRD DECLENSION.

Exceptions in a T-mute.—Nouns in -ēs, -ītis, are masculine, as, cēspes, turīf. cēspitis; as are also pēs, foot, and its compounds; parīs, wall; and, of the nouns in -is, lapis, stone. Merges, -ītis, sheaf, is feminine.

Masculines in -ns are: mons, mountain; pons, bridge; fons, spring; dens, tooth; torrens, torrent; rudens, rope.

Neuters are only: cor, heart, and lac, milk, which drop the characteristic; and caput, head, capitis.

II.—VOWEL STEMS.

1.—VOWEL STEMS IN I.

58. Masculines and feminines form their Nominative in s.

Some feminines change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e.

Neuters change, in the Nominative, the stem-vowel i into e. This e is generally dropped by polysyllabic neuters after l and r.

All stems in i have Genitive Plural in -ium.

All neuter stems in i have the Ablative Singular in l, and Nominative Plural in -ia.

REMARKS.—The stems of Nominatives in -is and -es are easily distinguished.

Consonant stems in -is and -es increase in the Genitive; but vowel stems in i do not increase in the Genitive, as:

Consonant: lapis, stone; Genitive, lapid-is. miles, soldier; Genitive, milit-is.

Vowel: civis, citizen. nūbis, cloud.

59.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.—N.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>collis,</td>
<td>turris,</td>
<td>vulpis, fox. mare, sea. animal, living being.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. collis,</td>
<td>turris,</td>
<td>vulpis, maris, animālis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. collit,</td>
<td>turri,</td>
<td>vulpi, marī, animāli,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. collem,</td>
<td>turrem (turri-m),</td>
<td>vulpem, mare, animal,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. collis,</td>
<td>turris,</td>
<td>vulpis, mare, animal,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. colle,</td>
<td>turre (turri),</td>
<td>vulpe, marī, animāli,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.—N.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>collēs,</td>
<td>turris,</td>
<td>vulpis, marī-a, animāli-a.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. colli-um,</td>
<td>turri-um,</td>
<td>vulpi-um, marī-um, animāli-um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. collēs,</td>
<td>turri-bus,</td>
<td>vulpi-bus, marī-bus, animāli-bus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. collēs,</td>
<td>turris,</td>
<td>vulpis, marī-a, animāli-a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. collēs,</td>
<td>turris,</td>
<td>vulpis, marī-a, animāli-a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. coll-bus.</td>
<td>turri-bus,</td>
<td>vulpi-bus, marī-bus. animāli-bus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REMARKS.—1. In Genitive Plural, -um instead of -ium.

Always in: juvenis, young; senex, old; canis, dog; vātēs, bard; struēs, heap; pānis, bread.

Usually in: apis, bee; sēdēs, seat; voluorius, bird.
THIRD DECLENSION.

2. The Genitive Plural in -ium occurs in the apparently consonant stems: imber, rain-storm; üter, bottle; venter, belly; linter, skiff; which form the Nominative without s, dropping the i, and inserting e. Genitive, imbris, ütris, ventris, lintris. All are masculine, except linter, which is feminine.

3. Under the vowel stems in -i are sometimes classed those mute stems which take -ium in the Gen. Plural; urbi-um, monti-um. See 54, R.

60. Observations.—Several stems in i, with Nominative in -is, have Accusative and Ablative Singular and Accusative Plural in -im, i, is, respectively:

1. The Accusative Plural in -is occurs, side by side with -és:
   In all vowel stems in i, which have Nominative Singular in -is;
   In mute stems, which have Genitive Plural in -ium.

2. The Accusative Singular in -im is used:

   a. Always in names of towns and rivers in is, as, Neápolis, Accusative, Neápolim; Tiberis, Accusative, Tiberim; and in vis, force; aitís, thirst; tussia, cough.
   b. Usually in secúris, axe; febris, fever; puppis, poop; turris, tower.

3. The Ablative Singular in i is used:

   a. In all nouns which have Accusative Singular invariably in -im, and in ignis, fire, in the phrases, fero ignique, aqua et igni interdicere. Nouns which have Accusative in -im or -im have Ablative in i or é.
   b. In the neuter vowel stems, which have Nominative in è, ál, ár. Names of cities in -è have Ablative also in -e, as, Praeneste, Genitive, Praenestis.
   c. In the adjective vowel stems of the Third Declension, as, facilis, easy; Ablative, facili; acer, sharp; Ablative, acr.

Remark.—So also the adjectives of this class, when used as substantives by ellipses: annális (sc. liber, book), chronicle; nátális (sc. dís, day), birthday; Aprilís (sc. mensis, month), and all the other months of the Third Declension: Ablative, annál, nátál, Aprilí, Septembrí, etc.

Exceptions.—Juvenis, young man; and seclís, sedie; Ablative, juvenes, sedile. Adjectives used as proper nouns have generally Ablative in -e, as, Juvenális; Ablative, Juvenále.

61. Rule of Gender.—1. Of stems in i, Nominative in -is, some are masculine, some feminine.

Masculine are:

Ammis, axis, callis, crinis,
Cassis, caulis, fascis, finis,
Púnis, fustis, ignis, ensis,
Orbis, pánis, piscis, mensis,

Postis, scrobis, büris, collis,
Sentis, torquis, atque follis,
Torris, unguis et annális,
Vestis, vermis et canális.
26

THIRD DECLENSION.

Callis, finis, scrobis, torquis, are used also as feminines.

Other nouns in -is, and all in -ēs, are feminine. Vēprēs, bramble, is usually masculine.

2. Vowel stems, with Nominative in -e, -al, -ar, are neuter.

Remark.—Of the names of animals in -is, some are masculine; tigris, tiger; canis, dog; piscis, fish; others feminine: apis, bee; avis, bird; ovis, sheep; fellis, cat (usually fēlis).

2. VOWEL STEMS IN Ù.

62. Of stems in ù, only the monosyllabic belong to the Third Declension.

grūs, crane (fem.).

Sing.—N. grūs Plur.—gru-ēs
G. gruis gru-um
D. grūf gru-ibus
Ac. gru-em gra-ēs
V. grūs gra-ēs
Abl. gru-e gra-ibus.

Sūs, swine, commonly fem., usually subus, in D. and Abl. Plural.

Table of Nominative and Genitive Endings of the Third Declension.

A * before the ending denotes that it occurs only in the one word cited.

63. A. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A LIQUID.
64. B. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH S, OR A COM- 
POUND OF S (GS, CS), X:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ädís custós, keeper.</td>
<td>-ósis custós, keeper.</td>
<td>-ódis custós, keeper.</td>
<td>-ódis custós, keeper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-étis cōs, wheatestone.</td>
<td>-étis cōs, wheatestone.</td>
<td>-étis cōs, wheatestone.</td>
<td>-étis cōs, wheatestone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ósis fōs, flower.</td>
<td>-órvis bōs, ox.</td>
<td>-órvis bōs, ox.</td>
<td>-órvis bōs, ox.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ósis os, bone.</td>
<td>-ósis os, bone.</td>
<td>-ósis os, bone.</td>
<td>-ósis os, bone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ús pecūs, cattle, sheep.</td>
<td>-ús pecūs, cattle, sheep.</td>
<td>-ős pes, cattle, sheep.</td>
<td>-ős pes, cattle, sheep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ús intercuñus, under the skin.</td>
<td>-ús intercuñus, under the skin.</td>
<td>-ús intercuñus, under the skin.</td>
<td>-ús intercuñus, under the skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ús sūs, swine.</td>
<td>-ús sūs, swine.</td>
<td>-ús sūs, swine.</td>
<td>-ús sūs, swine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

65. C. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A MUTE.

-ös | -ósis lac, milk. |
-ös | -ósis lac, milk. |
-ös | -ósis lac, milk. |
-ös | -ósis lac, milk. |
66. D. NOMINATIVES ENDING WITH A VOWEL.

-ē
-ēnēs
-ēnis
-ēnis
-ēnis
-ēnis

mārcē, sea.
pāvo, peacock.
Sāxo, Saxon.
hōmō, man.
cāro, flesh.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

67. The Fourth Declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in u.

The endings are those of the Third Declension.

In the Genitive and Ablative Singular, and the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural (sometimes, too, in the Dative Singular), the u of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long, as fructū-is becomes fructūs, of fruit; fructū-e becomes fructū, from fruit; fructū-ēs becomes fructūs, fruits.

This u, on the contrary, is lost before the ending -ibus in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

The Accusative Singular, as always in vowel stems, has the ending m, without a connecting vowel (compare the Accusative in -im of the stems in i), hence u-m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASCULINE</th>
<th>NEUTER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—N.</td>
<td>Pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fructūs, fruit.</td>
<td>fructūs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fructūs</td>
<td>fructūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>fructūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>fructūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>fructūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. fructūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. fructūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fructibus</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fructibus</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REMARKS.—1. Dative and Ablative Plurals in -ibus occur in nouns in -cus, and in tribus, tribe; artus, joint; partus, childbirth; portus, harbor; vinus, fold.

2. Domus, house, Ablative Singular, domō; Genitive Plural, domōmum and domōrum; Accusative Plural, domūs and domōs. Domi (a locative form) means, at home.

68. Rule of Gender.—Nouns in -us are masculine; those in -ū are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—Feminines are fidūs, pl., the 15th day of the month, tribus, tribe, porticus, piazza, aōus, needle, manus, hand, domōs, house.
FIFTH DECLENSION.


**MASCULINE.**

Sing.—N. *diā-s, day.* Pl. *diē-s.*
G. *diē-i,*
D. *diē-i,*
Ac. *diē-m,*
V. *diē-s,*
Abl. *diē,*

**FEMININE.**

Sing. *rē-s, thing.* Pl. *rē-s.*
G. *rē-i,*
D. *rē-i,*
Ac. *rē-m,*
V. *rē-s,*
Abl. *rē,*

**Remarks.**—1. The Plural is used throughout in three words only: *rēs,* *thing; diēs,* *day;* and in later Latin, *species,* *appearance.* In some words, only Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural occur; others have no Plural at all.

2. The stem-characteristic *e,* in the Genitive and Dative Singular, is long after a vowel and short after a consonant, as *species,* Genitive *speciei; rēs,* *thing,* Genitive *rei; fidēs,* *faith,* Genitive *fidei.*

3. Some nouns of the Fifth Declension have a secondary form, which follows the First Declension, as *mollitēs,* *softness,* and *mollitia.* Where the double form exists, only Nominative, Accusative, and Ablative Singular commonly follow the Fifth Declension.

70. Rule of Gender.—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except *diēs* (which in the Singular is of the common gender, and in the Plural masculine), and the masculine *meridēs,* *mid-day.*

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

71. Greek substantives, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized, and declined regularly according to their stem-characteristic. Many nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively, or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side.

72. **Singular Forms of Greek Nouns.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>Pēnelopē</th>
<th>Leōnidās</th>
<th>Anchisēs</th>
<th>Delos (us)</th>
<th>Ίλιον (um).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>Pēnelopēs</td>
<td>Leōnidae</td>
<td>Anchisae</td>
<td>Dēli</td>
<td>Ίιτι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Pēnelopae</td>
<td>Leōnidai</td>
<td>Anchisae</td>
<td>Dēlos (um)</td>
<td>Ίλιον (um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Pēnelopŏn</td>
<td>Leōnidam (an)</td>
<td>Anchisēn (aman)</td>
<td>Dēle</td>
<td>Ίλιον (um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Pēnelopē</td>
<td>Leōnidas</td>
<td>Anchisē, ā, ā</td>
<td>Delē</td>
<td>Ίλιον (um)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>Pēnelopē</td>
<td>Leōnida</td>
<td>Anchisā</td>
<td>Delēs</td>
<td>Ίλιον (um)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GREEK NOUNS.

| N. | Panthēs, | Androgeōs (us), Athēs, | Orphēus, | Solōn, Solo, |
| G. | Panthῆ, | Androgeĩ, Athē, ōnēs, | Orphēĩ (ēi), Solōnis. |
| D. | Panthō, | Androgeō, Athō, | Orphēō, | Solōnī. |
| Ac. | Panthūn, | Androgeōn, Athē, ōn, ōnem, Orphem (ea), Solōna (em), |
| V. | Panthē, | Androgeōs, Athēs, | Orphēū, | Solōn. |

N. Āēr, air. | Xenophōn, Atlēs, | Thalēs, Paris. |
G. Āēris, | Xenophōntis, Atlantis, | Thalēs, is, Paridis, os. |
D. Āēri, | Xenophōnti, Atlantī, | Thalēs, I, Paridī, I. |
Ac. Āēra (em), | Xenophōntha Atlante, | Thalēs, o, em, Parida, im, in |
V. Āēr, | Xenophōn, Atlē, | Thalē, Pari, Paris. |

N. Oedipūs, | Achillēs, eus, Sōcratēs, | Didō, hērōs. |
G. Oedipodis, I, | Achillīs, ei, I, Sōcratīs, I, eis, | Didūs, ōnīs, hērōis. |
D. Oedipodī, | Achilli, Sōcratī, | Didō, ōnī, hērōi. |
V. Oedipe, | Achillēs, e, ēn, Sōcratē (ea), | Didō, hērōs. |
Abl. Oedipodes, ē | Achille. Sōcrata, | Didō, ōne, hērōe. |

Remarks.—1. Many other forms are found, for which the dictionaries must be consulted. So poēsis, G. poēsis, eōs, D. poēst, Acc. poēsin, poesy. Many of them are transliterations of Greek words, quoted as Greek.

2. In transferring Greek nouns into Latin, the Accusative Singular was sometimes taken as the stem.

So kratēr, Acc. krateīra, (punch) bowl. cratēr, crāteris (masc.), and crātera (crātera) crāterae (fem.) Salamis, Acc. Salamīna, Salamis. Salamis, Salaminis, and Salamina, ae.

73. PLURAL FORMS OF GREEK NOUNS.

N. Pl. -ē : canēphorēs, basket-bearers.
-ēs : Arcadēs, Arcadians. How often in prose we cannot tell.

G. Pl. -ēn : Geōrgicōn, of the Georgics.
-eōn : Metamorphoēōn, of the Metamorphoses.

D. Pl. -ēs : Lēmniasē (rare), to the Lemnian women.

Acc. Pl. -ēs : Macedonas. Common even in words that are not Greek: Allobrogas.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

I. REDUNDANT Nouns.

ABUNDANTIA.

A. Different genders in the same declension:

baculus, baculum, staff.
bateus, bateum, sword-belt.
calameus, calameum, shield.
calamister, calamistrum, curling-iron.

B. Change of declension:

1. 1st and 2d. esseda, ae, essedum, i, var-chariot, plg.
    vespera, ae, vesper, i, evening.
2. 1st and 5th. durtia, ae, duritis, hardness.
    materia, ae, materis, stuff.
3. 2d and 5th. diluvium, i, diluvius, flood.
4. 2d and 4th. eventum, i, eventus, us, issue.
5. 3d and 4th. plebs, is, plebis, et, commons.
    tribunus plebis, tribune of the people.
6. 3d and 2d. imbœcillis, imbœcillus, weak.

And a few others (adjectives).

II. DEFECTIVE Nouns.

1. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN NUMBER.

A. Nouns used in Singular only: Singulâria tantum.

Most abstract nouns, and names of materials:

justitia, justice, anum, gold.

B. Nouns used in Plural only: Plurâlia tantum.

angustiae, straits
arma, œrum, arms,
bigae, quadrigae, two-horse, four-horse chariot,
cassâs, um, toils (nare),
cervicâs, um, neck (preferred to cervix),
divitiâs, um, riches,
epulae (epulum), banquet,
forœs, um, f, door,
habœnae, reins,
indütiâs, truce.

ambagœs, -ium, round about,
compedœs, -ium, fetters,

These four have the Ablative Singular in -e: ambâgœ, compêdœ, fæce, prece.

Akin to Plurâlia tantum are:

C. Nouns used in Plural with a special sense: Heterologa.

ædœs, is, temple,
aedēs, ium, house, palace.
auxilia, auxiliaries, reinforcements.
auxilium, help,
castrum, fort,
castra, camp.
IRREGULAR NOUNS.

cōpia, abundance,
cōpiae, forces, troops.
finīs, end, limit,
finēs, territory, borders.
littera, letter (of the alphabet),
litterae, epistle, literature.
opera, work,
operae, workmen.

76. 2. NOUNS DEFECTIVE IN CASE.

A. Used only in Nominative and Accusative Singular: fās, right, nefās, wrong, and Greek Neuters in -ōs.

B. In Ablative Singular: sponte, of free will, and many verbs in ū: promptū, in readiness; jussū, by order; monitū, by advice.

C. In the oblique cases the forms from:

(daps), t., feast, S. and Pl.
(dicio), t., essay, S.
(frāx), t., fruit, S. and Pl.

(ops), t., help (No Dat.), S. and Pl.
(vīx), t., change (No Dat.), S. and Pl.

D. The Genitive Plural of many monosyllabic words does not occur:

cōs, whetstone,
lūx, light,
ōs, mouth.

vis, force: G. and D. are wanting; Ac. vīm; Abl. vī. Pl. vīrēs, vīrium, vīribus.
nēmo, nobody: G. nullīs hominis; D. nēmini; Ac. nēminem; Abl. nullō homine.

77. III. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A. Heteroclites: Different stems with the same Nominative.

domus (domu- and domo-); Abl. domō; Pl. G. domuām, domūrum; Acc. domūs and domūs.

pecus (pseud- and pecor-), pecudis, sheep; pecoris, cattle.

ficus, fig-tree; laurus, bay-tree; pīnus, pine-tree; are declined regularly according to the Second Declension, but have secondary forms in use from the Fourth Declension in the Ablative Singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

senātus, senate; G. senātūs or senāti (rare).
requīs, -ēsīs, t.: Ac. requītem and requīem, rest.
famēs, -īs; Abl. famē and famē, hunger.
satrapēs, G. satrapae and satrapis; D. satrapae, &c., Persian governor.

78. B. Heterogeneous Nouns have the same stem with different gender in Singular and Plural:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>frēnum, britis.</td>
<td>frēnī, and frēna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jocus, jest.</td>
<td>jocī, and joca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locus, place.</td>
<td>loca, localities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rāstrum, mattock.</td>
<td>rāstri, and rāstra.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION.

79. C. Metaplasts are nouns which have isolated cases from another than the Nominative stem:

vēs, vēsis, n., vessel. Pl. vēsa, vēsorum. vēsis (as if from vēso-).
peōma, poēmatis, n., poem. Pl. poēmata, poēmatum. Ibus. G. poēmatōrum, D. poēmatis (as if from poēmato-).

So all Greek nouns in -a, -atis.
Bacchānalia, -ium (-iūrum), -ibus, feast of Bacchus.
So several other names of feasts in -ia.

80. IV. Peculiarities.

Anīa, G. Aniēnis, the (river) Anīo.
ās, assis, m., a copper.
aucupis, aucupis, fouler.
bōs (bovis), bovis, c., ox, cow.
G. Pl. boum.
D. Abl. bōbus, bōbus.
caput, capitis, n., head.
So aniceps, ancipitis, two-headed.
praceps, -cipitis, headlong.
caro, carnis (for carinis), f., flesh.
G. Pl. carnium.
Corēs, Cerēris, Ceres.
ēs, fēris, n., spell.
fel. fallis, n., gall.
femur, femoris, n., thigh.
feminis.

iter, itineris, n., way, route.
jecur, jecoris, n., liver.

jecinoris.
Jāpiter (for Jov(upiter), Jovis.
mel, melis, n., honey.
nix = (s)nig(v)s, nivis, f., snow.
ōs, oesis, n., bone.
ūs, ūris, n., mouth.
pollis, pollinis, m., flour.
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood.

senex, senis, old man.
supplex, supplectilis, f., furniture.

Venus, Veneris, Venus.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

81. The declension of the adjectives of the Third Declension follows the rules given for the substantives.

Most of the adjectives of the Third Declension are vowel stems in i. They form the masculine and feminine alike, with Nominative in s; but the neuter Nominative weakens the characteristic i into e. (Compare mare, sea.)

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS.

82. Several stems in i, preceded by r (or, tr, br), form the Nominative masculine, not by affixing s, but by dropping the i and inserting e short before the r, as, stem acer, sharp, Nom. Masc. acer, Nom. Fem. acris. (Compare 60, 3 c.)

The e belongs to the stem only in celer, celeris, celere, swift.
### ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECENSION.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.—N.</td>
<td>facili-s, easy.</td>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>àcer,</td>
<td>àcri-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>facilis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>facill,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>facilem,</td>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>àcrem,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>facillis,</td>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>àcer,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>facilli,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Plur.—N.      | facilēs,     | facili-s, | àcrēs, |         | àcri-a. |
| G.            | facili-um,   |         | àcri-um, |         |       |
| D.            | facili-bus,  |         | àcri-bus, |         |       |
| Ac.           | facilēs,     | facili-s, | àcrēs, |         | àcri-a. |
| V.            | facilēs,     | facili-s, | àcrēs, |         | àcri-a. |
| Abl.          | facili-bus,  |         | àcri-bus. |       |       |

83. The consonant stems have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the Accusative Singular, and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

### ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.

84. Adjective stems of one ending close with l, r, s, or a p, k, or t mute.

- vigil, alert, memor, mindful, pauper, poor, ciusur, tame, pūbēs, adult, vetus, old.
- vigil-is, memor-is, pauper-is, ciusur-is, pūbēr-is, vēter-is.
- Abl. 1 (e).
- Abl. e.
- Abl. e.

- particeps, sharing.
- particip-is, Abl. e.
- caelēb-s, unmarried.
- caelīb-is, Abl. e.
- inop-s, poor.
- inop-is, Abl. 1 (e).

- audax, bold.
- fēlix, lucky.
- duplēx, double.
- fēroēs, fierce.
- trūx, savage.
- Audax-is.
- Fēlix-is.
- Duplēx-is.
- Fēroēs-is.
- Trūx-is.
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

85. OBSERVATIONS.—The adjectives of one ending, including the present participle, follow in part the declension of vowel stems:

1. In the neuter Plural they have -ia; only vetus, old, has vetera. Many have no neuter.

2. In the Ablative Singular they have 1 and e—when used as adjectives commonly 1; when used as substantives commonly e.

The participles, as such, have e; but used as nouns or adjectives, either e or 1, with tendency to 1.

3. In the Genitive Plural the consonant-stems have: -ium, when the characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; -um, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel, as:

audāx, bold, prūdens, wise. Samnitēs, Samnites.
audēcium, prūdentium.
suppex, suppliant, dives, rich. Samnitiōnum.
supplicium, divitium or ditum.
caelebs, unmarried, compos, possessed of, memor, mindful.
caelibum, compotum, memorum.

Exceptions occur, as:

multiplex, manifold, multiplicitum. Phoeniōs, Phoenicians, Phoenicum.

The participles have -ium; as, amans, loving, amantium.

Used as nouns, they have sometimes -um, as:
sapiens, a sage, sapientum. parens, a parent, parentum.

4. Compound adjectives follow the declension of the word from which they are formed, as:

concors, harmonious, anceps, double, quadrupēs, four-footed.
concordum, ancipitum, quadrupedum.

Even these, however, have the neuter plural commonly in -ia, as, ancipitia, quadrupedia.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

86. The Degrees of comparison are: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.
The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings -ior for the masculine and feminine, and -ius for the neuter.

The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings -issimus, -a, -um.

Vowel stems, before forming the Comparative and Superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

**Comparative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus, -a, -um, high,</td>
<td>alt-ior, higher,</td>
<td>alt-ius, alt-issimus, a, um, highest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -e, strong,</td>
<td>fort-ior,</td>
<td>fort-ius, fort-issimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utilis, -e, useful,</td>
<td>util-ior,</td>
<td>util-ius, util-issimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audax, bold,</td>
<td>audax-ior,</td>
<td>audax-ius, audax-issimus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prudens, wise,</td>
<td>prudent-ior,</td>
<td>prudent-ius, prudent-issimus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Peculiarities.**

88. 1. Adjectives in -er add the Superlative ending -rimus directly to the Nominative Masculine (-rimus for -simus by assimilation).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miser, -a, -um, wretched,</td>
<td>miser-ior, miser-ius,</td>
<td>miser-rius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celer, -is, -e, swift,</td>
<td>celer-ior, celer-ius,</td>
<td>celer-rius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acer, acris, &amp;cre, sharp,</td>
<td>acer-ior, acer-ius,</td>
<td>acer-rius.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus, old,</td>
<td>vesterior, vesterius,</td>
<td>vestermius.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

maturus, ripe, sometimes maturtimus.

2. Six adjectives in -ilis add -limus to the stem, after dropping -i, to form the Superlative: perhaps by assimilation.

facilis, easy; difficilis, hard; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; gracilis, slender; and humilis, low.

facilis, Comp. facil-ior, Sup. facil-limus (for facil-simum).
IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

3. The adjectives in *dicus*, *ficus*, *volus*, borrow the Comparative and Superlative from the participial forms in *-dicens*, *-ficens*, and *-volens*.


In like manner:


4. Adjectives in *-us*, preceded by a vowel, form the Comparative and Superlative by means of *magis* and *maxime*, *more* and *most*:


**Remark.**—Adjectives in *-quus* are not included under this last rule.


89. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

- *multus*, *much*, Comp. S. *plus* (no Dat. nor Abl.), Sup. *plurimum*.


**Remarks.**—1. Some Comparatives and Superlatives are in use, whilst the corresponding Positive is either lacking or rare.

- *dēterior*, *worse*, *dēterrimum*.
- *scior*, *swifter*, *scissimus*.
- *potior*, *better*, *potissimus*.
- *exterior*, *outer*, *extremus*, *extimus*, from *exterus*, *on the outside*, and prep. *extremus*, *without*.
- *superior*, *upper*, *supremus*, or *summus*, from *superus*, *on the top*, and prep. *suprā*, *above*.
- *inferior*, *lower*, *infimus*, from *inferus*, *below*, prep. *infra*, *below*.
- *posterior*, *hinder*, *later*, *postremus* and *posthumus*, from *posterus*, *coming after*, and prep. *post*, *after*.

2. The Positive stem of existing Comparatives is met with only in a preposition or an adverb: *as*, *ante*, *before*; *anterior*, *that is* *before*; *propere*, *near*; *propior*, *proximus*; *citerior*, *on this* *side*; *citimus*, *from citra*; *ulterior*, *further*; *ultimus*, *from ulterum*, *beyond*; *interior*, *inner*; *intimus*, *from intus*, *within*; *prior*, *former*; *primum*, *first*, *from prae*, *before*.

3. Many adjectives lack one or both of the degrees of comparison.

- *Diversus*, *different*, *novus*, *new*, *falsus*, *untrue*, *meritus*, *deserved*, have no Comparative.

- *Longinquus*, *afar*, *propinquus*, *near*, *salutāris*, *healthful*, *juvenis*, *young* (Comparative *junior*), and *senex*, *old* (Comparative *senior*), have no superlative.

“*Youngest*” and “*oldest*” are expressed by *minimus*, *maximus* (*nēquissimus*).
ADVERBS.

90. Adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of the adjectives.

1. Adjectives in -us and -er form the adverb in ē (mutilated Ablative).
   altus, lofty, altē. pulcher, beautiful, pulchrē. miser, wretched, miserē.

2. The adjectives of the Third Declension form their adverbs by adding -ter to the stem; stems in -nt dropping the t, and stems in a K-mute inserting the connecting vowel i before the ending.
   fortis, brave, fortīter. ferōx, wild, ferōciter. prūdens, foreseeing, prūdenter.

   Exceptions:
   audāx, bold, audācēter (seldom audāciter).
   difficilis, hard to do, difficilīter and difficilīter.

   But instead of these, generally, nōn facile, vix, aegrē.

3. The Ablative of some adjectives serves as an adverb:
   tūtus, safe, tūtō; falsō, falsely; perpetuō, ceaselessly; continuō, forthwith; imprōvisō, unexpectedly; primō, at first.
   consultē and consultō, purposely; certē, at least, and certō, certainly.
   rārē, thinly, and rārō, seldom; vērē, in truth, and vērō, true but.
   rectē, correctly, and rectā, straightway; dextērā or dextrā, to the right, and dextērerē, skilfully.
   sinistrā and laevā, to the left hand.

4. The Accusative neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb. This is true of all Comparatives.

   Multum, much; paulum, a little; nimium, too much; cēterum, for the rest; prīmum, first; postērum, finally; potissimum, chiefly; facile, easily; dulce, sweetly; triste, sadly; impūne, scot-free.

91. Comparison of Adverbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altē,</td>
<td>altius,</td>
<td>altissimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchrē,</td>
<td>pulchrius,</td>
<td>pulcherrimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē,</td>
<td>miserius,</td>
<td>miserrimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortīter,</td>
<td>fortius,</td>
<td>fortissimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audācēter,</td>
<td>audācius,</td>
<td>audācissimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūtō,</td>
<td>tūtius,</td>
<td>tūtissimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile,</td>
<td>facilius,</td>
<td>facillimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene,</td>
<td>melius,</td>
<td>optimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male,</td>
<td>pēius,</td>
<td>pessimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[parvus,</td>
<td>minus,</td>
<td>minimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[magnus,</td>
<td>magis,</td>
<td>least,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum,</td>
<td>plūs,</td>
<td>maximē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cito,</td>
<td>citius,</td>
<td>plūrimum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīt,</td>
<td>dītius,</td>
<td>citissimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe,</td>
<td>saeplius,</td>
<td>diūtissimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūper,</td>
<td>satius,</td>
<td>saepissimē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satis,</td>
<td>better,</td>
<td>nūperrimē,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NUMERALS.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

92. The Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: ** unus, one, duo, two, tres, three, the hundreds beginning with ducenti, two hundred, and the plural milia, thousands, which forms milium and milibus.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>duo,</th>
<th>duae,</th>
<th>duo,</th>
<th>tres,</th>
<th>tria.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>duorum,</td>
<td>duarum,</td>
<td>duorum,</td>
<td>trium.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>duobus,</td>
<td>duabus,</td>
<td>duobus,</td>
<td>tribus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>duas,</td>
<td>duo,</td>
<td>tres,</td>
<td>tria.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>duobus,</td>
<td>duabus,</td>
<td>tribus.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like duo is declined ambo, -ae, -o, both.

93. 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS. 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>23</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>unus, una, unum</td>
<td>primus, -a, -um (prior).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II</td>
<td>duo, duae, duo</td>
<td>secundus (alter).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>III</td>
<td>tres, tria</td>
<td>tertius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>quartus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td>quinque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VI</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VII</td>
<td>septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>octo</td>
<td>octavus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IX</td>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nonus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XI</td>
<td>undecim</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XII</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>tredecim</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XIV</td>
<td>quattuordecim</td>
<td>quartus decimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XV</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>sedecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XVII</td>
<td>septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XVIII</td>
<td>duodeviginti</td>
<td>duodëvigéntis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XIX</td>
<td>undéviginti</td>
<td>undévigéntis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>viginti</td>
<td>vicénsim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XXI</td>
<td>viginti unus</td>
<td>vicénsim primus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XXII</td>
<td>viginti duo</td>
<td>vicénsim secundus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XXIII</td>
<td>viginti tres</td>
<td>vicénsim tertius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XXIV</td>
<td>viginti quattuor</td>
<td>vicénsim quartus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XXV</td>
<td>viginti quinque</td>
<td>vicénsim quintus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XXVI</td>
<td>viginti sex</td>
<td>vicénsim sextus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. CARDINAL NUMERALS.</td>
<td>2. ORDINAL NUMERALS.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 XXVII</td>
<td>viginti septem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 XXVIII</td>
<td>duodédrigintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 XXIX</td>
<td>undédrigintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 XXX</td>
<td>trigintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 XL</td>
<td>quadrāgintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 L</td>
<td>quinquagintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 LX</td>
<td>sexagintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 LXX</td>
<td>septuagintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 LXXX</td>
<td>octogintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 XC</td>
<td>nongintā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 C</td>
<td>centum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 CI</td>
<td>centum et unus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115 CXV</td>
<td>centum et quindecim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120 CXX</td>
<td>centum et viginti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121 CXXI</td>
<td>centum et viginti ūnus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 CC</td>
<td>ducentī, -ae, -a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300 CCC</td>
<td>trecentī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400 CCCO</td>
<td>quadringenti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500 D (IO)</td>
<td>quingenti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600 DC</td>
<td>sexcentī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700 DCC</td>
<td>septingenti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800 DCCC</td>
<td>octingenti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900 DCCCC</td>
<td>nongenti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000 M (ClO)</td>
<td>mille</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1001 MI</td>
<td>mille et ūnus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101 MCI</td>
<td>mille centum ūnus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1120 MCXX</td>
<td>mille centum viginti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1131 MCXXI</td>
<td>mille centum viginti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200 MCC</td>
<td>mille ducentī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000 MM</td>
<td>duo millia (millia)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2222</td>
<td>duo millia ducentī víginti duo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5000 I00</td>
<td>quinque millia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000 CCI00</td>
<td>decem millia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21,000</td>
<td>ēnum et viginti millia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>centum millia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>deciēs centēna millia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NUMERALS.

REMARK.—D is short for IO, M for CIC. Adding C on the right of I multiplies by 10: IOO = 5000; IOOO = 50,000. Putting C before as often as C stands after multiplies by 3: CIO = 1000; CClOO = 10,000; CCClOOO = 100,000.

94. COMPOUND NUMERALS.

1. From 10 to 20, as in the tables, or separately: decem et tres.

2. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, &c., are commonly expressed by subtraction; occasionally, as in English.

3. From 20 to 100, the compound numerals stand in the same order as the English: twenty-one, viginti unus; or one and twenty, unus et viginti.

As 21 years old: annos unus et viginti (viginti unus), unus et viginti annos natus.

4. From 100 on, et is inserted after the first numeral, or omitted altogether: mille et centum unus, or mille centum unus = 1101.

CARDINALS.

21-27 viginti unus or unus et viginti
101 centum et unus
120 centum et viginti
131 centum et viginti unus
1001 mille et unus
1101 mille et centum unus
1125 mille et centum viginti quinque
2223 duo milia et ducenti viginti duo

ORDINALS.

18-17 tertius decimus or decimus et tertius
19 undevicesimus
21 vigesimus primus
22 vigesimus secundus
23 vigesimus tertius

95. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS.

1 singuli, -ae, -a, one each.
2 bini, -ae, -a, two each.
3 terni
4 quaterni
5 quinque
6 sex
7 septem
8 octo
9 novem
10 deni
11 unden
12 duodeca
13 terni deni
14 quaterni deni
15 quinque deni
16 sex deni
17 septem deni
18 octo deni, duodeca
19 novem deni, undecena
20 viceni
21 viceni singuli
22 viceni bini, binis et vicini
23 duodeceni
28 duodeca
29 undeceni
30 triena
30 quadragenarii

Digitized by Google
NUMERAL ADVERBS.

50 quinquageni
60 sexageni
70 septuageni
80 octogeni
90 nonageni
100 centeni
200 ducenti
300 treceni
400 quadringeni
500 quingeni

600 sexageni
700 septeningeni
800 octingeni
900 noneni
1000 singula milia
2000 binai milia
3000 trima milia
10,000 dena milia
100,000 centena milia

REMARKS.—1. The distributives are used with an exactness, which is foreign to our idiom, whenever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table. But when singuli is expressed, the cardinal may be used.

2. The distributives are used with Pluralia tantum: binae literae, treci duo scriptae. But with these unae is used for one, trinia for three: unae litterae, trinia literae.

3. The poets occasionally use the distributives for cardinals.


1 simplex, single,
2 duplex, double,
3 triplex, triple,
4 quadruplex,
5 quinuplex.

These answer the question, how many fold?

5. Proportional Numerals.

1 simplius, -a, -um, single,
2 duplus, double,
3 triplus,
4 quadruplus.
5 quintuplus.
6 sextuplus.
7 septuplus.
8 octuplus.

These answer the question, how many times as great?

REMARK.—Only a few forms can be proved.

96. NUMERAL ADVERBS.

1 semel, once,
2 bis, twice,
3 ter
4 quater
5 quinqui, quinquenis
6 sexi
7 septi
8 octi
9 novi
10 deci
11 undici

12 duodeci
13 ter deci, tredecii
14 quater deci, quattuordecii
15 quinque deci, quindecii
16 sexi deci, sedecii
17 septi deci
18 duodeci, octi deci
19 undeci, novi deci
20 vici
21 semel et vici, vicii et semel, vicii semel,*

* Not semel vicii, bis vicii, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times.
### PRONOUNS.

#### 97. Pronouns designate without describing.

**Remark.**—The pronoun is not a word used instead of a noun. The noun says too much, for all nouns (proper as well as common) are originally descriptive; the pronoun simply points out. The noun says too little, because it cannot express person, as ego, *tu*, *thou*; it cannot express local appurtenance, as *hie*, *this* (here), *ille*, *that* (there).

#### 98. A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**I. Personal Pronouns of the First Person.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong>—N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ego</em></td>
<td><em>meus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. <em>mei</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. <em>meiḥ</em></td>
<td><em>me</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. <em>mē</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. <em>mē</em></td>
<td><em>from, with, by me</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
<td><em>nos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. <em>noster</em></td>
<td>of <em>us</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. <em>nōbis</em></td>
<td><em>nōster, nōstra, nōstrum, our or ours</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. <em>nōs</em></td>
<td><em>us</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. <em>nōbis</em></td>
<td><em>from, with, by us</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 99. II. Personal Pronouns of the Second Person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substantive</th>
<th>Possessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong>—N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>tu</em></td>
<td><em>tuis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. <em>tui</em></td>
<td><em>of thee</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. <em>tibi</em></td>
<td><em>to, for thee</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. <em>tē</em></td>
<td><em>thee</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. <em>tē</em></td>
<td><em>from, with, by thee</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Not semel vicēs, bis vicēs, etc., because that would be, once twenty times = 20 times; twice twenty times = 40 times.*
**PRONOUNS.**

**SUBSTANTIVE.**

| PLUR.—N. | vōs. | ye or you, |
| G. | vestri, | of you, |
| | vestrum. | |
| D. | vōbis. | to, for you, |
| Ac. | vōs. | you, |
| Abl. | vōbis. | from, with, by you. |

**POSSESSIVE.**

| vester, vestra, vestrum, your or yours. |

**REMARKS.**—1. The forms of the Genitive Plural, nóstrum and vestrum, are used as partitive genitives in reference to number.

2. From nóster and vester and also from eōjus, whose? (104) are formed the Gentile adjectives of one ending: nóstrās, of our country; vestrās, of your country; eōjās, of whose country? Gen. nóstrātis, vestrātis, eōjātis.

**III. PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON.**

100. The personal pronoun of the third person is represented by the determinative in the oblique cases, with special forms for the reflexive.

**DETERMINATIVE.**

| SING.—N | [is, ea, id], | he, she, it, |
| G. | eōjus. | of him, etc., |
| D. | eō, to, for him, |
| Ac. | eum, cas. id. | him, her, it, |
| Abl. | eōs, eōs, eoí, from, with, by him, etc. |

| POSSESSIVE. | (supplied by the genitive.) |
| eōjus, his, hers, its. |

| PLUR.—N | [eō, or if, cas, ea], | they, |
| G. | eōrum, eārum, eōrum, of them, |
| D. | eōs, or eis, | to, for them, |
| Ac. | eōs, eās, ea, | them, |
| Abl. | eōs, or eis, | from, with, by them. |

**POSSESSIVE.**

| eōrum, eārum, eōrum, their, or theirs. |

**REFLEXIVE.**

| SING.—N | | |
| G. | suí, | of him, her, it(self), |
| D. | sībf. | to, for, him(self), her(self), |
| Ac. | sē (sēsē), | him(self), her(self), |
| Abl. | sē(sēsē), | from, with, by him(self). |

| POSSESSIVE. | suus. -a, -um, his, her(s), its (own). |

| PLUR.—N | | |
| G. | suí, | of them(selves), |
| D. | sībf. | to, for them(selves), |
| Ac. | sē(sēsē), | them(selves), |
| Abl. | sē(sēsē), | from, with, by them(selves). |

| POSSESSIVE. | suus. -a, -um, their (own), theirs. |

**REMARKS.**—1. The enclitic -met may be added to all the forms of ego (except nóstrum), to all the forms of tu (except tū and vestrum), to sibī, sē, and the forms of suus; egomet, I myself.

2. The enclitic -pte is joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessives; it is especially common with suī; suīptē ingēniō, by his own genius.

3. From tū are formed tūte and tūtemet.
101.  

**B. Determinative Pronouns.**

1. *is, he, that, etc.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. <em>is</em>, ea, id,</td>
<td><em>et, or it</em>, <em>eae</em>, <em>ea</em>,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. <em>aëjus</em>, eörum, eärum, eörum,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. <em>et</em>, eils, or ils,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum, eam, id, eös, eäs, ea,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eō, eā, eō, eils, or ils.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. *Idem, the same.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. <em>Idem</em>, eadem, idem, eidem, or <em>fīdem</em>, eaedem, eadem,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. <em>aëjusdem</em>, eörundem, eärundem, eörundem,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. <em>eidem</em>, eídem, or <em>fīsdem</em>,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eundem, eandem, idem, eösdem, eäsdem, eadem,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. eōdem, eädem, eōdem, eídem, or <em>fīsdem</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. *ipse, he, self.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. <em>ipse</em>, ipsa, ipsum, ipsū, ipsae, ipsa,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. <em>ipsūs</em>, ipsōrum, ipsārum, ipsōrum,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. <em>ipsā</em>, ipsā,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ipsum, ipsam, ipsum, ipsōs, ipsās, ipsa,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. ipsā, ipsā, ipsō. ipsās.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

102.  

**C. Demonstrative Pronouns.**

I. **DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE FIRST PERSON.**

*hís, this.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. N.</th>
<th>Pl. N.</th>
<th>Pl. N.</th>
<th>Pl. N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hōc, hāec, hōc</td>
<td>Pl. N. hī, hae, naec, <em>these</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. hājus, hōrum, hārum, hōrum,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. hīc, his,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hunc, hanc, hōc, hās, hās, hāec,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. hōc, hāc, hōc, his.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. **DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE SECOND PERSON.**

*iste, that.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. N.</th>
<th>Pl. N.</th>
<th>Pl. N.</th>
<th>Pl. N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iste, ista, istud,</td>
<td>Pl. N. isti, istae, ista,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. istius, istōrum, istārum, istōrum,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. istī, istis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. istum, istam, istud, istōs, istās, ista,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. istō, istā, istō, istis.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN FOR THE THIRD PERSON.

Sing. N. ille, illa, illud, Pl. N. illi, illae, illa,
G. illus,
D. illi,
Ac. illum, illam, illud,
Abl. illō, illā, illī.

Remarks.—1. Hīc: the forms in -e arise from the enclitic -ce. So hīce, hunc, are found in older Latin; and -oi in the interrogative form with nē, hicine? This -ce is sometimes appended to the other forms: hājusce, hōsce.
2. Iste and Ille have, like Hīc, forms in -e, but only in Nom. Acc. Abl.

103. D. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Sing. N. qui, quae, quod, Pl. N. qui, quae, quae,
G. cuius,
D. cui,
Ac. quem, quam, quod,
Abl. quō, quā, quō.

Remarks.—Quēs, quīs, is also found as a Plural Dat. Abl. The form qui is used as the Abl. Sing. quō, quā, quō, Chiefly with -cum; quicum for quōcum, with whom.
Qui, interrogative, means how?

General Relatives are:

Substantive. quisquis, whoever,
Adjective. qui, quae, quod, quodcumque, quaequae, quodcumque, quaequae, quodcumque, quaequae, quodcumque, quaequae.

104. E. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Substantive. quis? who?
Adjective. qui? quae? quod? which?
Subst. and Adj. uter? utrum? who, which of two?

G. cuius? whose?
D. cui? to, for whom?
Ac. quem? whom? what?
Abl. quō? from, with, by whom or what?

Remark.—The plural of the substantive interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the adjective interrogative pronoun coincide with the forms of the relative qui, quae, quod, who, which.

Strengthened Interrogatives.

Substantive. quisnam? who pray?
Adjective. quinam? quaeam? quodnam? which pray?
105.  F. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. Substantive. aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, } somebody, some one or 
   quis, qua, quid, } other.

Adjective. aliqui, aliquae (or aliqua*), aliquod, } some, any.
   qui, quae (or qua*), quod, } quidam, quaedam, quiddam (and quoddam), a certain, certain one.
2. quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (and quodpiam), some one, some.
3. quisque, quaesque, quiqque and quodque, each one.
   unusquisque, unaquaque, unumquidque and unumquodque, each
   one severally.

The distinction between the substantive and adjective form is observed
rigorously only in the neuter.

Remark.—Quisquam is used only as a substantive, except with designations of
persons; scrip tor quisquam, any writer (at all), Gallus quisquam, any Gaul (at all).
The corresponding adjective is ullus.

ullus, -a, -um, any ; nul lu s, -a, -um, no one, not one. The corresponding
substantives are nemo (76), and nihil, which forms nihil and nihilò
(Abl.) only in certain combinations.

nonnullus, -a, -um, some, many a.

alius, -a, -ud, another ; alter, -era, -erum, the other, one (of two) ; neuter,
neutra, neutrum, neither of two.

alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, the one or the other of the two. Gen.
alterutrus.

(or alter uter, altera utra, alterum utrum. Gen. alterius utrius.)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, either. ambo, -ae, -o, both.

utervis, utravis, utrumvis, } whichever you please of the two.

CORRELATIVES.

106. I. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

quis? who? is, that, qui, who.
quális? of what kind? talis, such (of that
kind), quális, as (of which kind).
quantus? how much? tantus, so much, quantus, as much,
quot? how many? tot, so many. quot, as many.

* In neuter plural, aliqua or aliqua, qua or qua.
107. II. CORRELATIVE PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

1. Pronominal adverbs of place.

ubē? where? ibē, there, ubē, where.
quā? where? which hic, hāc, here, this way, quā, where, which way.
      istic, istāc, there, that way,
illic, illāc, there, yonder way.
unde? whence?
      inde, thence, unde, whence.
hinc, hence.
istinc, thence.
ilinc, thence, from yonder.
quō? whither?
      eō, thither. quō, whither.
hūc, hither.
istūc, thither.
ilūc, thither, yonder.

2. Pronominal adverbs of time.

quandō? when?
      tum, then, quandō,
tunc, at that time, quum.
nunc, now.
quotiēs? how often?
      totiēs, so often. quotiēs, as often as.

3. Pronominal adverbs of manner.

quōmodo? qui? how? ita, sic, so, thus, ut, utī, as.
quam? how much?
      tam, so much, quam, as.

108. III. COMPOUNDS OF THE RELATIVE FORMS.

1. The relative pronouns become indefinite by prefixing ali-:
   aliquantus, somewhat great; aliquot, several, some; alicubī, somewhere;
   alicunde, from somewhere; aliquandō, at some time.

2. The simple relatives become universal by doubling themselves, or by suffixed -cunque (cumque):
   quantuscunque, however great; quāliscunque, of whatever kind; quot-
   quot, however many; ubificunque, wheresoever; quandōcunque, whenever;
   quotiēscunque, however often; utut, in whatever way; utcunque, howso-
   ever; quamquam, however, although.

3. Many of the relatives are further compounded with -vis or
   -libet:
   quantuslibet, quantusvis, as great as you please; ubivis, where you will;
   quamvis, as you please, though.
THE VERB.

109. The Inflection given to the verbal stem is called Conjugation, and expresses:

1. Person and Number;
2. Voice—Active or Passive;
3. Tense—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect;

110. These forms belong to the Finite Verb. Outside of the Finite Verb, and akin to the noun, are the verbal forms called Infinitive, Supine, Participle, Gerund.

111. The Inflection of the Verb is effected by means of—

1. Personal endings,
2. Connecting vowels,
3. Tense-signs.

1. The personal endings are pronominal forms, which serve to indicate not only person, but also number and voice.
2. The connecting vowels are either euphonic or symbolic.
3. The tense-signs occur only in the compound tenses (weak tenses).

The compound or weak tenses are:

The Imperfect, Active and Passive. The Perfect in \( \text{vi (ui)} \) and \( \text{st} \).
The Pluperfect Active. The Futures in \(-\text{bo, -bor}.\)
So in \( \text{amā-ba-m} \), I loved, \( b \) is the tense-sign, \( a \) the connecting vowel, \( m \) the personal ending (comp. \( \text{me} \)), 1st P. Singular Active.

Remarks.—1. The tense-signs are themselves auxiliary verbs, as: \( -\text{r(am)} \) for \( -\text{s(am)} \), from \( (e)s-(se) \); \( \text{v(ī)} \), \( u(ī) \) from \( \text{fu(ī)} \); \( s(ī) \) from \( (e)s (se) \); \( -\text{b(am)} \) \( -\text{b(ō)} \) from \( \text{fu-(am), fu(ō)} \).
2. No adequate uniform translation can be given to all the moods and tenses. Especially is this true of the subjunctive. See Syntax.

Several parts of the verb are formed with the verb sum, I am.
112. **The Verb sum, I am (stem es-).**

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sum</td>
<td>1. sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es</td>
<td>2. estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. est</td>
<td>3. sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Subjunctive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I am</td>
<td>1. I be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. thou art</td>
<td>2. thou be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he, she, it is</td>
<td>3. he, she, it be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Subjunctive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I was</td>
<td>1. I were (forem),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. thou wast</td>
<td>2. thou were (forem),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he was,</td>
<td>3. he were (foret),</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Subjunctive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I shall be</td>
<td>1. I shall be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. thou will be</td>
<td>2. thou will be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he will be</td>
<td>3. he will be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Subjunctive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I have been, I was</td>
<td>1. I have, may have, been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. thou hast been, thou fueris</td>
<td>2. thou have, mayest have, been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he has been, he was, fuerit</td>
<td>3. he have, may have, been.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Subjunctive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I had been</td>
<td>1. I had, might have, been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. thou hadst been, thou fueris</td>
<td>2. thou hadst, mightest have, been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. he had been, fuerat</td>
<td>3. he had, might have, been.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
<th>Subjunctive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. we had been, fueramus</td>
<td>1. we had, might have, been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. you had been, fueratis</td>
<td>2. you had, might have, been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. they had been, fuerunt</td>
<td>3. they had, might have, been.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
COMPONDS OF SUM.

INDICATIVE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING.—1. fueri, I shall have been,
2. fueris, thou wilt have been,
3. fuerit, he shall have been,

PLUR.—1. fuerimus, we shall have been,
2. fueritis, you will have been,
3. fuerint, they will have been.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.
1. ——,
2. es, be thou, esti, thou shalt be,
3. ——,

PLUR.
1. ——,
2. este, be ye, estote, you shall be,
3. sunt, they shall be.

INFINITIVE.

PRET. esse, to be,
PERF. fuisse, to have been,
FUT. futurus (-am, -um), esse (fore), to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. futurus, -a, -um, about to be.

Remark.—Only absum and praesum form present participles: absens, absent, and praesens, present.

PROSUM, I profit.

114. In the forms of prōsum, prō- is used before vowels.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, prō-sum, prō-es, prō-est,
prō-sumus, prō-estis, prō-sunt,

IMPERFECT, prō-eram,

FUTURE, prō-eris,

PERFECT, prō-ful,

PLUPERFECT, prō-fueram,

FUT. PERF., prō-fueri,

INFINITIVE. PRET. prō-esse; PERF. prō-fuisse.
**THE VERB POSSUM.**

*Possum, I am able, I can.*

115. *Possum* is compounded of *pot* (potis, pote) and *sum*; *t* becomes *s* before *s*.

### INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pos-sum, <em>I am able, can,</em></td>
<td>pos-sim, <em>I be able.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-es,</td>
<td>pos-sis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-est,</td>
<td>pos-sit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pos-sumus,</td>
<td>pos-simus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-estis,</td>
<td>pos-sitīs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pos-sunt,</td>
<td>pos-sint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-eram, <em>I was able,</em></td>
<td>pos-sem, <em>I were, might be, able.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-eras,</td>
<td>pos-sēs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-erat,</td>
<td>pos-set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-eramus,</td>
<td>pos-sēmus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-erātis,</td>
<td>pos-sētīs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-erant,</td>
<td>pos-sent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PERFECT.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-ul, <em>I have been able,</em></td>
<td>pot-uerim, <em>I have, may have, been able.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-uis,</td>
<td>pot-uerīs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-ui,</td>
<td>pot-uerit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. pot-ulmus,</td>
<td>pot-uerimus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-uis,</td>
<td>pot-uerītis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-uiunt,</td>
<td>pot-uerint.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### systems of conjugation.

**indicative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect.</th>
<th>Subjunctive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. pot-ueram, <em>I had been</em> able,</td>
<td>pot-uissem, <em>I had, might have, been able,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-uerās,</td>
<td>pot-uisseqs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-uerat,</td>
<td>pot-uisset,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. pot-uerāmus,</td>
<td>pot-uissemus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. pot-uerātis,</td>
<td>pot-uissetis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pot-uerant,</td>
<td>pot-uisseent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect.**

| Sing.—1. pot-uerā, *I shall have been able.* |
| 2. pot-uerēs, |
| 3. pot-uerit. |
| Plur.—1. pot-uerēmus, |
| 2. pot-uerētis, |
| 3. pot-uerint. |

**Infinite.** Present. Possē, to be able. Perfect. Potuiisse, to have been able.

### Systems of Conjugation.

116. There are two Systems of Conjugation, distinguished by the stem-characteristic, viz., the Vowel Conjugation and the Consonant Conjugation.

117. Vowel verbal stems end in ā, ē, ĩ (First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations).

Consonant verbal stems end in one of the consonants (Third Conjugation).

Stems in u follow the Consonant Conjugation.

### The Stem-Forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. amā-ē.</td>
<td>amā-re,</td>
<td>amā-vī,</td>
<td>amā-tum, to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. dēlē-ē,</td>
<td>dēlē-re,</td>
<td>dēlē-vī,</td>
<td>dēlē-tum, to blot out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mone-ē,</td>
<td>monē-re,</td>
<td>monē-tum, to remind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>statu-ē,</td>
<td>statu-e-re,</td>
<td>statu-ī, to settle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scrib-ē,</td>
<td>scrib-e-re,</td>
<td>scrip-st, to write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. audi-ē,</td>
<td>audi-re,</td>
<td>audi-vī,</td>
<td>audi-tum, to hear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
119.  

**FIRST CONJUGATION.**

**ACTIVE.**

**INDICATIVE:**

**SUBJUNCTIVE:**

**PRESENT.**

*Am loving, do love, love.*

**SING.**—1. am-ǝ,  
2. amǝ-s,  
3. amǝ-t,  

**PLUR.**—1. amǝ-mus,  
2. amǝ-tis,  
3. amǝ-nt,  

*Be loving, may love.*

**SING.**—  
1. amǝ-m,  
2. amǝ-s,  
3. amǝ-t.  

**PLUR.**—  
1. amǝ-mus,  
2. amǝ-tis,  
3. amǝ-nt.  

**IMPERFECT.**

*Was loving, loved.*

**SING.**—1. amǝ-bǝ-m,  
2. amǝ-bǝ-s,  
3. amǝ-bǝ-t,  

**PLUR.**—1. amǝ-bǝ-mus,  
2. amǝ-bǝ-tis,  
3. amǝ-bǝ-nt,  

*Were loving, might love.*

**SING.**—  
1. amǝ-re-m,  
2. amǝ-re-s,  
3. amǝ-re-t,  

**PLUR.**—  
1. amǝ-re-mus,  
2. amǝ-re-tis,  
3. amǝ-re-nt.  

**FUTURE.**

*Shall be loving, shall love.*

**SING.**—1. amǝ-bǝ-š,  
2. amǝ-bi-s,  
3. amǝ-bi-t.  

**PLUR.**—1. amǝ-bi-mus,  
2. amǝ-bi-tis,  
3. amǝ-bi-nt.  

**IMPERATIVE.**

**SING.**—1. ——,  
2. amǝ, *love thou, amǝ-tǝ,* *thou shalt love.*  
3. amǝ-tǝ, *he shall love.*  

**PLUR.**—1. ——,  
2. amǝ-te, *love ye, amǝ-tǝ-te,* *ye shall love.*  
3. amǝ-ntǝ, *they shall love.*  

**PARTICIPLE.**

**PRESENT.** N. ama-n-s, G. ama-nt-is, *loving.*  
**FUTURE.** amǝ-tur-us, -a, -um, *being about to love.*
120. **FIRST CONJUGATION.**

**ACTIVE.**

**INDICATIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong> - 1. <strong>amā-vi,</strong></td>
<td><strong>Have, may have, loved.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <strong>amā-vi-stī,</strong></td>
<td><strong>amā-ve-ri-m,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <strong>amā-vi-t,</strong></td>
<td><strong>amā-ve-ri-s,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong> - 1. <strong>amā-vi-mus,</strong></td>
<td><strong>amā-ve-ri-mus,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <strong>amā-vi-stīs,</strong></td>
<td><strong>amā-ve-ri-tis,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <strong>amā-vi-runt,</strong></td>
<td><strong>amā-ve-ri-nt.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

| **Had loved.** | **Had, might have, loved.** |
| **Sing.** - 1. **amā-ve-ra-m,** | **amā-vi-sse-m,** |
| 2. **amā-ve-ra-s,** | **amā-vi-sse-s,** |
| 3. **amā-ve-ra-t,** | **amā-vi-sse-t.** |
| **PLUR.** - 1. **amā-ve-ra-mus,** | **amā-vi-sse-mus,** |
| 2. **amā-ve-ra-tis,** | **amā-vi-sse-tis,** |
| 3. **amā-ve-ra-nt,** | **amā-vi-sse-nt.** |

**Future Perfect.**

| **Shall have loved.** |
| **Sing.** - 1. **amā-ve-rī,** |
| 2. **amā-ve-rī-s,** |
| 3. **amā-ve-rī-t.** |
| **PLUR.** - 1. **amā-ve-rī-mus,** |
| 2. **amā-ve-rī-tis,** |
| 3. **amā-ve-rī-nt.** |

**INFINITIVE.**

| **Pres. amā-re, to love.** |
| **Presf. amā-vi-sse, to have loved.** |
| **Fut. amā-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to love.** |

**GERUND.**

| **SUPINE.** |
| **N.** [amā-re], loving. |
| **Ger.** ama-nd-l, of loving. |
| **D.** ama-nd-ō, to loving. |
| **Acc.** [amā-re], (ad) ama-nd-um, loving, to love. |
| **Abl.** ama-nd-ō, by loving. |
| **1. amā-tum, to love.** |
| **2. amā-tū, to love, in the loving.** |
121. 

FIRST CONJUGATION.

INDICATIVE.

PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Be, may be, loved.

Be, may be, loved.

Be, may be, loved.

Am loved.

SING.—1. am-o-r,
2. am-a-ris,
3. am-a-tur,

Plur.—1. am-a-mur,
2. am-a-mini,
3. am-a-ntur,

Imperfect.

Were, might be, loved.

Were, might be, loved.

Were, might be, loved.

Was loved.

SING.—1. am-a-ba-r,
2. am-a-ba-ris,
3. am-a-ba-tur,

Plur.—1. am-a-ba-mur,
2. am-a-ba-mini,
3. am-a-ba-ntur,

Future.

Shall be loved.

SING.—1. am-a-bo-r,
2. am-a-be-ris,
3. am-a-bi-tur.

Plur.—1. am-a-bi-mur,
2. am-a-bi-mini,
3. am-a-bi-ntur.

Imperative.

Sing.—1. ——,
2. am-a-re, be thou loved,
3. am-a-tor, thou shalt be loved,

Plur.—1. ——,
2. am-a-mini, be ye loved.
3. am-a-ntor, they shall be loved.

Infinitive.

Pasp. am-a-rl,

Fut. am-a-tum lri,

Pres. am-a-tum, -am, -um, esse, to have been loved.

For. am-a-tum, -am, -um, fore.
122. **First Conjugation.**

**Passive.**

### Indicative.

**Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Have been loved.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
<th>Have, may have, been loved.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amā-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,</td>
<td>amā-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>es,</td>
<td>s-l-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>es-t,</td>
<td>s-l-t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>s-u-mus, amā-t-l, -ae, -a,</th>
<th>s-l-mus,</th>
<th>s-l-tis,</th>
<th>s-l-nt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>es-tis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>s-u-nt,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Had been loved.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
<th>Had, might have, been loved.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amā-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,</td>
<td>amā-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er-a-s,</td>
<td>es-se-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er-a-t,</td>
<td>es-se-t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>er-a-mus, amā-t-l, -ae, -a,</th>
<th>es-se-mus,</th>
<th>es-se-tis,</th>
<th>es-se-nt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er-a-tis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er-a-nt,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>Shall have been loved.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>amā-t-us, -a, -um, er-d,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er-i-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er-i-t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>er-i-mus,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er-i-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er-i-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participial.

**Perfect.** amā-t-us, -a, -um, *loved.*

**Gerundive.** ama-nd-us, -a, -um, *(one) to be loved.*

3*
123. Second Conjugation.

### Active

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. dēle-b</td>
<td>1. dēlē-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dēlē-s</td>
<td>2. dēlē-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dēlē-t</td>
<td>3. dēlē-nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Be destroying, may destroy.</td>
<td>Were destroying, might destroy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēle-a-m</td>
<td>dēle-a-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēle-a-s</td>
<td>dēle-a-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēle-a-t</td>
<td>dēle-a-nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Was destroying.</td>
<td>Were destroying, might destroy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēlē-ba-m</td>
<td>dēlē-ba-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēlē-ba-s</td>
<td>dēlē-ba-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēlē-ba-t</td>
<td>dēlē-ba-nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shall destroy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēlē-bō</td>
<td>dēlē-bi-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēlē-bi-s</td>
<td>dēlē-bi-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēlē-bi-t</td>
<td>dēlē-bi-nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dēlē</td>
<td>2. dēlē-te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destroy thou</td>
<td>destroy ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēlē-tō</td>
<td>dēlē-tōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thou shalt destroy</td>
<td>ye shall destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he shall destroy</td>
<td>they shall destroy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participle

#### Present

N. dēle-n-s; G. dele-nt-is, destroying.

#### Future

dēlē-tūr-us, -a, -um, about to destroy.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

124

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have destroyed, destroyed.</td>
<td>Have, may have, destroyed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. délé-ví,</td>
<td>délé-ve-ri-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. délé-vi-stí,</td>
<td>délé-ve-ri-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. délé-ví-t,</td>
<td>délé-ve-ri-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. délé-ví-mus,</td>
<td>délé-ve-ri-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. délé-vi-stís,</td>
<td>délé-ve-ri-tis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PUPERFECT.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Had destroyed.</td>
<td>Had, might have, destroyed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. délé-ve-ra-m,</td>
<td>délé-ví-sse-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. délé-ve-rá-s,</td>
<td>délé-ví-sse-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. délé-ve-ra-t,</td>
<td>délé-ví-sse-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. délé-ve-ra-mus,</td>
<td>délé-ví-sse-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. délé-ve-rá-tis,</td>
<td>délé-ví-sse-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. délé-ve-ra-nt,</td>
<td>délé-ví-sse-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE PERFECT.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shall have destroyed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. délé-ve-rá,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. délé-ve-rá-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. délé-ve-ri-t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. délé-ve-ri-mus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. délé-ve-ri-tis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. délé-ve-ri-nt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. déls-re, to destroy.

PERFECT. déls-ve-sse, to have destroyed.

FUTURE. déls-túr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to destroy.

GERUND.

N. [déls-re], destroying, to destroy.

G. déls-nd-l, of destroying.

D. déls-nd-ô, to, for destroying.

Ac. [déls-re] (ad) déls-nd-um, destroying, 1. déls-túm, to destroy.

Abl. déls-nd-ô, by destroying, 2. déls-tú, to destroy, in the destroying.
125. Second Conjugation.

## Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Am destroyed.</em></td>
<td><em>Be, may be, destroyed.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. dēlē-o-r,</td>
<td>dēle-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dēlē-ris,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dēlē-tur,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-tur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. dēlē-mur,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dēlē-mini,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dēlē-ntur,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Was destroyed.</em></td>
<td><em>Were destroyed.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. dēlē-ba-r,</td>
<td>dēlē-re-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dēlē-ba-ris,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-re-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dēlē-ba-tur,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-re-tur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. dēlē-ba-mur,</td>
<td>dēlē-re-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dēlē-ba-mini,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-re-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dēlē-ba-ntur,</td>
<td>dēle-ā-re-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Shall be destroyed.</em></td>
<td><em>Thou shalt be destroyed.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. dēlē-bo-r,</td>
<td>dēlē-tor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dēlē-bo-ris,</td>
<td>thou shall be destroyed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dēlē-bo-tur.</td>
<td>dēle-tor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. dēlē-bo-mur,</td>
<td>he shall be destroyed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dēlē-bo-mini,</td>
<td>dēlē-ntor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dēlē-bo-ntur.</td>
<td>they shall be destroyed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Imperative

| SING.—1. | dēlē-tor, thou shall be destroyed. |
| 2. dēlē-re, be thou destroyed. | dēlē-tor, he shall be destroyed. |
| 3. | |
| PLUR.—1. | dēlē-ntor, they shall be destroyed. |
| 2. dēlē-mini, be ye destroyed, | |
126. **SECOND CONJUGATION.**

**PASSIVE.**

**INDICATIVE.**

**PERFECT.**

*Have been destroyed, was destroyed. Have, may have, been destroyed.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>1. délē-t-us, -a, -um, s-um,</th>
<th>délē-t-us, -a, -um, s-im,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. es,</td>
<td>es-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. es-t,</td>
<td>s-1-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.</td>
<td>1. délē-t-l, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>s-um-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. es-tis,</td>
<td>s-l-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. s-u nt,</td>
<td>s-l nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

*Had been destroyed. Had, might have, been destroyed.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>1. délē-t-us, -a, -um,</th>
<th>er-a-m,</th>
<th>délē-t-us, -a, -um,</th>
<th>es-se-m,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. er-a-s,</td>
<td></td>
<td>er-a-s,</td>
<td>es-se-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. er-1-t,</td>
<td></td>
<td>es-se-t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.</td>
<td>1. délē-t-l, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>er-a-mus,</td>
<td>délē-t-l, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>es-se-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. er-a-tis,</td>
<td></td>
<td>es-se-tis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. er-a nt,</td>
<td></td>
<td>es-se nt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect.**

*Shall have been destroyed.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>1. délē-t-us, -a, -um,</th>
<th>er-1-d,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. er-1-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. er-1-t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.</td>
<td>1. délē-t-l, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>er-i-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. er-i-tis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. er-u nt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

**Pres.** délē-t, to be destroyed.

**Perf.** délē-t-um, -am, -um, esse, to have been destroyed.

**Fut.** délē-t-um iri, to be about to be destroyed.

**F. P.** délē-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

**PARTICIPLES.**

**Perfect.** délē-t-us, -a, -um, destroyed.

**Gerundive.** délē-nd-us, -a, -um, [one] to be destroyed.
SECOND CONJUGATION.

127. **SECOND CONJUGATION.**

Like delere, to destroy, are conjugated only, nare, to spin, flere, to weep, and the compounds of -plore, fill, and -oler (olerare), grow; but aboleo, I abolish, forms abolitum.

All other verbs of the Second Conjugation retain the characteristic e in the forms of the Present Stem, and drop it in the rest of the verbal forms. In the Perfect, the ending vi becomes ul. In the Supine, the connecting vowel i is used.

128. Five verbs of the Second Conjugation form their Supine without a connecting vowel, viz.:

- cūseō
- docēō
- misceō
- tenēō
- torreō

{oēsēō, oēsēare, oēnsul, oēnsum, 'to think.'}
{doceō, docēare, docul, doctum, 'to teach.'}
{mīseō, mīsēare, mīsul, mistum (mistum), 'to mix.'}
{tenēō, tenēare, tenuul, (tentum), 'to hold.'}
{torrēō, torrēare, torrul, tostum, 'to parch.'}

**SYNOPSIS OF mone-o, I remind.**

129. **ACTIVE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRES. mone-ō,</td>
<td>mone-a-m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPF. monē-bam,</td>
<td>monē-re-m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT. monē-b-ō,</td>
<td>mon-ue-ri-m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF. mon-ul,</td>
<td>mon-ueisse-m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPLF. mon-ue-ra-m,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. PR. mon-ue-x-ō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

monē,

monē-to,

INFINITIVE.

Pres. monē-re.

Perf. mon-ui-sse.

Fut. mon-itūr-um, -am, um, esse.

PARTICIPLE. Pres. mone-n-s.

GERUND. mone-nd-l.

SUPINE. 1. mon-itum.

2. mon-itūl.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. monē-o-r.

Impf. monē-ba-r.

Fut. monē-bo-r.

Perf. mon-it-us, -a, -um, s-um,

Plpf. er-a-m,

F. Pr. er-ū.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

mone-a-r.

monē-re-r.

mon-it-us, -a, -um, si-m.

es-se-m.

IMPERATIVE.

monē-re,

monē-tor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. monē-rū.

Perf. mon-it-um, -am, -um, es-se.

Fut. mon-it-um irt.

F. Pr. mon-it-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLE. PERFECT.

mone-nd-us, -a, -um.

GERUNDIVE, mone-nd-us, -a, -um.
### 131. THIRD Conjugation.

#### Indicative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACTIVE</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Buy.</em></td>
<td><em>Be buying, may buy.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. em-ā,</td>
<td>em-ā-a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-ā-a,</td>
<td>em-ā-ā,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. em-ā-t,</td>
<td>em-ā-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. em-ā-mus,</td>
<td>em-ā-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-ā-tis,</td>
<td>em-ā-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. em-ā-nt,</td>
<td>em-ā-nt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Was buying.</em></td>
<td><em>Were buying, might buy.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. em-ā-ba-m,</td>
<td>em-ā-ba-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-ā-ba-s,</td>
<td>em-ā-ba-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. em-ā-ba-t,</td>
<td>em-ā-ba-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. em-ā-ba-mus,</td>
<td>em-ā-ba-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-ā-ba-tis,</td>
<td>em-ā-ba-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. em-ā-ba-nt,</td>
<td>em-ā-ba-nt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. em-a-m,</td>
<td>em-a-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-a-s,</td>
<td>em-a-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. em-a-t,</td>
<td>em-a-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. em-a-mus,</td>
<td>em-a-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-a-tis,</td>
<td>em-a-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. em-a-nt,</td>
<td>em-a-nt,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1.</td>
<td>em-ā-tā, thou shalt buy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-ā-tā,</td>
<td>em-ā-tā, he shall buy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>em-ā-tā, ye shall buy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-ā-tā,</td>
<td>em-ā-tā, they shall buy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participle.**

Present. N. em-a-m-s; G. em-a-nt-is, buying.
Future. em-tār-us, -a,-um, about to buy.
### Third Conjugation.

#### Active.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Have bought, bought.</em></td>
<td><em>Have, may have, bought.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong>—1. ōm-i-[t],</td>
<td>Ṓm-e-ri-[m],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ōm-i-sti,</td>
<td>Ṓm-e-ri-[s],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ōm-i-t,</td>
<td>Ṓm-e-ri-[t],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong>—1. ōm-i-mus,</td>
<td>Ṓm-e-ri-[m]-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ōm-i-stis,</td>
<td>Ṓm-e-ri-[s]-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ōm-ō-ru-nt,</td>
<td>Ṓm-e-ri-[t]-nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Pluperfect.**                  | **Pluperfect.**                  |
| *Had bought.*                    | *Had, might have, bought.*       |
| **Sing.**—1. ōm-e-ra-m,          | Ṓm-i-sse-[m],                    |
| 2. ōm-e-ra-[s],                  | Ṓm-i-sse-[s],                    |
| 3. ōm-e-ra-[t],                  | Ṓm-i-sse-[t]                     |
| **Plur.**—1. ōm-e-ra-[m]-mus,     | Ṓm-i-sse-[m]-mus,                |
| 2. ōm-e-ra-[s]-tis,              | Ṓm-i-sse-[s]-tis,                |
| 3. ōm-e-ra-[t]-nt,               | Ṓm-i-sse-[t]-nt                  |

| **Future Perfect.**              | **Future Perfect.**              |
| *Shall have bought.*             | *Shall have bought.*             |
| **Sing.**—1. ōm-e-ṛ-,            | Ṓm-e-ṛ-[s],                      |
| 2. ōm-e-ṛ-[s],                   | Ṓm-e-ṛ-[t]                       |
| 3. ōm-e-ṛ-[t]                    |                                 |
| **Plur.**—1. ōm-e-ṛ-[s]-mus,     | Ṓm-e-ṛ-[s]-mus,                  |
| 2. ōm-e-ṛ-[s]-tis,               | Ṓm-e-ṛ-[t]-tis,                  |
| 3. ōm-e-ṛ-[t]-nt                 | Ṓm-e-ṛ-[s]-nt                    |

### Infinitive.

- **Pres.** em-e-re, to buy.
- **Perf.** ōm-i-sse, to have bought.
- **Fut.** em-tūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to buy.

### Gerund.

- **N.** [em-e-re], to buy, buying.
- **G.** em-e-ng-[i], of buying.
- **D.** em-e-ng-[o], to, for buying.
- **Acc.** [em-e-re] (ad) e-m-e-ng-du-m, to buy.
- **Abl.** em-e-ng-[o], by buying.

### Supine.

- **1.** em-tūm, to buy.
- **2.** em-tū, to buy, in the buying.
### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### PASSIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Am bought.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Be, may be, bought.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. em-o-r,</td>
<td>em-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-e-ris,</td>
<td>em-e-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. em-i-tur,</td>
<td>em-e-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. em-i-mur,</td>
<td>em-a-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. em-i-minf,</td>
<td>em-a-minf,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. em-u-ntur,</td>
<td>em-a-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Was bought.** | **Were, might be, bought.** |
| SING.—1. em-e-ba-r, | em-e-re-r, |
| 2. em-e-ba-ris, | em-e-re-ris, |
| 3. em-e-ba-tur, | em-e-re-tur, |
| PLUR.—1. em-e-ba-mur, | em-e-re-mur, |
| 2. em-e-ba-minf, | em-e-re-minf, |
| 3. em-e-ba-ntur, | em-e-re-ntur. |

| **Shall be bought.** | **Future.** |
| SING.—1. em-a-r, | |
| 2. em-e-ris, | |
| 3. em-e-tur. | |
| PLUR.—1. em-e-mur, | |
| 2. em-e-minf, | |
| 3. em-e-ntur. | |

| **IMPERATIVE.** |
| SING.—1. |
| 2. em-ere, be thou bought, em-i-tor, thou shalt be bought. |
| 3. |
| PLUR.—1. |
| 2. em-i-minf, be ye bought. |
| 3. em-u-ntor, they shall be bought. |
134. **Third Conjugation.**

**Passive.**

**Indicative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Have been, was bought.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Have, may have, been bought.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. <em>em-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,</em></td>
<td><em>es-t-us, -a, -um, s-t-a,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><em>es-t,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td><em>es-t,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. <em>em-t-i, -ae, -a,</em></td>
<td><em>es-t-i, -ae, -a,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><em>es-t-i,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td><em>es-t-i,</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Had been bought.</th>
<th>Had, might have, been bought.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. <em>em-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,</em></td>
<td><em>em-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-e,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><em>er-a-s,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td><em>er-a-t,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. <em>em-t-i, -ae, -a,</em></td>
<td><em>es-se-mus,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><em>es-se-tis,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td><em>es-se-mus,</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shall have been bought.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. <em>em-t-us, -a, -um, er-a,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. <em>em-t-i, -ae, -a,</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive.**

| Pres. *em-t,* | to be bought. |
| Perf. *em-t-um, -am, -um, esse,* | to have been bought. |
| Fut. *em-tum trif,* | to be about to be bought. |
| P. P. *em-t-um, -am, -um, fore.* |

**Participle.**

| Perfect. *em-t-us, -a, -um,* | bought. |
| Gerundive. *em-s-nd-us, -a, -um,* | to be bought. |
135. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The stems in i follow in several forms the Third Conjugation, and take the same connecting vowels.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

Hear.

Sing.—1. audi-š, audi-a-m,
2. audi-s, audi-s-s,
3. audi-t, audi-a-t.

Plur.—1. audi-mus, audi-s-mus,
2. audi-tis, audi-s-tis,
3. audi-u-nt, audi-a-nt.

Was hearing.

Sing.—1. audi-e-ba-m, audi-re-m,
2. audi-e-ba-s, audi-re-s,
3. audi-e-ba-t, audi-re-t.

Plur.—1. audi-e-ba-mus, audi-re-mus,
2. audi-e-ba-tis, audi-re-tis,
3. audi-e-ba-nt, audi-re-nt.

Imperfect.

Shall hear.

Sing.—1. audi-a-m, audi-tō, thou shalt hear.
2. audi-s, audi-tō, he shall hear.
3. audi-t, audi-tō, thou shalt hear.

Plur.—1. audi-e-mus, audi-tōte, ye shall hear.
2. audi-e-tis, audi-e-tōte, they shall hear.
3. audi-e-nt, audi-e-ntō, they shall hear.

FUTURE.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.—1. ——, audi-tō, thou shalt hear.
2. audi, hear thou, audi-tō, he shall hear.
3. ——, audi-tō, thou shalt hear.

Plur.—1. ——, audi-te, hear ye, audi-tōte, ye shall hear.
2. audi-te, hear ye, audi-tōte, ye shall hear.
3. ——, audi-u-nt, they shall hear.

PARTICIPLE.

Present. N. audi-e-n-s, G. audi-e-n-t-is, hearing.
Future. audi-tūr-us, -a, -um, about to hear.
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

136.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

Sing.—1. audi-ve-
2. audi-ve-sti,
3. audi-ve-ti,

Plur.—1. audi-ve-mus,
2. audi-ve-stis,
3. audi-ve-runt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Have heard, heard.

Sing.—1. audi-ve-ri-m,
2. audi-ve-ri-s,
3. audi-ve-ri-t.

Plur.—1. audi-ve-ri-mus,
2. audi-ve-ri-tis,
3. audi-ve-riunt.

Pluperfect.

Had heard.

Sing.—1. audi-ve-ra-m,
2. audi-ve-ra-s,
3. audi-ve-ra-t.

Plur.—1. audi-ve-ra-mus,
2. audi-ve-ra-tis,
3. audi-ve-ra-nt.

Had, might have, heard.

Sing.—1. audi-ve-sse-m,
2. audi-ve-sse-s,
3. audi-ve-sse-t.

Plur.—1. audi-ve-sse-mus,
2. audi-ve-sse-tis,
3. audi-ve-sse-nt.

Future Perfect.

Shall have heard.

Sing.—1. audi-ve-ri-
2. audi-ve-ri-s,
3. audi-ve-ri-t.

Plur.—1. audi-ve-ri-mus,
2. audi-ve-ri-tis,
3. audi-ve-ri-nt.

INFINITIVE.

Present. audi-re, to hear.

Perfect. audi-ve-sse, to have heard.

Future. audi-tur-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to hear.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

N. [audi-re], hearing, to hear.
G. audi-e nd-1, of hearing.
D. audi-e nd-5, to, for hearing.
Ac. [audi-re] (ad) audi-e nd-um, hear-
    ing, to hear. 1. audi-tum, to hear.
Abl. audi-e nd-5, by hearing. 2. audi-ta, to hear, in the hearing.
### Fourth Conjugation.

#### Passive

**Indicative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th></th>
<th>Subjunctive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Am heard.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Be, may be, heard.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. audi-o-r,</td>
<td></td>
<td>audi-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-s-ris,</td>
<td></td>
<td>audi-s-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-tur,</td>
<td></td>
<td>audi-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. audi-mur,</td>
<td></td>
<td>audi-s-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. audi-mini,</td>
<td></td>
<td>audi-s-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. audi-u-ntur.</td>
<td></td>
<td>audi-a-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

|            |            |            |
| **Was heard.** | **Were, might be, heard.** |
| SING.—1. audi-e-ba-r, | audi-e-re-r, |
| 2. audi-e-ba-ris, | audi-e-re-ba-ris, |
| 3. audi-e-ba-tur, | audi-e-re-ba-tur, |
| PLUR.—1. audi-e-ba-mur, | audi-e-re-mur, |
| 2. audi-e-ba-mini, | audi-e-re-mini, |
| 3. audi-e-ba-ntur. | audi-e-re-ntur. |

**Future.**

|            |            |            |
| **Shall be heard.** |            |            |
| SING.—1. audi-a-r, |            |            |
| 2. audi-a-ris, |            |            |
| 3. audi-a-tur, |            |            |
| PLUR.—1. audi-a-mur, |            |            |
| 2. audi-a-mini, |            |            |
| 3. audi-a-ntur. |            |            |

#### Imperative.

|            |            |            |
| SING.—1. |            |            |
| 2. audi-re, | be thou heard, audi-tor, | thou shalt be heard, audi-tor, |
| 3. |            | he shall be heard. |
| PLUR.—1. |            |            |
| 2. audi-mini, | be ye heard. |            |
| 3. |            | audi-u-ntor, they shall be heard. |
FOURTH CONJUGATION.

138. FOURTH Conjugation.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.  SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

Have been heard, was heard.  Have, may have, been heard.

SING.—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,  audi-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,
2. es,  s-i-s,
3. es-t,  s-i-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-t-l, -ae, -a,  s-u-mus,  audi-t-l, -ae, -a,  s-i-mus,
2. es-tis,  s-i-tis,
3. s-u-nt,  s-i-nt.

PLUPERFECT.

Had been heard.  Had, might have, been heard.

SING.—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,  audi-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2. er-a-s,  es-se-s,
3. er-a-t,  es-se-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-t-l, -ae, -a,  er-a-mus,  audi-t-l, -ae, -a,  es-se-mus,
2. er-a-tis,  es-se-tis,
3. er-a-nt  es-se-nt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Shall have been heard.

SING.—1. audi-t-us, -a, -um, er-λ,  audi-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,
2. er-i-s,  es-se-s,
3. er-i-t,  es-se-t,

PLUR.—1. audi-t-l, -ae, -a,  er-i-mus,  audi-t-l, -ae, -a,  es-se-mus,
2. er-i-tis,  es-se-tis,
3. er-i-nt,  es-se-nt.

INFINITIVE.

Present. audi-ri, to be heard.

Perfect. audi-t-um, -am, um, esse, to have been heard.

Future. audi-tum iri, to be about to be heard.

F. P. audi-t-um, -am, -um, fore.

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect.  audi-t-us, -a, -um, heard.

Gerundive. audi-e-nd-us, -a, -um, [one] to be heard.
APPENDIX TO THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

139. Several verbs of the Third Conjugation in the Present-stem add i to the stem. This i is dropped when it would come before å or ë, except before et; as, cap-it, cap-eret, but capi-et.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Take.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-ã,</td>
<td>Be taking.</td>
<td>capi-a-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. cap-i-s,</td>
<td>capi-a-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. cap-i-t,</td>
<td>capi-a-t,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. cap-i-mus,</td>
<td>capi-a-mus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. cap-i-tis,</td>
<td>capi-a-tis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-unt,</td>
<td>capi-a-nt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-ã-ba-m,</td>
<td>Were taking.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-ã-ba-s,</td>
<td>cap-e-re-m,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-ã-ba-t,</td>
<td>cap-e-re-s,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-ã-ba-mus,</td>
<td>cap-e-re-t,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-ã-ba-tis,</td>
<td>cap-e-re-mus,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-ã-ba-nt.</td>
<td>cap-e-re-tis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-a-m,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-i-s,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-e-t,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-i-mus,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-i-tis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-e-nt.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperative.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—2. cap-e, take thou,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cap-i-tö,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. cap-i-tö,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—2. cap-i-te, take ye,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cap-i-töte,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-untö.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infinitive.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. cap-e-re,</td>
<td>to take.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Participle.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. capi-e-n-s,</td>
<td>taking.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gerund.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. capi-e-n-d-l,</td>
<td>of taking.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### INDICATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am taken.</td>
<td>Was taken.</td>
<td>Shall be taken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-o-r,</td>
<td>SING.—1. capi-o-ba-r,</td>
<td>SING.—1. capi-o-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-o-ris,</td>
<td>2. capi-o-ba-ris,</td>
<td>2. capi-o-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-o-tur,</td>
<td>3. capi-o-ba-tur,</td>
<td>3. capi-o-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-o-mur,</td>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-o-ba-mur,</td>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-o-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-o-mini,</td>
<td>2. capi-o-ba-mini,</td>
<td>2. capi-o-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-o-ntur.</td>
<td>3. capi-o-ba-ntur.</td>
<td>3. capi-o-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PASSIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Be, may be, taken.</td>
<td>Were, might be, taken.</td>
<td>Shall be taken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1. capi-a-r,</td>
<td>SING.—1. capi-a-ba-r,</td>
<td>SING.—1. capi-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-a-ris,</td>
<td>2. capi-a-ba-ris,</td>
<td>2. capi-a-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-a-tur,</td>
<td>3. capi-a-ba-tur,</td>
<td>3. capi-a-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-a-mur,</td>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-a-ba-mur,</td>
<td>PLUR.—1. capi-a-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. capi-a-mini,</td>
<td>2. capi-a-ba-mini,</td>
<td>2. capi-a-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. capi-a-ntur.</td>
<td>3. capi-a-ba-ntur.</td>
<td>3. capi-a-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE.

| SING.—2. capi-e-re, | SING.—2. capi-e-mini, |
| be thou taken, | be ye taken, ye shall be taken, |
| capi-e-tor, | 3. capi-e-tor, |
| thou shalt be taken, | he shall be taken, |
| 3. capi-e-ntor, | 3. capi-e-ntor, |
| capi-e-mini, | they shall be taken. |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capi-a-r,</td>
<td>capi-a-ba-r,</td>
<td>capi-a-r,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-a-ris,</td>
<td>capi-a-ba-ris,</td>
<td>capi-a-ris,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-a-tur,</td>
<td>capi-a-ba-tur,</td>
<td>capi-a-tur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-a-mur,</td>
<td>capi-a-ba-mur,</td>
<td>capi-a-mur,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-a-mini,</td>
<td>capi-a-ba-mini,</td>
<td>capi-a-mini,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capi-a-ntur.</td>
<td>capi-a-ba-ntur.</td>
<td>capi-a-ntur.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE.

| SING.—2. capi-e-re, | SING.—2. capi-e-mini, |
| be thou taken, | be ye taken, ye shall be taken, |
| capi-e-tor, | 3. capi-e-tor, |
| thou shalt be taken, | he shall be taken, |
| 3. capi-e-ntor, | 3. capi-e-ntor, |
| capi-e-mini, | they shall be taken. |

### INFINITIVE.

| Pres. capi-l, | capi-e-nd-us, -a, -um, |
| to be taken. | | [one] to be taken. |
141. DEponent of the FIRST Conjugation.

**indicative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exhort.</td>
<td>Be exhorting, may exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hort-o-r,</td>
<td>hort-e-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hort-a-ris,</td>
<td>hort-e-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hort-a-tur,</td>
<td>hort-e-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hort-a-mur,</td>
<td>hort-e-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hort-a-min,</td>
<td>hort-e-min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. horta-ntur.</td>
<td>hort-e-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Was exhorting.</td>
<td>Were exhorting, might exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hort-a-ba-r,</td>
<td>hort-a-re-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hort-a-ba-ris,</td>
<td>hort-a-re-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hort-a-ba-tur,</td>
<td>hort-a-re-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hort-a-ba-mur,</td>
<td>hort-a-re-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hort-a-ba-min,</td>
<td>hort-a-re-min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hort-a-ba-ntur.</td>
<td>hort-a-re-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Active Forms.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shall exhort.</td>
<td>PART. Pres. horta-n-a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Active Forms.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hort-a-bo-r,</td>
<td>exhorting,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hort-a-be-ris,</td>
<td>FUT. hort-a-tur-us, -a, -um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hort-a-be-tur,</td>
<td>about to exhort,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td>INF. FUT. hort-a-tur-um, -am, -um, esse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. hort-a-bi-mur,</td>
<td>to be about to exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hort-a-bi-min,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hort-a-bi-ntur.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Passive in meaning.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Passive in meaning.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hort-a-re,</td>
<td>GERUNDIVE, horta-nd-us, -a, -um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhort thou,</td>
<td>[one] to be exhorted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hort-tor,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thou shalt exhort,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. hort-a-tor,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he shall exhort,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. hort-a-min,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhort ye, ye shall exhort,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. horta-ntor,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they shall exhort.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deponent of the First Conjugation

#### Indicative

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>hortā-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>hortā-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>es,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s-i-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-a-t,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>es-se-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a, s-u-m,</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a, s-i-m,</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>s-u-nt,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s-i-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>s-i-n,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>hortā-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>hortā-t-us, -a, -um, es-se-m,</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-a-s,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>es-se-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-a-t,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>es-se-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a, er-a-m,</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a, es-se-m,</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-a-tis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>es-se-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-a-nt,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>es-se-n,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th></th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>hortā-t-us, -a, -um, er-ē,</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>hortā-t-us, -a, -um, er-ē,</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-i-s,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>er-i-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-i-t,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>er-i-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a, er-i-m,</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>hortā-t-l, -ae, -a, er-i-m,</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-i-tis,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>er-i-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>er-i-nt,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>er-i-nt,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PREP. hortā-ri,</td>
<td>PERFECT hortātus, -a, -um,</td>
<td>having exhorted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to exhort.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF. hortā-t-um, -am, -um, esse,</td>
<td>to have exhorted.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P. hortā-t-um, -am, -um, fore.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sупине. hortā-tum,</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>hortā-tū,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to exhort, for exhorting.</td>
<td></td>
<td>to exhort, in the exhorting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GERUND. [hortā-ri],</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to exhort, exhorting.</td>
<td></td>
<td>of exhorting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
143. Deponent of the Second Conjugation.

Indicative.

Present.

\[ \text{Fear} \]

Sing.—1. vere-o-r,
2. vere-ri-s,
3. vere-tu-r,

Plur.—1. vere-nu-r,
2. vere-ni-ni,
3. vere-nu-tu-r.

Imperfect.

\[ \text{Was fearing.} \]

Sing.—1. vere-bo-r,
2. vere-be-ri-s,
3. vere-bi-tu-r,

Plur.—1. vere-bi-nu-r,
2. vere-bi-ni-ni,
3. vere-bi-nu-tu-r.

Future.

\[ \text{Shall fear.} \]

Sing.—1. vere-re,
\[ \text{fear thou,} \]
\[ \text{vere-tor,} \]
\[ \text{thou shalt fear,} \]
3. vere-tor,
\[ \text{he shall fear,} \]

Plur.—1. vere-ni-ni,
\[ \text{fear ye, ye shall fear,} \]
3. vere-ni-tu-r,
\[ \text{they shall fear.} \]

Subjunctive.

\[ \text{Be fearing, may fear.} \]

Sing.—1. vere-a-r,
2. vere-a-si-r,
3. vere-a-tu-r,

Plur.—1. vere-a-nu-r,
2. vere-a-ni-ni,
3. vere-a-nu-tu-r.

Active Forms.

Part. Pres. vere n-a,
\[ \text{fearing,} \]
Fut. ver-i-tu-r-us, -a, -um,
\[ \text{about to fear.} \]
Inf. Fut. ver-i-tu-r-um, -am, -um, esse,
\[ \text{to be about to fear.} \]

Passive in Meaning.

Gerundive, vere-nd-us, -a, -um,
\[ \text{[one] to be feared.} \]
144. **Deponent of the Second Conjugation.**

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Have feared, feared.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Have, may have, feared.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. ver-i-tus, -a, -um, s-u-m,</td>
<td>ver-i-tus, -a, -um, s-i-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es,</td>
<td>s-i-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. es-t,</td>
<td>s-i-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. ver-i-tl, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>s-u-mus, ver-i-tl, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. es-tis,</td>
<td>s-i-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. s-u-nt,</td>
<td>s-i-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Had feared.</strong></th>
<th><strong>Had, might have, feared.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. ver-i-tus, -a, -um, er-a-m,</td>
<td>ver-i-tus, -a, -um, es-se-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. er-a-s,</td>
<td>es-se-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. er-a-t,</td>
<td>es-se-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. ver-i-tl, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>er-a-mus, ver-i-tl, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. er-a-tis,</td>
<td>es-se-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. er-a-nt.</td>
<td>es-se-tis,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Shall have feared.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.—1. ver-i-tus, -a, -um, er-ē,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. er-i-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. er-i-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.—1. ver-i-tl, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. er-i-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. er-i-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

- **Pres.** verē-ri, to fear.
- **Perf.** ver-i-tum, -am, -um, esse, to have feared.
- **F. P.** ver-i-tum fore.

### Participles

- **Pres.** verē-ri, to fear.
- **Perf.** ver-i-tū, to fear, in fearing.
- **G.** vere-nd-i, of fearing.
145. Deponent of the Third Conjugation.

Indicative

Speak.

Sing.—1. loqu-o-r,
2. loqu-e-ris,
3. loqu-i-tur,

Plur.—1. loqu-i-mur,
2. loqu-i-mini,
3. loqu-u-ntur,

Was speaking.

Sing.—1. loqu-é-ba-r,
2. loqu-é-ba-ris,
3. loqu-é-ba-tur,

Plur.—1. loqu-é-ba-mur,
2. loqu-é-ba-mini,
3. loqu-é-ba-ntur,

Shall speak.

Sing.—1. loqu-a-r,
2. loqu-a-ris,
3. loqu-a-tur,

Plur.—1. loqu-a-mur,
2. loqu-a-mini,
3. loqu-a-ntur.

Singular

Be speaking, may speak.

Sing.—1. loqu-a-r,
2. loqu-ae-ris,
3. loqu-ae-tur,

Plur.—1. loqu-a-mur,
2. loqu-a-mini,
3. loqu-a-ntur.

Imperfect.

Were speaking, might speak.

Sing.—1. loqu-e-re-r,
2. loqu-e-re-ris,
3. loqu-e-re-tur,

Plur.—1. loqu-e-re-mur,
2. loqu-e-re-mini,
3. loqu-e-re-ntur.

Future.

Imperative.

Sing.—2. loqu-e-re,

Speak thou,
loqu-i-tor,

thou shalt speak,
loqu-i-tor,

he shall speak.

Plur.—2. loqu-i-mini,

Speak ye.
3. loqu-u-ntor,

they shall speak.

Active forms.

Part. Pres. loqu-e-n-s,
speaking.

Fut. locu-tur-us, -a, -um,
about to speak.

Inf. Fut. locu-tur-um, -am, -um, esse,
to be about to speak.

Passive in meaning.

Gerundive, loqu-e-nds, -a, -um,
to be spoken.
146. **Deponent of the Third Conjugation.**

### Indicative.

#### Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>locū·t-us, -a, -um</th>
<th>s-u-m</th>
<th></th>
<th>locū·t-us, -a, -um</th>
<th>s-i-m,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>es</td>
<td></td>
<td>s-i-s,</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>s-i-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>es·t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>s-u-n-t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>locū·t-i, -ae, -a</th>
<th>s-u-mus</th>
<th></th>
<th>locū·t-i, -ae, -a</th>
<th>s-i-mus,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>es·tis</td>
<td></td>
<td>s-i-tis,</td>
<td>es·tis</td>
<td>s-i·nt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Pluperfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>locū·t-us, -a, -um</th>
<th>er·a·m</th>
<th></th>
<th>locū·t-us, -a, -um</th>
<th>es·se·m,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>er·a·s</td>
<td></td>
<td>es·sē-s,</td>
<td>er·a·s</td>
<td>es·sē-t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er·a·t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er·a·nt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>locū·t-i, -ae, -a</th>
<th>er·a-mus</th>
<th></th>
<th>locū·t-i, -ae, -a</th>
<th>es·sē-mus,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>er·a-tis</td>
<td></td>
<td>es·sē-tis,</td>
<td>er·a-tis</td>
<td>es·sē·nt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>locū·t-us, -a, -um</th>
<th>er·s</th>
<th></th>
<th>locū·t-us, -a, -um</th>
<th>es·se,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>er·s</td>
<td></td>
<td>es·se</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>er·t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>er·nt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>locū·t-i, -ae, -a</th>
<th>er·i-mus</th>
<th></th>
<th>locū·t-i, -ae, -a</th>
<th>es·se</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>er·i-tis</td>
<td></td>
<td>es·se</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive.

**Pres.** loqu·i,
- to speak.

**Perfect.** locū·t-us, -a, -um,
- having spoken.

**F. Pres.** locū·t-um, -am, -um, esse,
- to have spoken.

**Supine.** 1. locū·t-um,
- to speak, for speaking.

**Gerund.** [loqu·i],
- to speak, speaking.

### Participle.

**2. locū·tū,**
- to speak, in speaking.

**Gerund.** loqu·e·nd·i,
- of speaking.
147. DEponent of the Fourth Conjugation.

Indicative.

Present.

LIE.

Sing.—1. menti-o-r,
2. menti-ris,
3. menti-tur,

Plur.—1. menti-mur,
2. menti-mini,
3. menti-u-ntur,

Be lying, may lie.

Sing.—1. menti-a-r,
2. menti-a-ris,
3. menti-a-tur,

Plur.—1. menti-a-mur,
2. menti-a-mini,
3. menti-a-ntur.

Imperfect.

Was lying.

Sing.—1. menti-ba-r,
2. menti-ba-ris,
3. menti-ba-tur,

Plur.—1. menti-ba-mur,
2. menti-ba-mini,
3. menti-ba-ntur,

Were lying, might lie.

Sing.—1. menti-re-r,
2. menti-re-ris,
3. menti-re-tur,

Plur.—1. menti-re-mur,
2. menti-re-mini,
3. menti-re-ntur.

Future.

Shall lie.

Sing.—1. menti-a-r,
2. menti-a-ris,
3. menti-a-tur.

Plur.—1. menti-a-mur,
2. menti-a-mini,
3. menti-a-ntur.

Imperative.

Sing.—2. menti-re,
lie thou,
menti-tor;
thou shalt lie,
3. menti-tor,
he shall lie.

Plur.—2. menti-mini,
lie ye,
3. menti-u-ntor,
they shall lie.

Active Forms.

PART. Pres. menti-e-n-s,
lying.

PERF. menti-tur-us, -a, -um,
about to lie.

INF. Fut. menti-tur-um, -am, -um, esse,
to be about to lie.

Gerundive, menti-e-nd-us, -a, -um.

Passive in Meaning.
148. **Deponent of the Fourth Conjugation.**

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Have lied, lied.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Have, may have, lied.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. menti-t-us, -a, -um, s-u-m,</td>
<td>menti-t-us, -a, -um, s-i-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>es,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>es-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. menti-t-i, -ae, -a,</td>
<td>s-u-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>es-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>s-u-nt,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. menti-t-us, -a, -um, er-a-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. menti-t-i, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. menti-t-us, -a, -um, er-ă,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plur.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. menti-t-i, -ae, -a,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menti-rî,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lie.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th><strong>Participle.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>menti-t-um, -am, -um, esse,</td>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to have lied.</td>
<td>menti-t-um, -am, -um,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong> menti-t-um, -am, -um, fore.</td>
<td>esse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supine.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gerund.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. menti-t-um,</td>
<td>[menti-rî],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lie, for lying,</td>
<td>to lie, lying.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>G.</strong> menti-e-n-d-i,</td>
<td>of lying.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*4*
### Periphrastic Conjugation

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amātūr-us, -a, -um, sum&lt;br&gt;Am about to love.</td>
<td>amātūr-us, -a, -um, sim&lt;br&gt;Be about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>amātūrus eram,&lt;br&gt;Was about to love.</td>
<td>amātūrus essem,&lt;br&gt;Were about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrus erō,&lt;br&gt;Shall be about to love.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuī,&lt;br&gt;Have been, was, about to love.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuerim,&lt;br&gt;Have, may have, been about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fueram,&lt;br&gt;Had been about to love.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuisset,&lt;br&gt;Had, might have, been about to love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuerō,&lt;br&gt;Would be about to love.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

- **Present:** amātūr-um, -am, -um, esse, to be about to love.
- **Perfect:** amātūr-um fuisset, to have been about to love.

### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amand-us, -a, -um, sum&lt;br&gt;Have to be loved.</td>
<td>amand-us, -a, -um, sim&lt;br&gt;Have to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>amandus eram,&lt;br&gt;Had to be loved.</td>
<td>amandus essem, forem,&lt;br&gt;Had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amandus erō,&lt;br&gt;Shall have to be loved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amandus fuī,&lt;br&gt;Have had to be loved.</td>
<td>amandus fuerim,&lt;br&gt;Have had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperf.</td>
<td>amandus fueram,&lt;br&gt;Had had to be loved.</td>
<td>amandus fuisset,&lt;br&gt;Should have had to be loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

- **Present:** amand-um, -am, -um, esse, to have to be loved.
- **Perfect:** amand-um fuisset, to have had to be loved.
151. **Abbreviations occurring in certain Forms of the Verb.**

1. The Perfects in -āvi, -ēvi, -īvi, drop the V before S or R, and contract the vowels throughout, except those in -īvi, which admit the contraction only before S.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.—1.</th>
<th></th>
<th>Perfect.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. amāvisti, amāsti.</td>
<td>delēvisti, delēsti.</td>
<td>audīvisti, audīsti.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.—1.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. amāvistis, amāstis.</td>
<td>delēvistis, delēstis.</td>
<td>audīvistis, audīstis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. amāvērunt, amārunt.</td>
<td>delēvērunt, delērunt.</td>
<td>audīvērunt, audīrunt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subj.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāverim, amārim.</td>
<td>delēverim, delērim.</td>
<td>audīverim, audīrim.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive Perfect.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvisse, amāsse.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In like manner, nōvi, I know, and mōvi, I have moved, are, in their compounds especially, contracted:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.—2. nōsti.</th>
<th>Plur.—2. nōstis. 3. nōrunt. Subj. nōrim.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Remark.**—In petere, to fall upon, dēsinere, to give over, and in the compounds of ire, to go, the V of the Perfect is dropped in 1 and 3 Pers. Sing., and in 1 Pers. Pl., but no contraction ensues as:

petīvi, petīt; petīvit, petītīt. So dēsīvi, dēsīt; dēsīvit, dēsītit, etc.

And redīt, redītīt, from redīre, to go back.

2. In 3 Pl. Perf. Act. instead of the ending -ērunt, -ēre is often found, but never in the contracted Perfects mentioned above: amāvēre, they have loved; dēlēvēre, they have destroyed; ēmēre, they have bought; audīvēre, they have heard. But amāre, for amārunt, is not admissible.

3. Instead of -ris in 2 Sing. Pass. we find often -re:

amābāre, thou wast loved; amārēre, thou mightest be loved; amābere, thou wilt be loved.

This is rare, however, in Present Indicative.

4. The Imperatives of dicere, to say, dūcere, to lead, facere, to make, and ferre, to bear, are dic, dūc, fac, fer. These shortened forms occur in their respective compounds, except in those compounds of facio, which change a into i, as: perīscē, achieve thou. (188 R.)

5. The Gerund and Gerundive of the 3d and 4th Conjugations, instead of -endi, -endus, may, especially after i, end in -undī and -undus, as:

faciundus, to be done; gerundus, to be carried.
152.

THE STEM.

I. In the Present.

The stem of many verbs appears in the Present, not in the pure, but in a strengthened form.

Hence verbs are classified according to the relation of the Present Stem to the Verb Stem.

I. Stem class: To this class belong those verbs whose present stem is the same as the verb stem.

Such are the verbs of the vowel conjugations; and in the Third Conjugation such verbs as leg-o, I read, ed-o, I eat, em-o, I buy.

II. The Protracted or Intensified class: In this class the vowel of the Verb Stem is lengthened in the Present Stem:

duc-o, I lead, stem duc-; dic-o, I say, stem dic.

Remark.—This change arises from a diphthongal strengthening of the stem: doc-o, deic-o; but the class is treated as a stem-class in formation.

III. The Nasal class: In this class the stem is strengthened by n.

A. In vowel-stems: si-, sino, I let; li-, lino, I besmear.
B. After the characteristic r or m: cer-o, cerno, I sift, separate; tem-, temno, I scorn.
C. Before the characteristic mute: vio-, vinco, I conquer; frag-, frango, I break; fud-, fundo, I pour.

Before a P-mute N becomes M: rup-, rumpo, I rend; cub-, cumbo, I lie down.

IV. The T class: flic-o, flecto, I bend.

V. The Inchoative class: The stem strengthened by so or isco: se after vowel stems, isco after consonant stems.

1. tra-, irascor, cre-, cras-soo, dormi-, obdormi-soo,
   I am in a rage. I grow. I fall asleep.
2. ap-, ap-iscor, fac-, profio-iscoor, nac-, nanc-iscoor,
   I reach. I set out. I get.

VI. Reduplicated class: Reduplication in the Present stem:

gen-, gi-gno, I beget, (for gi-gen-o); sta-, si-sto, si-st-ere, to set, stand.

Compare stäre, to stand.

VII. U-class: U suffixed to the stem:

ting-, tingu-o, I soak.
SUPINE.

VIII. I-class: I suffixed to the stem:
cap-, capi-o, I take.

IX. Geminated class:
The Liquids l and r may be doubled: pel-, pello, I drive; cur-, curro, I run.
So t is doubled in mit-, mitto, I send.

Remark.—This small class is probably a subdivision of the 8th class (I-class); pello, for pelje, pello; curro, for curjo, curjo.

X. Change of Conjugation:
Many consonant-stems assume in the Present the characteristic of one of the three vowel-conjugations:

vid-, vide-o, I see, vidē-re.
ven-, veni-o, I come, veni-re.

153.

II. In the Perfect.
The Perfect is formed from the pure stem.
Exceptions: see change of conjugation. (156, 176).

1. The vowel-stems take -vi: amā-vi, I have loved; délē-vi, I have destroyed; audi-vi, I have heard.

However, most verbs of the 2d Conjugation drop the vowel-characteristic, and change -vi into -ul. (See 128.)

2. Consonant-stems with short stem-syllable take 1 in the Perfect, before which the stem-syllable becomes long, and ā is changed into ē.

leo, I read, vid-eo, I see, fudge-ō, I dig, fug-ō, I flee, ag-ō, I do,
lēg-ū, vid-lū, fōd-lū, fūg-lū, ēgū.

3. Consonant-stems with long stem-syllables take 11 in the Perfect:

aug-e-o, I increase, auxi = aug-sī. rād-ō, I scrape, rā-sī = rad-sī.

Even when the stem-syllable is long by position only:

Exceptions.—Exceptions are stems in -nd, which take 1 in the Perfect: défend-ō, I strike (ward) off, défend-1; perhaps because the stems in -nd formed originally a reduplicated perfect:

mand-ō, I chew, man(d)ifi; so (fe)fendī, I have struck.
4. The stems in u have i in the Perfect: acu-o, I sharpen, acu-i.

5. Sundry verbs reduplicate in the Perfect, i.e., repeat the initial consonant of the stem with the vowel following it: pend-o, I weigh, pe-pend-i. poso-o, I demand, po-poso-i. curr-o, I run, on-curr-i.

When a change of vowel occurs in the stem, e is always found in the syllable of reduplication:

cad-o, I fall, ce-cid-i. caed-o, I fell, ce-cid-i.
parc-o, I spare, pe-perc-i. pel-lo, I push, pe-pul-i.

These reduplicated Perfects are always formed in -i. They do not lengthen the stem-vowel, but change a into i, ae into i, a before two consonants into e, and e and o into u before l.

Remark.—In compounds with monosyllabic prepositions reduplication is generally dropped except in disco, I learn, dō, I give, posco, I demand, stō, I stand. The compounds of curr-o, I run, sometimes retain it, excucurr-i. With disyllabic prepositions the reduplication is commonly retained.

III. The Supine.

154. I. The Supine is formed from the pure stem.

1. Vowel-stems and stems in U take -tum in the Supine:

am-o, I love, amā-tum. dēle-o, I destroy, délē-tum.
audi-o, I hear, audi-tum. tribu-o, I allot, tribū-tum.

Most verbs of the Second Conjugation drop, however, their own characteristic vowel before -tum, and insert the connecting-vowel i: mone-o, I remind, moni-tum. Some have no connecting-vowel. (See 128.)

2. Consonant-stems in a P- or K-mute take -tum in the Supine:

cap-io, I take, cap-tum. resp-o, I creep, rep-tum.
fac-io, I do, fac-tum. dic-o, I say, dic-tum.

Exceptions.—1. Among the P-stems, only lābor, I slip, lap-sus.
2. Among the K-stems, the Supine in -sum occurs:

A. In verbs whose Present-stem is strengthened by t:

flect-o, I bend, flexum. plect-o, I plait, plexum.
pect-o, I comb, pexum. nect-o, I knot, bind, nexum.

B. Some, whose characteristic is preceded by a Liquid: merg-o, I dip, mer-sum; terg-o, I wipe, ter-sum; parc-o, I spare, par-sum; sparg-o, I sow, scatter, spar-sum; mulce-o, I stroke, mul-sum.

C. In some the ending -sum prevents confusion with other words: fingo, I shape, makes fic-tum; but figo, I fasten, fix-um. So mul-sum, from mulo-ео, I stroke, distinguishes it from multum, much.
CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

REMARK.—The K-mutes are dropped in the Perfect and Supine between l-s, l-t, r-s, r-t: fulo-10, I prop, ful(o)-sī, ful(o)-tum; torqu-ec, I twist, tor(qu)-sī, tor(qu)-tum.
(See 160.)

3. Consonant-stems in a T-mute take -sum in the Supine:
ed-o, I eat, ē-10 sum (for ed-sum); lūd-o, I play, lū-10 sum; dēfend-o, I ward off, dēfensum.

4. Liquid-stems have partly -tum, partly -sum. Stems in m and n take -tum; stems in l and r take -sum:
em-o, I buy, em-tum; veni-o, I come, ven-tum; can-o, I sing, can-tum.
ver-sum, from ver-ro, I sweep; fal-sum, from fall-o, I cheat; vul-sum, from vell-o, I pluck.

EXCEPTIONS.—A. Liquid-stems which in the Perfect pass over to the 2d Conjugation have -tum, with or without connecting-vowels: al-o, I nourish, al-l-tum or al-tum.
B. To be distinguished from other forms: par-tum, from pari-o, I bring forth; but par-sum, from para-ere, to spare: sal-tum, from sal-i-o, I leap; but sal-sum, from sal-i-o, I sail.
C. Man-sum, from man-e-o, I remain.

II. The Future Active Participle is formed regularly from the Supine; in some verbs, however, from the Present-stem.

Juvātūrus, about to help, from juvāre; secātūrus, from secāre, to cut; sonātūrus, from sonāre, to sound; lavātūrus, from lavāre, to wash; but adjutūrus, from adjuvāre, to help; moritūrus, from morior, I die; ortūrus, from orior, I rise; paritūrus, from pario, I bring forth; agnōtūrus, from agnōsco, I recognize; nāscitūrus, from nāscor, I am born.

In some U-stems it is formed by means of the connecting-vowel I: arguitūrus, from arguo, I accuse; abnuitūrus, from abnuo, I refuse; luitūrus, from lu-o, I wash off, ruitūrus, from ruo, I rush; fruitūrus, from fruo, I enjoy.

155. EUPHONIC LAWS

IN THE CONVERSION OF THE CONSONANT-CHARACTERISTIC.

Characteristic b before s and t becomes p:
scrīb-o, I write, scrīp-st, scrīp-tum.

Characteristic g and qu before t become c:
leg-o, I read, lec-tum; coqu-o, I bake, coo-tum.

Characteristic c, g, and qu with s become x:
dic-o, I say, dixi (= dic-st).
jung-o, I join, junxi (= jung-st).
CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

coqu-o, I cook, coxi (= coqu-al).

stingu-o, I poke (out), stinxl.

Characteristic t and d before s are dropped, or become by assimilation ss:

ed-o, I eat, e-sum (= ed-sum); cēd-o, I give way, cēs-al (= cēd-al).
mitt-o, I send, mi-al (= mit-al), mis-sum (= mit-sum).

156. CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

A change of Conjugation arises when a vowel (ē, i, a), or one of the strengthening suffixes of the Present, is added to the pure stem. The following instances occur:

1. Consonant-stems, regular in the Perfect and Supine, pass over in the Present-stem into one of the vowel-conjugations.

|| augo-o | augē-re | aux-i | aux-tum | to increase. |
|| senti-o | senti-re | sen-sl | sen-sum | to feel. |
|| sēpi-o | sēpi-re | sēp-sl | sēp-tum | to hedge in. |
|| veni-o | veni-re | ven-sl | ven-tum | to come. |
|| vide-o | vidē-re | vid-i | vi-sum | to see. |
|| vinc-i-o | vinc-i-re | vinc-i | vinc-tum | to bind. |

REMARK.—As these verbs form Perfect and Supine from the pure stem regularly, like the others of the 3d or Consonant-Conjugation, they are placed among the verbs of the 3d Conjugation in the list below.

2. Vowel-stems, in consequence of a strengthened Present, pass over into the 3d Conjugation, but form Perfect and Supine from the vowel-stem.

|| crē-so-c | crē-so-ere | crē-vi | crē-tum | to grow. |
|| li-n-c | lin-ere | li-vi (lē-vi) | li-tum | to besmear. |

3. Consonant-stems form the Present regularly according to the 3d Conjugation, but pass in the Perfect and Supine into the 2d or 4th Conjugation.

|| frem-o | frem-ere | frem-uī | frem-i-tum | to growl. |
|| pet-o | pet-ere | pet-ivī | pet-itum | to fall upon. |

4. Vowel-stems vary among the Vowel-Conjugations.

|| crep-o, I | crepē-re, I | crep-uī, II | crep-i-tum, II | to crackle. |
|| aperi-o, IV | aperi-re, IV | aper-uī, II | aper-tum | to uncover. |

5. dare, to give, and stāre, to stand, in the Perfect, in consequence of reduplication, pass over to the 3d Conjugation.

REMARK.—Verbs mentioned under 2, 3, 4, and 5 as suffering change of Conjugation, are specially marked in 176–180.
STEMS IN A P-MUTE.

SUPINE: -tum.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cap-i-o (cap-),</td>
<td>cap-e-re</td>
<td>cōp-,</td>
<td>cap-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-cap-i-o,</td>
<td>ac-cap-e-re</td>
<td>ac-cōp-,</td>
<td>ac-cap-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rump-o (rump-),</td>
<td>rump-e-re</td>
<td>rūp-,</td>
<td>rump-tum,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

158. 2. After a long stem-syllable, Perfect in -a1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carp-o,</td>
<td>carp-e-re</td>
<td>carp-a1,</td>
<td>carp-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-carp-o,</td>
<td>dē-carp-e-re</td>
<td>dē-carp-a1,</td>
<td>dē-carp-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nūb-o,</td>
<td>nūb-e-re</td>
<td>nūp-a1,</td>
<td>nup-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūp-o,</td>
<td>rūp-e-re</td>
<td>rūp-a1,</td>
<td>rep-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scalp-o,</td>
<td>scalp-e-re</td>
<td>scalp-a1,</td>
<td>scalp-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrib-o,</td>
<td>scrib-e-re</td>
<td>scrib-a1,</td>
<td>scrip-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scalp-o,</td>
<td>scalp-e-re</td>
<td>scalp-a1,</td>
<td>scalp-tum,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With change of Conjugation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sēp-o (saeu-o),</td>
<td>sēp-e-re,</td>
<td>sēp-a1,</td>
<td>sēp-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sorbe-o,</td>
<td>sorbē-e-re</td>
<td>(sor-p-a1) sorbui,</td>
<td>to hedge in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXCEPTIONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clep-o,</td>
<td>clep-e-re</td>
<td>clep-a1 (clēp-1),</td>
<td>clep-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamb-o,</td>
<td>lamb-e-re</td>
<td>lamb-a1 (lamb-i-tum),</td>
<td>to flick.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

STEMS IN A K-MUTE.

SUPINE: -tum.

159. PERFECT.—After a short stem-syllable, Perfect in -1.

a. Pure stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ag-o,</td>
<td>ag-e-re</td>
<td>ēg-,</td>
<td>ac-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cō-g-o,</td>
<td>cō-g-e-re</td>
<td>cō-ēg-,</td>
<td>co-ac-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dé-g-o,</td>
<td>dé-g-e-re</td>
<td>dé-ēg-,</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red-ig-o,</td>
<td>red-ig-e-re</td>
<td>red-īg-,</td>
<td>red-ac-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faci-o,</td>
<td>fac-e-re,</td>
<td>fac-i,</td>
<td>fac-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cale-faci-o (calf.),</td>
<td>cale-fac-e-re</td>
<td>cale-fac-i,</td>
<td>cale-fac-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per-fici-o,</td>
<td>per-fic-e-re</td>
<td>per-fic-i,</td>
<td>per-fic-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugt-o,</td>
<td>fug-e-re</td>
<td>fug-i,</td>
<td>fug-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacio,</td>
<td>jac-e-re</td>
<td>jāc-,</td>
<td>jac-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-jic-o,</td>
<td>con-jic-e-re</td>
<td>con-jic-i,</td>
<td>con-jic-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sec-o,</td>
<td>sec-e-re</td>
<td>lēg-,</td>
<td>leg-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>col-lig-o,</td>
<td>col-lig-e-re</td>
<td>col-lēg-,</td>
<td>col-lēg-tum,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So the other compounds, except di-lig-o, intel-lig-o, neg-lig-o, see 161.
b. Stem strengthened by N.

frang-o,  
per-fring-o,  
linqu-o,  
re-linqu-o,  
(pang-o),  
com-ping-o,  
vinc-o (vinc),

frang-ere, fræg-l,  
per-fring-ere, per-fræg-l,  
linqu-ere, liqu-l,  
re-linqu-ere, re-liqu-l,  
(pang-ere), (pæg-l),  
com-ping-ere, com-pæg-l,  
vinc-ere, vinc-l,

fræc-tum, to break.  
per-fræc-tum, to shiver.  
liqu-i, to leave.  
re-liqu-i, to leave behind.  
pæc-tum, comp. 2 b and 3, to drive in.  
com-pæc-tum, to drive tight.  
vinc-tum, to conquer.

160.

2. After long stem-syllable, Perfect in -st.

a. Pure stem.

dio-o,  
di-o-ere,  
di-o-st (dio-st),  
di-o-tum.  
to say.

di-o,  
di-o-ere,  
di-o-st,  
di-o-tum,  
to lead.

fig-o,  
fig-ere,  
fix-st,  
fix-tum,  
o fasten.

-fig-o (con-., af-, in-),  
-fig-ere,  
-fix-st,  
-fix-tum,  
to strike.

frig-o,  
frig-ere,  
fric-tum,  
to parch.

sug-o,  
sug-ere,  
suc-tum,  
to suck.

With change of Conjugation.

aug-o,  
aug-ere,  
aux-st,  
aux-tum,  
to cause to wax.

frige-o,  
frig-ere,  
fric-tum,  
to be chilled.

luc-o,  
luc-e-ere,  
lax-st,  
to give light.

lüge-o,  
lüge-ere,  
lax-st,  
to be in mourning.

b. Stem strengthened by N, which is retained in Perfect and generally in Supine; the stem-syllable is therefore long by Position.

Supine without N.

fig-o,  
fig-ere,  
fin-st,  
fin-tum,  
to form.

ping-o,  
ping-ere,  
plax-st,  
plax-tum,  
to paint.

string-o,  
string-ere,  
strax-st,  
strax-tum,  
to draw tight.

Supine with N.

ang-o,  
ang-ere,  
anx-st,  
anx-tum,  
to throttle, vex.

cing-o,  
cing-ere,  
cinx-st,  
cinx-tum,  
to gird.

ë-mung-o,  
ë-mung-ere,  
ë-munx-st,  
ë-munx-tum,  
to wipe the nose.

jung-o,  
jung-ere,  
junx-st,  
junx-tum,  
to yoke, join.

ling-o,  
ling-ere,  
linx-st,  
linx-tum,  
to lick.

ning-o,  
ning-ere,  
inex-st,  
inex-tum,  
to snow.

pang-o,  
pang-ere,  
pax-st,  
pax-tum,  
to drive in.

plang-o,  
plang-ere,  
plax-st,  
plax-tum,  
to smile.

-stingu-o (ex-, dis-, re-), -stingu-ere, -stinx-st,  
-stinx-tum,  
to (stick) put out.

ting-o (tingu-o),  
ting(ü)-ere,  
tinx-st,  
tinx-tum,  
to wet, dye.

ung-o (ungu-o).  
ung(ü)-ere,  
unx-st,  
unx-tum,  
to anoint.

With change of Conjugation.

sanci-o,  
sanci-ere,  
sanx-st,  
sanct-tum and  
sanctum,  
to hollow.

vinci-o,  
vinci-ere,  
vinx-st,  
vinc-tum,  
to bind.

* The exceptions mentioned, 154, are marked with *.
MUTE-STEMS.

a. Stem strengthened by T, Supine in -sum.

flect-o, flect-ere, flexi, flexum,* to bend.
nect-o, nect-ere, nexi (nexi), nexum,* to knot.
pect-o, pect-ere, pexi, pexum,* to comb.
plect-o, plect-ere, (plexi), plexum,* to plait.

b. The K-mute dropped after L or R, and before S or T.

merg-o, merg-ere, mer-si, mer-sum,* to dip in.
sparg-o, sparg-ere, spar-si, spar-sum,* to strew.
con-sperg-o, con-sperg-ere, con-sper-si, con-sper-sum, to desprinkle.
terg-o (e-o), terg-ere (e-re), ter-si, ter-sum,* to wipe.

With change of Conjugation.

alge-o, alge-ere, al-si, — to freeze.
farci-o (-ferci-o), farci-ere, far-si, far-tum (-sum), to stuff.
fulci-o, fulci-ere, ful-si, ful-tum, to prop.
fugio-o, fugio-ere, fugi-si, — to glow.
indulge-o, indulge-ere, indul-si, (indul-tum), to give way.
mulce-o, mulce-ere, mul-si, mul-sum,* to stroke.
mulge-o, mulge-ere, mul-si, mul-sum (stum),* to milk.
sarci-o, sarci-ere, sar-si, sar-tum, to patch.
torque-o, torque-ere, tor-si, tor-tum, to twist.
turge-o, turge-ere, tur-si, — to swell.
urge-o, urge-ere, ur-si, — to press.

Exceptions.

161. 1. Stem-syllable short, but Perfect in -si.

coqu-o, coqu-ere, coxi, coc-tum, to cook.
[-lig-o (leg-), -lig-ere, -lexi, -lec-tum,] to love.
dlig-o, dlig-ere, dlexi, dilec-tum, to understand.
intelligo or intellego, intellig-ere, intellexi, intel-lec-tum, to understand.
negligo or neg-leg-o, neglig-ere, neglexi, neg-lec-tum, to neglect.

(col-lig-ere, e-lig-ere, 159)

[-lici-o (lac-), -lici-ere, -lexi, -lec-tum,] to lure.
(al-, il-) pellici-o, pellici-ere, pellexi, pel-lec-tum, to allure.
ili-o, ili-ere, ili-ful, ili-tum, to allure forth.
[-spici-o (eru-), -spici-ere, -spexi, -spec-tum,] to peer.
(per-spici-o, ver-spici-ere, per-spexi, per-spec-tum, to see through.
reg-o, reg-ere, rexi, rec-tum, to keep right.
[di-rig-o, dirig-ere, diriexi, diri-tum, to guide.
per-g-o, per-gere, per-rexi, per-rec-tum, to go on.
sur-g-o, sur-gere, sur-rexi, sur-rec-tum, to rise up.
teg-o, teg-ere, texi, tec-tum, to cover.

2. Stem-syllable long, but Perfect in -I.

io-o (defective), io-ere, io-i, io-tum, to strike.

162.  3. With reduplicated Perfect.

disc-o,  disc-e-re,  di-dic-o,  (disc-iturus),  to learn.

Compounds retain reduplication.
(pang-o, 159, b),
(pang-e-re),  pe-pig-i,  pac-tum,  to drive a bar-

parc-o,  parc-e-re,  pe-perco-l (par-sf), (par-sfurus),  to spare.
com-parco (-perco),  com-parc-e-re,  com-pars-i,  com-par-sum,  to save.
poso-o,  poso-e-re,  po-poso-i,  ——    to claim.
pung-o,  pung-e-re,  pu-pug-i,  punc-tum,  to prick.
inter-punge,  inter-pungere,  inter-punx-i,  inter-punc-tum,  to place points
between.
tang-o (tag),  tang-e-re,  te-tig-i,  taec-tum,  to touch.
at-ting-o,  at-ting-e-re,  at-tig-i,  at-tae-tum,  to border upon.

163.  ASPIRATE STEMS IN H AND V.

The stems in H, and some in V, follow the Conjugation of the
K-mute stems.

REMARK.—In these stems an original K-mute reappears, as, vif-o for vI(g)vO, and
vixI for vig(v)sI. Compare nix for nig(v)s, snow.

PERFECT, -el.  Supine, -tum.
flu-o (flugy-),  flu-e-re,  fluxi,  (flux-us),  to flow.
stru-o (strugy-),  stru-e-re,  struxi,  struc-tum,  to build.
trah-o,  trah-e-re,  traxi,  trac-tum,  to drag.
veh-o,  veh-e-re,  vexi,  vec-tum,  to carry.
viv-o (vigy-),  viv-e-re,  vixi,  vic-tum,  to live.

With change of Conjugation.
cō-nive-o (nigy-),  cō-nive-re,  cō-nixi and ivi,  ——    to close the
eyes.

164.  STEMS IN A T-MUTE.

SUPINE: -sum.

PERFECT.—1. The stems in D with short stem-syllable and all stems in
-and, have Perfect in -I.

(Many stems in -nd, with reduplicated Perfect, see 4 below.)

ac-cend-o,  ac-cend-e-re,  ac-cend-i,  ac-cen-sum,  to kindle.
dē-fend-o,  dē-fend-e-re,  dē-fend-i,  dē-fen-sum,  to strike away,
defend.
ed-o,  ed-e-re,  ēd-i,  ēsum (es-sum),  to eat.
com-ed-o,  com-ed-e-re,  com-ēd-i,  com-ēsum and

fund-o (fudy),  fund-e-re,  fūd-i,  fū-sum,  to pour.
mand-o,  mand-e-re,  man-d-i,  man-sum,  to chew.
prehend-o,  prehend-e-re,  prehend-i,  prehen-sum,  to seize.
scand-o,  scand-e-re,  scand-i,  scan-sum,  to climb.

With change of Conjugation.
a(d)-, dē-scend-o,  dē-scend-e-re,  dē-scend-i,  dē-scen-sum,  to climb up,
down.

prande-o,  prandē-re,  prand-i,  pran-sum,  to breakfast.
vide-o,  vidē-re,  vid-i,  vid-sum,  to see.
165. 2. Stems in D and T, with long stem-syllable, have Perfect in -sl.

Claud-o,    Claud-ere,   Claus-sl,   Claus-sum, to shut.
      Con-*, ex-clād-o, ex-clād-ere, ex-clād-sl, ex-clād-sum, to shut up, out.
Laud-o,    Laed-ere,    lae-sl,     lae-sum, to harm.
      Col-lid-o,    col-lid-ere, col-lid-sl, col-lid-sum, to strike together.
Plaud-o (ap-plau-d-o), Plaud-ere, Plau-sl, Plau-sum, to play.
      Ex-plōd-o, ex-plōd-ere, ex-plōd-sl, ex-plōd-sum, to clap.
Raud-o,    Rād-ere,    rā-sl,      rā-sum, to scratch.
      Rōd-o, rōd-ere, rō-sl, rō-sum, to grow.
Trād-o,    Trād-ere,    trā-sl,      trā-sum, to push.
Vād-o (in-, ś-), vād-ere, vā-sl, vā-sum, to go.

With change of Conjugation.

Arde-o,    Arde-re,    ar-sl,      ar-sum, to be on fire.
      Ride-o,    Rīd-ere, rī-sl, rī-sum, to laugh (at).
      Sen-ti-o, senti-re, sen-sl, sen-sum, to feel.
      Suāde-o, suād-ere, suā-sl, suā-sum, to (make) sweet, counsel.

166. 3. With assimilation.

a. In the Supine.

Fodi-o, fodi-ere, fūd-sl, fūd-sum, to dig.
      Mitt-o, mitt-ere, mi-sl, mis-sum, to send.
      Pand-o, pand-ere, pand-sl, pas-sum (pasum), to spread out.
Sede-o, sedē re, sūd-sl, ses-sum, to sit.

b. In the Perfect and the Supine.

Eōd-o, eōd-ere, eōs-sl, eōs-sum, to yield.
      Qua-ti-o, quāt-ere, (qua-sl), quās-sum, to shake.
      Con-cuti-o (per-, ex-), con-cut-ere, con-cons-sl, con-cons-sum, to shatter.

167. Exceptions.

1. With short stem-syllable, but Perfect in -sl.

      Qua-ti-o, quāt-ere, (qua-sl), quās-sum, to shake.

2. With long stem-syllable, but Perfect in -l.

Cūd-o, cūd-ere, cūd-sl, cū-sum, to hammer.
      Sid-o, sid-ere, sid-sl, sid-sum, to sit down.

In composition -sēd-l, -ses-sum, from sede-o.

Con-sid-o, con sid-ere, con-sūd-l, con-ses-sum, to settle down.

Stride-o (-do), stridēre (-ere), strid-l, to whistle, screech.

Vert-o, vert-ere, vert-l, vert-sum, to turn.
      Re-vert-or, re-vert-ere, revert-l (active), revert-sum, to turn back.
LIQUID-STEMS.

168.  4. With reduplicated Perfect.

The reduplication of the Perfect is dropped in compound verbs. (153 R.)

cad-o, cad-ere, ce-cid-I, cō-sum, to fall.
cc-cid-o, cc-cid-ere, cc-cid-I, cc-cē-sum, to perish.
ca-cid-o, ca-cid-ere, cc-cid-I, cæ-sum, to fall.
co-cid-o, cc-cid-ere, cc-cid-I, co-ci-sum, to kill.
pend-o, pend-ere, pe-pend-I, pen-sum, to hang (transit.).
tend-o, tend-ere, te-tend-I, ten-sum and -tum, to stretch.
extend-o, ex-tend-ere, ex-tend-I, ex-ten-sum and -tum, to stretch out.
ostend-o, os-tend-ere, os-tend-I, os-ten-sum (-tus), to stretch at,
show (obs-τ.).

With change of Conjugation.

morde-o, morde-re, mo-mord-I, mor-sum, to bite.
pende-o, pend-e-re, pe-pend-I, ——, to hang (intr.)
sponde-o, sponde-re, spo-pond-I, spon-sum, to pledge oneself.
tonde-o, tonde-re, to-tond-I, ton-sum, to shear.

In some verbs the strengthening N of the Present has been dropped. 
In two verbs even the reduplicated syllable has been dropped.

find-o, find-ere, fid-I, fis-sum, to cleave.
scind-o, scind-ere, scid-I, scis-sum, to split.
tund-o, tund-ere, tu-tud-I, tun-sum and tā-sum, to thump.

169. LIQUID-STEMS.

1. All liquid-stems have the stem-syllable short.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Contracted forms: sū-mo (sub-imó); pō-no (po-sino, or pos-n-o).
2. Original sibilant stems: haere-o, haes-.

2. Most liquid-stems, by means of the suffix e, pass over into the 2d Conjugation, or in the Perfect, at least, suffer change of Conjugation.

3. Those which follow the 3d Conjugation throughout take I in the Perfect, and in the Supine either -sum or -tum. They lengthen the stem-syllable in the Perfect, or retain the double letter (rr, ll). Some form the reduplicated Perfect.

em-o, em-ere, ēm-I, em-tum, to take, to buy.

So, too, co-em-o, I buy up. But the compounds with ad-, ex-, inter-, red-, take -im-o. So dir-im-o, I sewer.

inter-im-o, inter-im-ere, inter-ēm-I, inter-em-tum, to make way with.

The other compounds of em-o contract: cō-mo, dē-mo, prō-mo, sū-mo, and have -s at in the Perfect, generally with a p between, which is generated by the coming together of a labial and sibilant or dental. Comp. hiem(ps).
STEMS IN S.

170. 1. With the characteristic doubled.

\[ \text{peal-o, peal-ere, peal-ī, --- to play on the citherm.} \]
\[ \text{sal-o, sal-ere, sal-ī, sal-sum, to salt.} \]
\[ \text{veil-o, veil-ere, veil-ī (vul-ē), vul-sum, to pluck.} \]
\[ \text{verr-o, verr-ere, verr-ī (rare), ver-sum, to sweep.} \]

2. With change of Conjugation in the Present.

\[ \text{veni-o, veni-ere, ven-ī, ven-tum, to come.} \]

3. With reduplicated Perfect.

\[ \text{can-o, can-ere, cane-ī, can-tum, to sing.} \]
\[ \text{curr-o, curr-ere, curr-ī, curr-sum, to run.} \]
\[ \text{fall-o, fall-ere, fell-ī, fall-sum, to cheat.} \]
\[ \text{parl-o, par-ere, par-ī, par-sum (paritūm), to bring forth.} \]
\[ \text{com-perl-o, com-perl-ere, com-perl-ī, com-perl-tum, to send out.} \]
\[ \text{re-perl-o, re-perl-ere, rep-erl-ī, rep-perl-tum, to send.} \]
\[ \text{pell-o, pell-ere, pel-ī, pel-sum, to push, drive back.} \]
\[ \text{per-cell-o, per-cell-ere, per-cul-ī, per-cul-sum, to emit down.} \]
\[ \text{toll-o, toll-ere, sus-tul-ī, sub-lā-tum, to lift up.} \]

171. APPARENT LIQUID-STEMS IN R.—In the liquid-stems in r with long stem-syllable, the r has arisen from s. The original s reappears in the Perfect and Supine: hence the endings -sī in the Perfect (or by assimilation -sā), and -stum (-sum) in the Supine.

\[ \text{haere-o, haerē-ere, haē-sī, haēs-um, to stick (to).} \]
\[ \text{hauri-o, haurī-ere, hau-sī, haus-tum, to drain.} \]
\[ \text{fī-o, fīre-ere, ās-sī, ās-tum, to burn.} \]
\[ \text{com-būr-o, com-būr-ere, com-būs-sī, com-būs-tum, to burn up.} \]

With short stem-syllable.

\[ \text{ger-o, ger-ere, ges-sī, ges-tum (see tostum, 138), to carry.} \]

STEMS IN S.

172. 1. The stems in s preceded by a vowel have in general changed it to r. Unchanged appears only:

\[ \text{vis-o, vis-ere, vis-ī, vis-sum, to visit.} \]

2. Stems in s preceded by a consonant are:

\[ \text{deps-o, deps-ere, deps-sī, deps-tum, to knead.} \]
\[ \text{pins-o, pins-ere, pins-ui, pins-ī, pins-tum (pins-tum, pins-sum), to pound.} \]
\[ \text{tex-o, tex-ere, tex-ui, tex-tum, to weave.} \]

These have undergone change of Conjugation in the Perfect. (See 176.)
STEMS IN U.

PERFECT IN -I. SUPINE IN -TUM.

173. 1. With characteristic preceded by a consonant.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ab-lu-o</th>
<th>ab-lu-ere,</th>
<th>ab-lu-i,</th>
<th>ab-lu-tum,</th>
<th>to wash off.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ab-nu-o</td>
<td>ab-nu-ere,</td>
<td>ab-nu-i,</td>
<td>(ab-nu-itur-us),</td>
<td>to dissent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aou-o</td>
<td>aou-ere,</td>
<td>aou-i,</td>
<td>aou-tum,</td>
<td>to sharpen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad-nuo (an-nu-o),</td>
<td>ad-nu-ere,</td>
<td>ad-nu-i,</td>
<td></td>
<td>to nod assent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argu-o</td>
<td>argu-ere,</td>
<td>argu-i,</td>
<td>argu-tum,</td>
<td>to accuse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-gru-o</td>
<td>con-gru-ere,</td>
<td>con-gru-i,</td>
<td></td>
<td>to agree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-u-o</td>
<td>ex-u-ere,</td>
<td>ex-u-i,</td>
<td>ex-u-tum,</td>
<td>to put off, doff.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lu-o</td>
<td>lu-ere,</td>
<td>lu-i,</td>
<td>lu-itur-us,</td>
<td>to alone for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metu-o</td>
<td>metu-ere,</td>
<td>metu-i,</td>
<td></td>
<td>to fear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minu-o</td>
<td>minu-ere,</td>
<td>minu-i,</td>
<td>minu-tum,</td>
<td>to lessen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plu-o</td>
<td>plu-ere,</td>
<td>plu-it,</td>
<td>plu-it,</td>
<td>to rain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ru-o</td>
<td>ru-ere,</td>
<td>ru-i,</td>
<td>rū-tum (ruiturus),</td>
<td>to rush down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spu-o</td>
<td>spu-ere,</td>
<td>spu-i,</td>
<td>spu-tum,</td>
<td>to spee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statu-o</td>
<td>statu-ere,</td>
<td>statu-i,</td>
<td>statu-tum,</td>
<td>to settle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sternu-o</td>
<td>sternu-ere,</td>
<td>sternu-i,</td>
<td></td>
<td>to sneese.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su-o</td>
<td>su-ere,</td>
<td>su-i,</td>
<td>su-tum,</td>
<td>to sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribu-o</td>
<td>tribu-ere,</td>
<td>tribu-i,</td>
<td>tribu-tum,</td>
<td>to allot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

174. 2. With characteristic preceded by a vowel.

After a vowel, u appears as v, but in the Supine it suffers, as a vowel, contraction with
the vowel preceding it (generally with change of conjugation).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cave-o</th>
<th>cavē-re,</th>
<th>ċāv-i,</th>
<th>cau-tum,</th>
<th>to take heed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>favo-o</td>
<td>favē-re,</td>
<td>fav-i,</td>
<td>fau-tum,</td>
<td>to be well-disposed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fove-o</td>
<td>fōvē-re,</td>
<td>fōv-i,</td>
<td>fū-tum,</td>
<td>to keep warm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juv-o</td>
<td>juvā-re,</td>
<td>jūv-i,</td>
<td>jū-tum (juvātūrus),</td>
<td>to help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad-juv-o</td>
<td>-jūvē-re,</td>
<td>-jūv-i,</td>
<td>-jū-tum (-jū tūrus),</td>
<td>to stand by as aid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(lav-o,)</td>
<td>(lav-ere,)</td>
<td>lāv-i,</td>
<td>lau-tum (lā-tum),</td>
<td>to wash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lav-o</td>
<td>lavē-re,</td>
<td>(lavē-vi,)</td>
<td>lavē-tum,</td>
<td>to wash.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move-o</td>
<td>movē-re,</td>
<td>movē-i,</td>
<td>mō-tum,</td>
<td>to move.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pave-o</td>
<td>pavē-re,</td>
<td>pavē-i,</td>
<td></td>
<td>to quake (with fear).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vove-o</td>
<td>vovē-re,</td>
<td>vōv-i,</td>
<td>vō-tum,</td>
<td>to vow.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The same reappearance of v occurs in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ferve-o (o),</th>
<th>fervē-re (ere), ferv-i (ferb-ud),</th>
<th></th>
<th>to seethe.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>solv-o</td>
<td>solv-ere,</td>
<td>solv-i,</td>
<td>solv-tum,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-volv-o</td>
<td>volv-ere,</td>
<td>volv-i,</td>
<td>volv-tum,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
DEPONENTS.

175. Remarks.—1. Deponent verbs are passive forms which have lost their passive or reflexive signification.

2. Stems strengthened by sc or isc have generally an inchoative meaning. Comp. 152, V.

1. Stems in a P-Mute.

1. ad-ip-isc-or, ad-ip-isc-t, ad-ip-tus sum, to (fasten to one's self) attain.

2. lāb-or, lāb-t, lāb-sus sum, to glide.

2. Stems in a K-Mute.

1. a. pro-fic-isc-or, pro-fic-isc-t, pro-fic-tus sum, to get forward, set out.

2. b. fung-or, fung-t, functus sum, to discharge.

nanc-isc-or, nanc-t, nanc-tus (nanc-tus) sum, to get.

am-plect-or, am-plect-t, am-plect-us sum, to twine round, embrace.

2. d. ulc-isc-or, ulc-isc-t, ul-tus sum, to avenge.

Ex. ex-perg-isc-or, (reg-) ex-per-g-isc-t, ex-per-rec-tus sum, to (right one's self up) awake.

4. paec-isc-or, paec-isc-t, paec-tus sum (pepigli), to drive (a bargain).

3. Stems in H and V.

fru-or (frugv), fru-t, fruc-tus, fru-i-tus sum, to enjoy.

veh-or, veh-t, vec-tus sum, to (waggon) ride.

4. Stems in a T-Mute.

2. assenti-or, assenti-t, assen-sus sum, to assent.

3. fate-or, fate-t, fas-sus sum, to confess.

con-fite-or, con-fite-t, con-fes-sus sum, to confess.

3. gradi-or, grad-t, gres-sus sum, to step.

ag-gredi-or, ag-gred-t, ag-gres-sus sum, to attack.

2. nifi-or (gnict), nifi-t, ni-sus (nixa-sus) sum, to stay one's self on.

from geni, ni-sus sum, to begin.

2. ordi-or, ordi-t, or-sus sum, to suffer.

3. pati-or, pati-t, pas-sus sum, to endure to the end.

per-peti-or, per-peti-t, per-pes-sus sum, to use.

2. sit-or, sit-t, sus-sus sum, to use.

5. Stems in a Liquid.

com-min-isc-or, com-min-isc-t, com-men-tus sum, to think up, devise.

com-men-tus sum, to try.

ex-peri-or, ex-per-t, ex-per-tus sum, to pity.

misere-or, misere-t, miser-i-tus sum, to pity.

6. Stems in R for S.

quer-or, quer-t, ques-tus sum, to complain.

7. Stems in U.

1. loqu-or, loqu-t, locutus sum, to speak.

sequ-or, sequ-t, sequi-tus sum, to follow.

2. ob-liv-isc-or, ob-liv-isc-t, obli-tus sum, to forget.
CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION.
(Compare 156.)

A.

178. 1. Verbs of the 1st Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

crep-o,  crepē-re,  crep-ul,  crep-itum,  to rattle.
cub-o,  cubē-re,  cub-ul,  cub-itum,  to bite.
dom-o,  domē-re,  dom-ul,  dom-itum,  to tame.
mic-o,  micē-re,  mic-ul,  —
di-mic-o,  di-micē-re,  di-mic-ul,  di-mic-itum,  to quiver, flash.
plio-o (ex-plio-o), plicē-re,  plic-ul (plio-ul),  plic-itum (plio-tum),  to fold.
(The simple rare.)
son-o,  sonē-re,  son-ul,  son-itum (sonē-tu-rus),  to sound.
ton-o,  tonē-re,  ton-ul,  —
vet-o,  vetē-re,  vet-ul,  vet-itum,  to thunder.

WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

frie-o,  friē-re,  frie-ul,  frie-tum (fie-tum),  to rub.
neec-o,  neecē-re,  neec-ul,  neec-tum,  to kill.
ē-neec-o,  ē-neecē-re,  ē-neec-ul (ē-ul),  ē-neec-tum,  to kill off.
sec-o,  secē-re,  sec-ul,  sec-tum,  to cut.

2. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

WITH CONNECTING-VOWEL.

ac-cumb-o,  ac-cumb-ere, ac-cumb-ul,  ac-cumb-itum,  to lie down.
frem-o,  frem-ere,  frem-ul,  frem-itum,  to roar, rage.
gem-o,  gem-ere,  gem-ul,  gem-itum,  to groan.
gī-gn-o (ēz-n-o),  gī-gn-ere,  gīn-ul,  gen-itum,  to beget.
mol-o,  mol-ere,  mol-ul,  mol-itum,  to grind.
strep-o,  strep-ere,  strep-ul,  strep-itum,  to make a din.
vom-o,  vom-ere,  vom-ul,  vom-itum,  to vomit.

WITHOUT CONNECTING-VOWEL.

al-o,  al-ere,  al-ul,  al-tum, al-itum,  to nourish.
col-o,  col-ere,  col-ul,  col-tum,  to cultivate.
consul-o,  consul-ere, consul-ul,  consul-tum,  to consult.
frend-o (ē-o),  frend-ere,  (frend-ul),  frē-sum, fres-sum,  to gnash.
occul-o,  occul-ere, occul-ul,  occul-tum,  to conceal.
rapi-o,  rap-ere,  rap-ul,  rap-tum,  to snatch.
cor-rip-o,  cor-rip-ere, cor-rip-ul,  cor-rip-tum,  to seize.
ser-o,  ser-ere,  —
dē-ser-o,  dē-ser-ere, dē-ser-ul,  dē-ser-tum,  to abandon.

So, too, depot-o, I knead, tex-o, I weare, and plino, I pound. (See 172.)

WITHOUT SUPINE.

compesc-o,  compesc-ere, compesc-ul,  to curb in.
con-cin-o (oc-, prae-),  con-cin-ere, con-cin-ul,  to sing together.
ex-cell-o, (ante-, prae-),  ex-cell-ere, ex-cell-ul,  ex-cell-sus,  to surpass.
ster-t-o,  stert-ere,  stert-ul,  to snore.
trem-o,  trem-ere,  trem-ul,  to tremble.
3. Verbs of the 4th Conjugation which pass over into the 2d in the Perfect and the Supine.

amīci-o, amīci-re, amīci-ul (amīxi), amīci-tum, to clothe.
aper-o, aper-re, aper-ul, aper-tum, to open.
opere-o, opere-re, opere-ul, opere-tum, to cover up.
sal-i-o, sali-re, sali-ul, sali-tum, to leap.
dē-sili-o, dē-sili-re, dē-sili-ul, (dē-sul-tum), to leap down.

4. Verbs of the 3d Conjugation which pass over into the 4th in the Perfect and Supine.

arcess-o, arcess-ere, arcess-ivī, arcess-ītum, to send for.
in-cess-o, in-cess-īvī (cessī), in-cess-ītum (cessīt), to attack.
cupi-o, cupi-ere, cupi-ivī, cupi-ītum, to desire.
pet-o, pet-ere, pet-ivī, pet-ītum, to seek (fly at).
quae-o, quaes-o, quaes-ivī, quaes-ītum, to seek.
quaeso, quaesumus, are old colloquial forms, prythee.
con-quir-o, con-quir-ere, conquis-ivī, conquis-ītum, to hunt up.
rud-o, rud-ere, rud-ivī, rud-ītum, to roar.
sapi-o, sapi-ere, sapi-ivī (sul), sapi-ītum (sul), to have a flavor.

5. Verbs which vary between the 2d and the 4th Conjugation.

cie-o (ci-o), cie-ere (ci-re), ci-ivī, ci-ītum (ci-tum), to stir up.
con-citus, per-cit-us, ex-cit-us, or excitus, but ac-cit-us.

6. Verbs which pass over into the 3d Conjugation in the Supine.
pōt-o, pōtē-re, pōtē-ivī, pōt-ītum (po) or
pōt-ītum, pōt-ītus, pōtē-tūtus, to drink.

B.

177. Change of Conjugation as Result of Reduplication.

da-ō, da-re, ded-i, da-tum, to give, put, do.

Remark.—Everywhere a-short, except in dās, thou givest, and dā, give thou.

1. Like dā, are conjugated the compounds with dissyllabic words, such as:
circum-do, I surround; satis-do, I give bawl; pessum-do, I ruin; vēnum-do, I sell; as:
circum-d-o, circum-da-re, circum-de-dī, circum-de-tum, to surround.

2. The compounds of da-re with monosyllabic words pass over wholly into the 3d Conjugation.

ab-d-o, ab-d-ere, ab-did-i, ab-d-ītum, to put away.

ad-d-o, ad-d-ere, ad-did-i, ad-d-ītum, to put to.

con-d-o, con-d-ere, con-did-i, con-d-ītum, to put up

(abs-con-d-o, abs-con-d-ere, abs-con-d-i, (didī),

abs-con-d-ītum, to put far away.

crēd-o, crēd-ere, crēd-did-i, crēd-ītum, to put faith.
dē-d-o, dē-d-ere, dē-did-i, dē-d-ītum, to give up.
ēd-o, ēd-ere, ēd-did-i, ēd-ītum, to put out.
in-d-o, in-d-ere, in-did-i, in-d-ītum, to put in.
per-d-o, per-d-ere, per-did-i, per-d-ītum, to ford (ruin).
prōd-o, prōd-ere, prōd-did-i, prōd-ītum, to betray.
red-d-o, red-d-ere, red-did-i, red-d-ītum, to give back.
trād-o, trād-ere, trād-did-i, trād-ītum, to give over.
vēn-d-o, vēn-d-ere, vēn-did-i, vēn-d-ītum, to put up to sale.
178. 

sto, I stand.

st-o,      stē-re,      (stē-tu-rūs), to stand.
ad-st-o,   ad-stē-re,   ad-stēt-i,         to stand in.
con-st-o,  con-stē-re,  con-stēt-i,        to stand fast.
in-st-o,   in-stē-re,   in-stēt-i,         to stand upon.
ob-st-o,   ob-stē-re,   ob-stēt-i,         to stand out against.
per-st-o,  per-stē-re,  per-stēt-i,        to stand firm.
prale-st-o, prae-stē-re, prae-stēt-i,      to stand ahead.
re-st-o,   re-stē-re,   re-stēt-i,         to stand over.
dī-st-o,   dī-stē-re,   ——                to stand apart.
ex-st-o,   ex-stē-re,   ——                to stand out.
circum-st-o, circum-stē-re, circum-stēt-i, to stand round.

1. Like circum-sto, all compounds of stāre with disyllabic prepositions have -stēt in the Perfect, as:
   ante-sto, I am superior; inter-sto, I am between; super-sto, I stand upon.

2. In other compounds the reduplicated form sisto is used, which, as a
simple verb, has the transitive meaning; I (cause to) stand, but in its com-
pounds, the intransitive, I stand.

sīst-o,      sist-ere,      (stīt-i),    sta-tum,     to (cause to) stand.
con-sist-o,  con-sist-ere,  con-stīt-i,  con-stītum,  to come to a stand.
de-sist-o (ab-), de-sist-ere, de-stīt-i, de-stītum,  to stand off.
ex-sist-o,   ex-sist-ere,   ex-stīt-i,  ex-stītum,  to stand up.
ob-sist-o,   ob-sist-ere,   ob-stīt-i,  ob-stītum,  to take a stand against.
re-sist-o,   re-sist-ere,   re-stīt-i,  re-stītum,  to withstand.
ad-sist-o,   ad-sist-ere,   ad-stīt-i,  ——             to stand near.
in-sist-o,   in-sist-ere,   in-stīt-i,  ——             to stand upon.
circum-sist-o, circum-sist-ere, circum-stīt-i, to take a stand round.

179.

C.

CHANGE OF CONJUGATION AS RESULT OF STRENGTHENED PRESENT.

1. Present strengthened by n.

li-n-o,      lin-ere,      li-vī, or lāvī, li-tum,  to besmear.
si-n-o,      sin-ere,      si-vī,         si-tum,  to set.
dē-sin-o,    dē-sin-ere,   dē-si-vī (di), dē-si-tum,  to leave off.
pōn-o (po-sino), pōn-ere, po-sū,        po-sītum,  to place, leave be-
hind.

2. Present strengthened by sc-: compare H (181).

crē-sc-o,    crē-sc-ere,   crē-vī,         crē-tum,  to grow.
nō-sc-o,     nō-sc-ere,    nō-vī,         (Adj. nōtus),  to learn to know.
co-gnōsc-o,  co-gnōsc-ere, co-gnō-vī,    co-gnōtum,  to recognize.

So the other compounds of nōsco, except ignōsco, I pardon, take no notice of, which
has Sup. ignōtum (adj. ignōtus, unknown).

pa-sc-o,      pase-ere,    pā-vī,         pas-tum,  to graze (trans.)
quie-sc-o,    quiesc-ere,  quīes-vī,      quiē-tum,  to rest.
sue-sc-o (as-, con-), suec-ere, sue-vī,    suē-tum,  to accustom one's self.
D.

180. Some stems in -r (-er) undergo change of conjugation as result of Metathesis, which also is a strengthening of the Present. Ser-o, *I saw*, is a reduplicated form for se-so.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>(crā-vī)</th>
<th>(crā-tum)</th>
<th>to separate.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cern-o</td>
<td>cern-ere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dē-cern-o</td>
<td>dē-cern-ere</td>
<td>dē-crā-vī</td>
<td>dē-crā-tum</td>
<td>to decide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ser-o</td>
<td>ser-ere</td>
<td>sē-vī</td>
<td>sē-tum</td>
<td>to sow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>con-ser-o</td>
<td>con-ser-ere</td>
<td>con-sē-vī</td>
<td>con-sē-tum</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sper-n-o</td>
<td>spern-ere</td>
<td>sprē-vī</td>
<td>sprē-tum</td>
<td>to despise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stern-n-o</td>
<td>stern-ere</td>
<td>strā-vī</td>
<td>strā-tum</td>
<td>to strew.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ter-o</td>
<td>ter-ere</td>
<td>trī-vī</td>
<td>trī-tum</td>
<td>to rub.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E.

Inchoative Verbs.

181. 1. The inchoatives are formed

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{by adding to the vowel-stems -so-.} \\
\text{by adding to the consonant-stems -isc-.
}\end{align*}
\]

Perfect and Supine are formed from the pure stem.

inveterā-so-o, inveterā-so-ere, inveterā-vī, inveterā-tum, to grow old.

nā-so-or, nāso-i, nē-tus sum, to be born.

ex-olē-so-o, ex-olē-so-ere, ex-olē-vī, ex-olē-tum, to get one’s growth.

Like exolēsoo, conjugate obsolēsoo, *I grow old*; but abolēsoo, *I disappear*, follows aboleo, and inolēsoo has no supine.

ad-olē-so-o, ad-olē-so-ere, ad-olē-vī, ad-olē-tum, to grow up.

co-alē-so-o, co-alē-so-ere, co-alē-vī, (co-alē-tum), to grow together.

con-valē-so-o, con-valē-so-ere, con-valē-vī, con-valē-tum, to get well.

in-calē-so-o, in-calē-so-ere, in-calē-vī, —

exardē-so-o, exardē-so-ere, exar-sī, exar-sum, to take fire.

sci-so-o, sci-so-ere, sci-vī, sci-tum, to decree.

ad-scūl-so-o, ad-scūl-so-ere, ad-scūl-vī, ad-scūl-tum, to take on.

ob-dormi-so-o, ob-dormi-so-ere, ob-dormi-vī, ob-dormi-tum, to fall asleep.

con-cup-iso-o, con-cup-iso-ere, con-cup-isī, con-cup-tum, to long for.

in-gem-isc-o, in-gemisc-ere, in-gem-ul, —

re-sip-isc-o, re-sipisc-ere, re-sip-ivī, —

(re-sap-ere),

re-viv-isc-o, re-vivisc-ere, re-viv-ivī, re-victum, to come to life again.

2. Inchoative Verbs may be formed likewise from Nouns or Adjectives.

vān-e-so-o, vān-e-seo-ere, vān-ul, (vānus), to disappear.

frā-so-or, frā-sole, frā-tus sum, (fra), I am angry, to grow angry.

nōt-so-o, nōteso-ere, nōt-iv, (nōtus), to become known.

vesper-asc-o, vespersoce-ere, — (vesper), to become evening.
182. \hspace{1cm} \textbf{Change of Voice.}

\textbf{Neuter Passive Verbs.}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{aude-o}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{audē-re}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{au-sus sum}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{to dare.}
\item \textit{fid-o}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{fid-ere}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{fi-sus sum}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{to trust.}
\item \textit{gaude-o}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{gandē-re}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{gāv-isus sum}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{to rejoice.}
\item \textit{[re-vert-or]}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{re-vert-I}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{re-versus sum}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{to turn back.}
\item \textit{sole-o}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{solē-re}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{sol-itus sum}, \hspace{1cm} \textit{to be wont.}
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Remarks.}—1. Some Active Verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning, as: \textit{cānātus}, one who has dined, from \textit{cānāre}, to dine; \textit{prānsus}, having breakfasted, from \textit{prandeo}, I breakfast; \textit{pōtus}, drunken, from \textit{pōto}, I drink; \textit{jūrātus}, having taken the oath, sworn, from \textit{jūro}, I swear; \textit{conjūrātus}, a conspirator, from \textit{conjūro}, I conspire. Many such are used purely as Adjectives: \textit{considerātus}, circumspect, from \textit{considero}; \textit{cautus}, wary, from \textit{caveo}, I beware.

2. The Perfect Participle of many Deponent Verbs has both Active and Passive meaning: \textit{adēptus} (adipiscor), having acquired, or being acquired; \textit{comitātus} (comitōr, I accompany); \textit{expertus} (experior, I try); \textit{exsecrātus} (exsecor, I curse); \textit{imitātus} (imitor, I copy); \textit{meritus} (mereor, I deserve); \textit{opinātus}, necopinātus (opinor, I think); \textit{pactus} (pascor, I contract); \textit{partītus} (partior, I distribute); \textit{sortītus} (sortior, I cast lots); \textit{tueor}, I protect; \textit{tūtus}, safe; the Perf. Participle in ordinary use is \textit{tūtātus}.

183. \hspace{1cm} \textbf{Irregular Verbs.}

\textbf{A.}

\textbf{Irregular in the Formation of the Tense-Stems.}

Irregular in the formation of the tense-stems are:

1. Two Verbs in a \textit{P}-mune of the 3d conjugation, viz.:
   \textit{clepo}, \textit{I flinch.} \hspace{1cm} \textit{lambo}, \textit{I lick.} \hspace{1cm} See 188.

2. Six Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a \textit{K}-mune, which have, in spite of the short stem-syllable, the Perfect in \textit{-se}, viz.:
   \textit{rego}, I keep right; \hspace{1cm} \textit{tego}, I cover in; \hspace{1cm} \textit{coquō}, I bake, and the compounds of
   \textit{lego}, I pick up; \hspace{1cm} \textit{lacio}, I lure; \hspace{1cm} \textit{specio}, I spy (-ligo, -licio, -spicio).

   From \textit{lego}, however, only \textit{diligo}, I love; \textit{intellego}, I understand; \textit{and neglego},
   \textit{I neglect}, are irregular. The other compounds are regular. See 161.

3. Two Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a \textit{T}-mune, which, in spite of the short stem-syllable, have the Perfect in \textit{-st}, viz.:
   \textit{divido}, \textit{I part.} \hspace{1cm} \textit{quatio}, \textit{I shake.} \hspace{1cm} See 167.

4. Four Verbs of the 3d conjugation in a \textit{T}-mune, which, in spite of long stem-syllable, have the Perfect in \textit{-i}, viz.:
   \textit{cūdo}, \textit{I hammer;} \hspace{1cm} \textit{sidō}, \textit{I sit;} \hspace{1cm} \textit{strideo}, \textit{I whistle;} \hspace{1cm} \textit{vertō}, \textit{I turn.} \hspace{1cm} See 167.
5. Assimilation between *bs* and *ms* occurs in the Perfect and Supine of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
<th>Supine Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jube-o</td>
<td>jubi-re</td>
<td>jus-sl</td>
<td>to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prem-o</td>
<td>prem-ere</td>
<td>pres-sl</td>
<td>to press</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Special irregularities occur in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bib-o</td>
<td>bib-ere</td>
<td>to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-e-o</td>
<td>man-e-re</td>
<td>to remain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mesti-or</td>
<td>mesti-rf</td>
<td>to measure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>met-o</td>
<td>met-ere</td>
<td>to mow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mor-i-or</td>
<td>mor-i</td>
<td>to die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rauti-o</td>
<td>rauti-re</td>
<td>to be horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-or</td>
<td>re-or</td>
<td>to think</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This verb has no present participle.

7. Formed from different tense-stems, are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fer-o</td>
<td>fer-re</td>
<td>to bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toll-o</td>
<td>toll-ere</td>
<td>to lift</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See 186.

184. B.

**Irregular in the Conjugation of the Present-Stem.**

Irregular in the conjugation of the Present-stem are:

1. ori-or, ori-rf, or-tus sum, to arise.

Present: ori-or, ori-eris, or-iter, or-imur, or-imini, ori-untur.

Imperfect: ori-er and or-erer. Gerund: ori-undus.

The compounds follow the simple verb, except ad-ori-rf, rise up at, attack, which follows the Fourth Conjugation.

2. i-re, to go. Stem i, which, before a, o, u, becomes e.

185. **Indicative.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I go</td>
<td>I be going</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sing.—1. e-o,
2. i-s,
3. i-t,

Plur.—1. i-mus,
2. i-tis,
3. e-unt.

**Imperative.**

Sing.—2. I, go thou,
3.

Plur.—2. I-te, go ye,
3.

I-tō, thou shalt go,
I-tō, he shall go,
Ltōte, ye shall go,
e-untō, they shall go.
INDICATIVE.       SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.
I- ba-m, I went,
I-re-m, I were going.

FUTURE.
I-b-ě, I shall go.

PERFECT.
I-ve (compos. I-ī), I have gone,
I-veri-m (ex-i-eri-m).

PLUPERFECT.
I-vera-m (ex-i-era-m), I had gone,
I-visse-m (ex-i-sse-m).

FUTURE PERFECT.
I-ver-ō (ex-i-er-ō).

INFINITIVE: PRES. i-re. PERF. I-visse (I-sse).
GERUND: e-und-i.
SUPINE: i-tum, to go.

The Passive occurs in some of the compounds: circum-i-īl.
Compounds of eo are: vēn-ėo, I am for sale, and per-ėo, I perish, which serve as passives to vēn-do and per-do, whose regular passives occur only in the forms vēnd-itus, vēnd-endus, and per-ditus.
The compound ambi-o, I solicit, follows the Fourth Conjugation throughout.
Like i-re, to go, are conjugated qui-re, to be able, and ne-qui-re, to be unable, which, however, are usual only in Present Indicative and Subjunctive.

3. fer-re, to bear.

186. The connecting-vowel i is dropped before t and s, and ē before r.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE.</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I bear.</td>
<td>I be bearing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.—1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. fer-ē,</td>
<td>fer-a-m,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fer-s,</td>
<td>fer-ā-s,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fer-t,</td>
<td>fer-a-t,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUR.—1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. fer-ī-mus,</td>
<td>fer-ā-mus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fer-ī-s,</td>
<td>fer-ā-tis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fer-ī-nt.</td>
<td>fer-ā-nt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IRREGULAR VERBS.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.—2. fer, bear thou, fer-tō, thou shalt bear, fer-tō, he shall bear,

3. fer-tō, he shall bear,

Plur.—2. fer-te, bear ye, fer-tōte, ye shall bear, fer-u-ntō, they shall bear.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

fer-ēba-m, I was bearing,

fer-re-m, I were bearing.

Future.

fer-a-m, I shall bear.

Perfect.

tul-I, I have borne,

tul-eri-m.

INFINITIVE: Pres. fer-re.

Perf. tul-is-e.

PART. fer-ēna, bearing.


SUPINE: lā-tum (t(o)lā-tum).

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

I am borne.

Sing.—1. fer-o-r,

fer-u-r,

2. fer-ris,

fer-a-r,

3. fer-tur,

fer-ā-ris,

Plur.—1. fer-l-mur,

fer-ā-mur,

2. fer-l-min,

fer-ā-min,

3. fer-u-ntur.

fer-ā-tur,

fer-a-ntur.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing.—2. fer-re, be thou borne, fer-tor, thou shalt be borne, fer-tor, he shall be borne,

3. fer-tor, he shall be borne,

Plur.—2. fer-l-min, be ye borne.

fer-u-ntor, they shall be borne.

3. fer-u-ntor, they shall be borne.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperf.: fer-ēba-r,

FER-a-r.

Future: fer-a-r.

Perfect: lā-tus sim.

GER.: fer-a-nd-us,

INF. fer-ri, to be borne.

5*
IRREGULAR VERBS.

COMPOUNDS.

af-fer-o, af-fer-re, at-tul-i, al-lā-tum, to bear to.
au-fer-o, au-fer-re, ab-tul-i, ab-lā-tum, to bear away.
con-fer-o, con-fer-re, con-tul-i, col-lā-tum, to collect.
dif-fer-o, dif-fer-re, dis-tul-i, di-lā-tum, to put off.
ef-fer-o, ef-fer-re, ex-tul-i, e-lā-tum, to carry out.
of-fer-o, of-fer-re, ob-tul-i, ob-lā-tum, to offer.

REMARK.—Suf-fero, I undergo, has the Perfect sus-tin-uī (sus-tul-i, sub-lā-tum, being appropriated to toll-o). (188.)

4. ed-ere, to eat.

187. In certain forms the connecting-vowels i and e are dropped before s, t, and r; d before s (r) is dropped or assimilated (as ss), and before t becomes s.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I eat.
SING.—1. ed-o,
2. ed-i-s, ē-s,
3. ed-i-t, ē-st,

PLUR.—1. ed-i-mus,
2. ed-i-tis, ēs-tis,
3. ed-iunt.

I be eating.

ed-a-m, ed-ā-s, ed-a-t,
ed-ā-mus, ed-ā-tis, ed-a-nt.

IMPERFECT.
ed-ēba-m, I ate, ed-ere-m, ēs-sem, I were eating.
ed-i-to, ēs-tō, thou shalt eat,
ed-i-to, ēs-tō, he shall eat,
editōte, ēs-tōte, ye shall eat.
ed-u-ntō, they shall eat.

IMPERATIVE.

SING.—2. ed-e, ēs, eat thou,
3.

PLUR.—2. ed-i-te, ēs-te, eat ye,
3.

ed-ere, ēs-se, to eat.

ed-i-to, ēs-tō, thou shalt eat,
ed-i-to, ēs-tō, he shall eat,
ed-u-ntō, they shall eat.

5. fi-erī, to become.

188. Fi-o is conjugated in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, according to the 4th Conjugation, but receives a connecting-vowel in the Subjunctive Imperfect and in the Infinitive, viz., fi-erem, I were becoming; fi-erī, to become. In these forms the i is short, but elsewhere it is long, even before another vowel.
The Infinitive ends in -r, and the whole Verb in the Present-stem is treated as the Passive to facio, *I make*. The rest of the Passive is formed regularly from facio.

### ACTIVE

**Pres.** facio, *I make.*

**Imperf.** faciēbam, *I made.*

**Future.** faciam, *I shall make.*

**Perfect.** fēcī.

**Pluperf.** fēceram.

**F. Perf.** fēcero.

### PASSIVE

**IND.** fīo, *I am made, I become.*

fīs, fit (fīmus, fītis), fīunt.

fīēbam, *I was made, I became.*

fīam, *I shall be made* (become).

factus sum.

factus eram.

factus erē.

**SUB.** fīam, fīas, fīat, etc.

fierem, fierēs, etc.

**INF. Perf.** factum esse, *to have become.*

**Fut.** futūrum esse or fore.

**F. P.** factum fore.

### Remark.

The compounds of facio with Prepositions change the a of the stem into i, and form the Passive regularly from the same stem: perficio, *I achieve*; Pass. perficior; interficio, *Pass. interfacio, I am destroyed.* But when compounded with words other than prepositions, facio retains its a, and uses fīo as its Passive:


The accent remains the same as in the simple verb: calēfacīs, *thou warmest.*

### 189. 6. Vel-le, *to be willing.*

nōlle, *to be unwilling; mālle, to be willing rather.*

### INDICATIVE

**Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volo,</th>
<th>nōlo,</th>
<th>mālo,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vis,</td>
<td>nōn vis,</td>
<td>māvīs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult,</td>
<td>nōn vult,</td>
<td>māvult,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumus,</td>
<td>nōlumus,</td>
<td>mālumus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultis,</td>
<td>nōn vultis,</td>
<td>māvultis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunt.</td>
<td>nōlunt.</td>
<td>mālunt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

| Volēbam, | nōlēbam, | mālēbam. |

**Future.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volam,</th>
<th>nōlam,</th>
<th>mālam,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>volēs,</td>
<td>nōlēs,</td>
<td>mālēs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect.**

| Volui, | nōlui, | mālui. |
DEFECTIVE VERBS.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

**Present.**

| velim,  | nōlim,  | mālim,  |
| velis,  | nōlis,  | mālis,  |
| velit,  | nōlit,  | mālit,  |
| velīmus, | nōlimus, | mālimus, |
| velītis, | nōlītis, | mālītis, |
| velint. | nōlīnt. | mālīnt. |

**Imperfect.**

| vellem, | nōlem, | mālem. |

**Imp.:**

| SING.—nōlī, nōlītō. |
| PLUR.—nōlīte, nōlītōte, nōluntō. |

**Inf. Pres.** velle,

| nōlle, | mālle. |

**Pres. voluisset,**

| nōluisset, | māluisset. |

**Part.** volens.

| nōlens. |

190. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. ājo, I say ay.


**Imperf.** ājēbam, etc.

**Subj.** ājās, ājat, ājant.

**Part.** ājens (as adj.), affirmative.

2. inquam, I say, quoth I.

**Ind. Pres.**

| Sing.— 1. inquam, 2. inquis, 3. inquit. |
| Plur.—1. inquimus, 2. inquitis, 3. inquunt. |

**Imperf.**

| 3. inquiēbat. |

**Fut.**

| 2. inquiēs, 3. inquiet. |

**Perf.**

| 2. inquitīs, 3. inquit. |

**Plur.—2. inquistīs.**

3. fā-ri, to speak.

**Pres. fātur.** **Fut. fābor, fābitur.** **Perf. fātus sum, etc.** **Sup. fātū**

**Imper. fāre.** **Ger. fandi, fandō.** **Part. Pres. fantis, fantem.**

4. avē-re, salvē-re, valē-re.

| avē, salvē, salvēbis, hail thou! | valē, farewell. |
| avēte, salvēte, hail ye! | valēte, farewell. |
| avēre, salvēre. | valēre. |
| age, agite, come! | apage, begone! |
| cedo, give! | Plur.—cette. |
5.

In use only in the Perfect-stem are coepi, I have begun, to which incipio serves as a Present; memini, I remember; ëdi, I hate; növi (from nöscor, see 179), I know, am aware; consuevi (from consuesco), I am wont.

IND. coepi, I have begun.
    coeperam, SUBJ. coeperim,
    coeperis.

IND. memini, I remember,
    memineram,
    memineris.

IMPER. SING.—mementō.

IND. ëdi, I hate,
    ëderam,
    ëderis.

Plur.—mementōte.

SUBJ. ëderim,
    ëdissemm,

INF. ëdisse, to hate.

coepi and ëdi have passive forms of the same meaning:

coepitus sum, I have begun (which is used with the Passive Inf.).

ësus sum, I hate.

191. OBSELETE FORMS OF THE VERB.

1. The Future of Verbs in -do is sometimes formed like ñbo, I shall go: venbo, I shall come; scibo, I shall know.

2. The Pres. Inf. Pass. was originally longer by -er: monstrârīer, miscêrīer, admittârīer, experîrīer.

3. The Pres. Subj. Act. had an ending -im (compare sim, velim): edim, edis, edit, edint, eat; effodint, dig out; coquint, cook. Stem vowels were dropped: temperint, carint. Dare formed duim; so, perduim, crēduim.


5. In the Perfect stem there was a shorter formation. So in the 2 Pers. Perf. Act. Ind.'3 conj., dixti, dixtis (only from mute stems). The terminations -sim and -sem (Perf. and Pluperf. Subj.), -so (Fut. Perf.), -se (Perf. Inf.), are added to the verb stem. After a vowel s becomes ss. So dixim, faxim, adaxim, rapsim; locâṣsim, negâṣsim; faxem, extinxem; faxo, capso, jusco, amâsso; surrex, prôtraxe, dîxe. The Inf. forms of the vowel conjugations coincide with amâsse, fîsse, audîsse, as creâstī, dâlîstī, audîstī with dîstit. A Future Inf. in -sere is also found: impetrâsere, prohibâsere. Compare, however, facessere, capessere.

The antiquated forms of facio are often found in old formulae.

6. Old forms of esse.
(1) stem, siēs, siet, Pr. Subj.
(2) escit, escunt, Inchoative for Fut.
(3) fuam, fuās, fuat, fuant, Pr. Subj. (stem fu-).
(4) fīvī, fōvī, Pf. Ind.
INDEX OF VERBS.

This Index is intended to serve as a supplement also, and contains many verbs not mentioned in the text, defectives in supine or in perfect and supine, compounds, isolated forms, rare words.

A.
Ab-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Ab-igo (AGO), ere, -ēgī, -actum, 159.
Ab-jicio (JACIO), ere, jēctī, -jectum, 159.
Ab-luo, ere, -lutī, -lūtum, 173.
Ab-nuo, ere, -nutī (-nutīrus), 178.
Ab-oleo, ere, ēvi, itum, 127.
Ab-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, 181.
Ab-ripio (RAPIO), ere, -ripitū, -repitūm, 176. [177.
Abs-condo (DO), ere, -drī (-didī), ditum, 92.
Ab-sistō, ere, -stītī, 178.
Ab-sum, -esse, ab-futūrī, a-futūrī, 113.
Ac-cendo, ere, -cendi, -censum, 164.
Ac-cido (CADO), ere, -cidī, 168.
Ac-cipio (CAPIO), ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, 157.
Ac-colo (COLO), ere, -colūtī, -culturum, 176.
Ac-cumbo, ere, -cubūtī, -cubītum, 176.
Ac-curro, ere, ac-currī, -cursum, 170.
Aceeō, ēre, acutī, to be sour.
Ac-escō, ere, acutī, 181, to get sour.
Ac-quitō (QUARER), ere, -quāvī, -quātītūm, 176.
Acuō, ere, acutī, acūtum, 173.
Ad-do, ere, -dīdī, -ditum, 177.
Ad-imō (EMO), ere, ēmītī, -emītum, 181.
Ad-ipsicor, ī, ad-emptum sum, 175, 182.
Ad-olēscō, ere, -olēvī, -ultum, 181.
Ad-orīor, -ortī, -ortum, 184.
Ad-scsco, ere, -scīvī, -scītītum, 181.
Ad-sistō, ere, -stītī, 178.
Ad-spicio, ere, -spēxitū, -spectum, 161.
Ad-stō, -stāre, -stītī, 178.
Ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-futūrī, a-futūrī, 113.
Aegresco, ere, to fall sick.
Af-lero, -ferre, at-tullī, al-lūtum, 186.
Age, 190.
Ag-gredior, -gredi, -gressus, 175.
A-gnōscō, ere, a-gnōvī, a-gnītūrum (agnōtīrus), 179.
Ago, ere, ēgī, actum, 159.
Ājo, 190.
Âlbeō, ēre, to be white.
Âlgeo, ēre, ālatī, 160.
Âl-lico, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.
Âl-luo, ere, -lutī, -lūtum, 173.
Âl-o, ere, ālatī, al-ītum, 176.
Âmb-igo (AGO), ere, 159.
Âmb-io (EO), ēre, āvi (ī), ātum, 185.
Âmicio, ēre, (amicītī), amīctum, 176.
Âmo, āre, āvi, ātum. See 119.
Âmplector, ī, āmplexus, 175.
Ângō, ere, ânxtī, 160.
Ân-nuo, ere, ānusītī, ānusītum, 173.
Ânte-ello, ere, 176.
Ânte-stō, -stāre, -stītī, 178.
Âpage, 190.
Â-perio, -īre, aperītum, āpertum, 176.
Âpiscor, ī, āptum sum. See adipiscor, 175.
Âp-peto, ere, ātī, ātum, 176.
Âp-plico (176), ēre, -plicātūrum, -plicātum.
Âp-pōnō (179), ēre, -pōnutum, -pōnitum.
Ârceō, ēre, arctus, (comp. 128) (ārctus (adj.))
Ârcessō (accersō), ēre, arcessātī, -ātum, 176.
Ârdeo, ēre, ārstī, ārsum, 165.
Ârēscō, ēre, āritū, 181, to become dry.
Âr-guo, ēre, argui, (argūtūm), 178.
Âr-ripio (RAPIO), ere, ātī, -reptum, 176.
Âr-scendo (SCANDO), ēre, ī, āscensum, 164.
Âr-spicio, ēre, a-spēxītum, a-spectum, 161.
Âs-sentior, īrī, assensus sum, 175.
Âs-sideo (SEDEO), ēre, -sēvitū, -sessum, 166.
Âs-suesco, ēre, -suēvī, -suētum, 179.
Ât-texo, ēre, ātexī, -textum, 172.
Ât-tineo (TENEO), ēre, ī, -tentum, 128.
INDEX OF VERBS.

At-tingo (TANGO), ere, attignt, attactum, 163.
At-tollo, ere, to raise up.
Audeo, ère, ausus sum, 182.
Audio, ère, tvi, Itum. See 136.
Au-fero, -ferre, abstulit, abatatum, 186.
Augeo, ère, auxi, auctum, 156.
Avè, 190.

B.

Balbùtio, ère, to stutter.
Batuo, ere, ut, to pummel, fence.
Bibo, ere, bibi, (bibitum), 188.

C.

Cado, ere, cecidit, cāsum, 168.
Caecutio, ère, to be blind.
Cædeo, ere, cecidit, cæsum, 168.
Calefacio, ere, -fect, -factum, 159, 188.
Calēsco, ere, calit, to get warm.
Calloeco, ère, ut, to be skilled.
Calvoce, ère, to be bald.
Caudo, ère, ut, to shine.
Çâneo, ère, to be gray.
Cano, ere, cecinīt, cantum, 170.
Capessō, ere, capēssivī, tūm, 176.
Capio, ere, cēptī, captum, 157. See 139.
Carpo, ere, carpēt, carptum, 158.
Caveo, ère, cāvit, cautum, 174.
Cādo, ere, cessvit, cēsum, 166.
Cēnitus, 182, R. 1.
Censeo, ère, ut, cēnsum, 128.
Cerno, ere, (crēvī), (crētum), 180.
Cieo, ļ ciere, cīvit, cītum, 176.
Cio, ļ ciere,
Clingo, ere, cīntī, cīntum, 160.
Circum-do, -dar, -dēdī, -datum, 177.
Circum-sītico, ère, stīt, 178.
Circum-sto, stāre, stēf, 178.
Claudo, ère, clausī, clausum, 165.
Clepo, ère, (cleptī), (cleptum), 158, 183.
Co-alēsco, ere, -aluit, (-alitum), 181.
Co-arguo, ere, ut, 173.
Co-emio, ere, -emit, -empitum, 169.
Coept, coepisse, 190.
Coi-gnōSCO, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, 156, 179.
Co-go (ago), ere, co-egi, co-actum, 159.

Col-īndo (LAEDO), ere, -istī, -istum, 165.
Col-īligo (LEGO), ere, -legt, -lectum, 159.
Col-lūceo, ère, -lūxti, 160.
Colo, ere, coluit, culitum, 176.
Com-būro, ere, -bust, -bstum, 171.
Com-edo, ere, -đīt, -đītum, 164.
Comitātus, 182, R. 2.
Commīniscor, 1, commentus sum, 175.
Com-moveo, ère, -mōvī, -mōtum, 174.
Cā-mo (EMO), ere, cōmpst, cōmpstum, 169.
Com-parco, ere, -parsit, -parsum, 162.
Com-pello, ere, com-pullit, -pulsum, 168, 170.
Com-perio (PARIO), ere, com-perit, com-peritum, 170.
Compesco, ere, ut, 176.
Com-pingo, ere, -pēgit, -pectum, 159.
Com-plector, 1, com-plexus, 175.
Com-pleo, ère, ĭvi, ĭtum, 127.
Com-primo (PREMO), ere, -pressit, -pressum, 183.
Com-pungo, ere, -puntī, -punctum, 162.
Con-cido (CADO), ere, -cidit, 168.
Con-cītō (CAEMO), ere, -cītī, -cīsum, 168.
Con-cino (CANO), ere, -cinuit, 176.
Con-citus (CIEO), 176.
Con-clūdo (CLAUDO), ere, -clustī, -clusum, 165.
Con-cupīisco, ere, -cupīsvi, cupītum, 181.
Con-cutio (QUATIO), ere, -cussi, -cussum, 167.
Con-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.
Con-fercio (FARCIO), ere (fersī), fertum, 160.
Con-fero, -ferre, -tulit, collitum, 186.
Con-ficio (FACIO), ere, -fect, -fectum, 159, 188.
Con-fitor (FATEOR), ĭtī, -fessus, 175.
Con-fringo (FRANGO), ere, -frēgit, -fractum, 159.
Con-gruo, ere, congruit, 173.
Con-jicio (JACIO), ere, -jēct, -jectum, 159.
Con-jurātus, 182, R. 1.
Con-niveo, ere, (connīvi), 163.
Con-quiro (QUAERO), ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, 176.
INDEX OF VERBS.

Con-sero, ere, -serut, -seratum, 176.
Con-sero, ere, -sēvī, -sīium, 180.
Con-serērātus, 182, R. 1.
Con-sīdō, ere, consēdi, -sessum, 167.
Con-sīstō, ere, -stītī, -stītum, 178.
Con-spiciō, ere, -spēxtī, -spectum, 161.
Con-stituō (STATUO), ere, ut, -stitum, 173.
Con-sto, -sārē, -stītī, (constātūrus), 178.
Con-sucesco, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, 179, 190.
Consulo, ere, consulūtī, -sultum, 176.
Con-temnō, ere, -teṃ(p)stī, -teṃ(p)tum, 169.
Con-texto, ere, -textūtī, -textum, 172.
Con-tīneo (TENEO, 128), ēre, ut, -ten tum.
Con-tīngo (TANGO), ere, contīgī, contactus, 162.
Convalēscō, ere, -valūtī, -valitum, 181.
Coquo, ere, coquit, coctum, 161, 183.
Cor-ripio (RAPIO), ere, -ripūtī, -reptum, 176.
Cor-ruo, ere, corrūtī, 178.
Crēbresco, ere, crēbrūtī, to get frequent.
Crē-do, ere, -dīdī, -ditum, 177.
Crepto, āre, crepūtī, crepitum, 176.
Crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, 179.
Cūbo, āre, cubūtī, cubītum, 176.
Cūdo, ere cūdītī, cūsum, 167.
Cupio, ere, cupītī, cupitum, 176.
Curro, ere, cucurrit, cursum, 170.

D.

De-cerno, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, 180.
De-cerno (CARPO), ere, stī tum, 158.
De-do, ēdērē, ēdēdītī, ēdēdītum, 177.
De-fendo, ere, -fendītī, -fensum, 164.
De-fetiscor, 1, to be worn out.
De-gō (AGO), ere, 159.
Delēo. See Paradigm, 123-126.
De-līgō (LEGō), ere, -legītī, -lectum, 159.
De-mo (EMO), ere, dempūtī, demptum, 169.
De-pello (170), ere, dépulī, dépulsam.
De-primo (PREMO, 183), ere, -presstim, pressum.
Depso, ere, depṣutī, depṣtum, 172.
De-scendo (SCANDO), ere, -scendītī, -scensum, 164.
De-sero, ere, -serūtī, -seratum, 176.

De-silio (SALIO), ēre, (it), (desultum).
De-sino, ere, destītī, desitum, 179.
De-sipio (SAPIO), -ere, 178.
De-sisto, ere, -stītī, -stītum, 178.
De-spicio, ere, -spēxtī, -spectum, 161.
De-sum, ēsso, -suītī, 113.
De-tendo (168), ere, -tendītī, -tendtum.
De-tineo (TENEO, 128), ēre, ut, -tenant.
De-vertor, 1, 182.
Dico, ere, dīxī, dictum, 160.
Differto, -ferre, distulī, distūtum, 186.
Di-gnōscō (NŌSCO, 179), ēre, -gnōvī.
Di-ligo, ere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.
Di-mico, āre, -vītī, -vītum, 176.
Di-rigo, ere, -rexītī, -rectum, 161.
Dirimo (EMO, 169), ēre, -emītī, -emtum.
Disco, ere, didicī, 162.
Dis-crepo, āre, -crepūtī, 176.
Dis-cumbbo (176), ēre, -cubūtī, -cubītum.
Dis-peso, ere, [-pescūtī] -pestum, to divide.
Dis-sideo (SEDEO, 166), ēre, -sēdī.
Dis-stinguo, ere, -stīnxtī, -stīctum, 160.
Dis-sto, -stāre, 178.
Dis-tesco, ere, to grow rich.
Disvido, ere, divīstī, divīsītum, 167.
Do, dare, dēdī, datum, 177.
Doceo, āre, docūtī, doctum, 128.
Domō, āre, ut, itum, 176.
Dūco, ere, dūxtī, dūctum, 160.
Dulcesco, ere, to grow sweet.
Dūresco, ere, dūritū, to grow hard.

E.

Edo, ere, ēdītī, ēssum, 164, 187.
È-do (DO), ēdēre, ēdīdī, ēditum, 177.
Effero, -ferre, extulī, extūtum, 186.
Egeo, ēre, egūtī, to want.
È-lico, ere, -licītī, -lictum, 161.
È-ligo (LEGō, 170), ēre, -legītī, -lectum, 159.
È-mico (176), ēre, ut (ātūrus).
È-mino, āre, ut, to stand out.
Èmo, ere, ēmītī, emtum, 169. See 131.
È-neco, āre, -necuti, -nectum, 176.
Èo, īre, itūtī, itum, 185.
È-vādo, ere, -vāssī, vāssum, 165.
È-vānesco, āre, -vānutūtī, 181.
Ex-ardēesco, ēre, exarstī, exarsum, 181.
INDEX OF VERBS.

EX-cello, ere, ut (excelsus), 176.
Excitus, 176.
Ex-cldudo (Claudo), ere, -st, -sum, 165.
Ex-curro (170), ere, excucurri, -cursum.
Ex-oléasco, ere, -olévt, -olétem, 181.
Ex-pello (170), ere, -pult, -pulsum.
Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, 175.
Ex-perior, -rit, -pertus sum, 175, 182, R. 2.
Ex-pleo, are, ávt, átum, 137.
Ex-plico, are, ut (ávt), ítum (átum), 176.
Ex-plódo (Plaudo), are, -st, -sum, 165.
Exsecratuus, 182, R. 2.
Ex-stinguo, are, -stinxt, -stinctum, 160.
Ex-sisto, are, -stit, -stitum, 178.
Ex-sto, are, extstíntus, 178.
Ex-tendo, are, dt, -sum (-tum), 168.
Ex-tollo, are.
Ex-uo, are, -ut, -átum, 178.

F.
Facesso (176), are, tvt (-t), ítum.
Facio, are, fect, factum, 159, 188.
Fallo, are, fefelt, falsum, 170.
Farcio, are, farst, fartum (-sum), 160.
Fárt, 190.
Fateor, árt, fassus sum, 175.
Fatiscro, i (fessus, adj).
Faveo, are, fávt, faitum, 174.
Ferio, are, to strike.
Fero, ferre, tult, tátum, 183, 186.
Ferreo, are, fervt (ferbul), 174.
Fido, are, físsus sum, 182.
Figo, are, fíxt, fíxum, 160.
Findo, are, fidt, físsum, 168.
Fingo, are, fíxt, fíctum, 160.
Fío, fierf, factus sum, 188.
Flecto, are, flexi, flexum, 160.
Fleo, are, ávt, átum, 127.
Fligo, are, fíxt, fíctum, 160.
Flóreo, are, ut, to bloom.
Fluo, are, fluxt (fluxus, adj.), 163.
Fodio, are, fódt, fóssum, 166.
Forem, 113.
Foveo, are, fóvt, fótem, 174.
Frango, are, frégt, fractum, 159.
Fremo, are, ut, ítum, 176.
Frendo (eo), are (ut), frésus, fressum, 176.

Frico, are, ut, frictum (átum), 176.
Frigeo, are (fríx), 160.
Frigo, are, fríxt, frictum (fríxum), 160.
Frondeo, are, ut, to be leafy.
Fruor, I, fructus (fruitus) sum, 175.
Fugio, are, fugt, fugitum, 159.
Fulcio, are, fulst, fultum, 160.
Fulgeo, are, fulst, 160.
Fundo, are, fídt, fásus, 164.
Fungor, I, functus sum, 175.
(Furo, def.), furere, to rave.

G.
Gannio, are, to yelp.
Gaudeo, are, gávisus sum, 182.
Gemo, are, ut, ítum, 176.
Gero, are, gessit, gestum, 171.
Gigno, are, genuf, genitum, 176.
Glisco, are, to swell.
Gradior, I, gressus sum, 175.

H.
Haereo, are, haest, haesum, 171.
Haurio, are, haust, haustum, 171.
(Haustrus, haustírus), 171.
Hisco, are, to yawn.
Horreo, are, ut, to stand on end.
Hortor, árt, átus sum, 141, 142.

I.
Íco, are, íct, ic tum, 161.
I-nónisco, are, -gnóvt, -gnótum, 179.
Il-licio, are, -lext, -lectum, 161.
Il-hdo (Laedo), are, -lxt, -lsum, 165.
Imbuo, are, ut, ítum, 173.
Imítatus, 182, R. 2.
Immínéo, are, to overhang.
Im-pingo (Pango, 160), are, -pëgt, -pactum.
In-caléSCO, are, -calit, 181.
In-cendo, are, -cendt, -censum, 164.
Incesso, are, tvt (t), 178.
In-cido (Cado, 168), are, -cidt, -ci-sum.
In-cido (Caedo, 168), are, -cfdt, -ci-sum.
In-cipio (Capio, 157), are, -cépt, -cep-
tum.
In-crepo (Crepo, 176), are, ut, ítum.
In-cumbo (176), are, -cubut, -cubit-
tum.
INDEX OF VERBS.

In-cutio (quatio, 167), ere, -cussit, -cussum.

Ind-Ugeo (ego), ere, ut, to want.

Ind-ipiscor, I, indeptus sum, 175.

In-do, ere, -didit, -dijtum, 177.

Indulggeo, ere, indulst (indulatum), 160.

In-duo, ere, -dut, -dutum, 173.

In-esteem, ere, to be silly.

In-emisco, ere, ingenuit, 181.

In-eruo, ere, ut. See congruo, 173.

In-inotesco (181), ere, nötus.

In-oléscro, ere, -olést, -olitum, 181.

Inquam, 190.

In-sideo (sedeo, 166), ere, -sédit, -ses-

sum.

In-sisto, ere, -stít, 178.

In-spicio, ere, -spexit, -spectum, 161.

Inter-ficio, ere, -fectis, -fectum, 159.

In-sto, āre, -stít, (instâtrus), 178.

In-sum, -esse, -fut, 113.

In-tegemo, ere, -extit, lectum, 161, 183.

Inter-immo (emo), ere, -emerit, -emptum, 169.

Inter-pungo, ere, -punxit, -punctum, 162.

Inter-sto, āre, -stetit, 178.

Inter-sum, -esse, -fut, 113.

Inveterasco, ere, -avít, 181.

In-vádo, ere, invást, -vástum, 165.

Irascit, I, irritus sum, 181.

J.

Jacceo, ere, jakuit, to lie.

Jacio, ere, jecit, pactum, 159.

Jubeo, ere, jussit, jussum, 183.

Jungo, ere, junxit, junctum, 160.

Juritus, 182, R. 1.

Juvo, ere, juvít, jútum (juvâtrus), 174.

L.

Labos, I, lapsus sum, 175.

Lacessro, ere, laccervi, -itum, 176.

Lacio, 161.

Laedo, ere, laest, laesum, 165.

Lambo, ere, t, 158, 188.

Langugeo, ere, i, to be languid.

Lateo, ere, ut, to lie hid.

Lavo, ere (ere), laví, lautom, látum, -lavátum, 174.

Lego, ere, légit, lectum, 159.

Libet, libère, libuit (libitum est), it pleases.

Licet, licéré, licuit (licitum est), it is permitted.

Lingo, ere, línxt, linctum, 160.

Linco, ere, livit (lêvit), litum, 179.

Linquo, ere, lquit, 159.

Liqueo, ere, licit, to be clear.

Livo, ere, to be livid.

Loquor, I, locátus sum. Paradigm, 145, 146.

Lucco, ere, lúxt, 160.

Ludo, ere, Last, Lastum, 165.

Lugeo, ere, lúxt, 160.

Luo, ere, ut, iutum, to wash, 173.

M.

Maereo, ere, to grieve.

Malo, malle, màluf, 189.

Mando, ere, mandit, mansum, 164.

Maneo, ere, manst, mansum, 183.

Medeor, erit, to heal.

Meminit, 190.

Mentior, it, futs. Paradigm, 147.

Mereor, erit, meritus sum, 182, R. 2.

Mergo, ere, merist, mersum, 160.

Métor, erit, mensum sum, 183.

Meto, ere, messuf (rare), messum, 183.

Metuo, ere, ut, 173.

Mico, āre, ut, 176.

Miuuo, ere, minuit, minitum, 173.

Misceo, ere, ut, mixtum, (mistum), 128.

Misereor, erit miseritus, (misertus) sum, 175.

Mitto, ere, mitst, missum, 166.

Molo, ere, mollit, mollitum, 176.

Moneo, ere, ut, itum, 129, 130.

Mordeo, ere, momordit, morsum, 183.

Morior, mortit, mortitus sum, 183.

Moveo, ere, movei, mötum, 174.

Mulceo, ere, mulst, mulsum, 160.

Mulgeo, ere, mulsi, mulsum (ctum), 160.

Mungo, ere, munxit, munctum, 160.

N.

Nancisor, I, nactus (nancus), 175.

Nascor, I, náctus sum (nasciturus), 181.

Neco, ere, avút, astum, 176.

Necto, ere, nectit (nexit), nexitum, 160.

Neg-ego, ere, -extit, -extum, 161.

Neocupitus, 182, R. 2.

Neo, nere, névit, nütum, 127.
INDEX OF VERBS. 115

Nequeo, ire, 123.
Nōlēscor, ere, nōnul, 191.
Ningo, ere, ninx, 160.
Niteo, ēre, ut, to shine.
Nǐtor, nīxus (nisus) sum, 175.
Nōlo, nōlē, nōlul, 189.
Noceo, ēre, ut (nocitūrus), to be hurtful.
Nōscor, ere, nōvī, nōtum, 179.
Nūbo, ere, nūpsī, nūptum, 158.

O.
Ob-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Ob-dormisco, ere, -dormīvi, -dormitum, 181.
Obīviscor, 1, oblītus sum, 175.
Obsideo (sedeo, 166), ēre, -sēdī, -sesum.
Ob-sisto, ere, -stītī, -stītum, 178.
Obs olēscor, ere, -olēvit, -olētum, 181.
Ob-sto, stāre, stītī (obstātūrus), 178.
Obtineo (teneo, 128), ēre, -tinīt, -tentum.
Occido, (cado), ere, -cidī, -cāsum, 168.
Occido (caedo), ere, -cidī, -cīsum, 168.
Occino (cano), ere, -cinūt, 176.
Occipio (capio), (157), ere, -cepī, -ceptum.
Occulo, ere, occuli, occultum, 176.
Odī, def., 190.
Of-fendo (164), ere, -fendī, -fensum.
Of-fero, -ferre, obtulī, obtūtum, 186.
Oleo, ēre, ut, to smell.
Olesco. See 181.
Operio, īre, operūt, operūtum, 176.
Opīnātūs, 182, R. 2.
Oppercio, 1, oppercūtus (or itus). Comp. 175, 5.
Ordior, 1, orsus sum, 175.
Orīor, 1, oritus sum (oritūrus), 184.
Os-tendo, ere, -tendī, -ten-sum (ten-tus), 168.

P.
Paciscor, 1, pactus sum, 175, 182, R. 2.
Palleo, -ēre, -ut, to be pale.
Pando, ere, pandī, passum (pansum), 166.
Pango, ere { pepigīt, 162, } pactum.
Pargo, ere, pepērtī (parsī), parsūrus, 162.
Pario, ere, pepērtī, partum (paritūrus), 170.
Partior, irī, itus, 182, R. 2.
Pasco, ere, pāvī, pastum, 179.
Pate-facio, ere, -factī, -factum, 188.
Patēscor, ere, ut, to be open.
Patior, 1, passus sum, 153.
Paveo, ēre, pávī, 174.
Pecto, ere, pectī, pexum, 160.
Pelliglio, -licere, -lexī, -lectum, 161.
Pello, ere, pepulī, pulsum, 170.
Pendēo, ēre, pensādī, 168.
Pendo, ere, penīdī, pensum, 168.
Per-cello, ere, percūlī, percūlum, 170.
Percedenso (censeo), ēre, -cēnsul, -cēsum.
Peritus (cieo), 176.
Per-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Per-eo, ēre, perīt, itum, 185.
Per-ficio, ere, -fēctī, fectum, 188.
Pergo (rego), ēre, perextī, perrectum, 161.
Per-petior (pator, 175), 1, perpessum sum.
Per-spicio, ere, -spexī, -spectum, 161.
Per-sto, stāre, stītī, 178.
Per-tineo (teneo, 128), ēre, ut.
Pessum-do, -dare, -dedī, -datum, 177.
Peto, ere, ivi (i), itum, 156, 176.
Piget, pigēre, piguit, pigitum est, it ērīs.
Pingo, ere, pinxi, pictum, 160.
Pinso, ere, ut (i), pinsitum (pistum, pinsum), 172.
Plango, ere, planxti, planctum, 160.
Plaudo, ere, plausī, plausum, 165.
Plecto, ere, plexī, plexum, 160.
Plector, 1, to be punished.
Pleo. See 127.
Plico, ēre, ut (āvi), itum (ātum), 176.
Pluo, ere, pluit, 178.
Pluvio, ēre, pluvīt, 173.
Pollio, ēre, to be potent.
Pōno (169), ere, posuī, positum, 179.
Posco, ere, posposcī, 162.
Pos-sideo (sedeo, 166), ere, -sēdī, sesum.
Pos-sum, posse, potulī, 115.
Pōto, īre, āvi, pōtūm, potūtum, 178.
Pōtus, 182, R. 1.
Præ-cello, ere, -cellūt, 176.
Præ-cino, ere, cinūt, 176.
Præ-crurro, ere, -cucurrī, -cursum, 170.
Præ-sideo (sedeo, 166), ēre, sēdī.
INDEX OF VERBS.

Prae-sum, -esse, -fut, 113.
Prae-sto, -stäre, -stif, (-stäturus), 178.
Prandeo, ere, prandți, pransum, 164, 182, R. 1.
Prehendo, ere, prehendī, prehensum, 164.
Premo, ere, presst, pressum, 183.
Prō-do (ago, 159), ere, -ēgl.
Prō-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Pro-ficiscor, ī, profectus sum, 175.
Pro-fīteor (fateor, 175), ērī, -fessus sum.
Prōmo (emo), ere, prōmpst, prōmptum, 189.
Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfut, 114.
Prō-tendo (tendo, 168), ere, -tendī, -tēntum, -tēnsum.
Psallo, ere, i, 170.
Pudet, ēre, puduit, puditum est, it shames.
Puerāsco, ere, to become a boy.
Pungo, ere, pupugi, punctum, 162.

Q.
Quaero, i, ere, quaestīvī, quaestūm, Quaesō, ū 176.
Quatio, ere, (quassī), quassum, 166.
Queo, quire, 185.
Queror, quert, questus sum, 175.
Quiēscō, ere, quiēstī, quiētūm, 179.

R.
Rādo, ere, rāst, rāsum, 165.
Rapio, ere, rapui, raptum, 176.
Raucio, ire, rausis, rausum, 183.
Re-censeo (censeo, 128), ēre, -censūrī, -censūm (reccensūm).
Re-crūdēscō, ere, -crudū, to get raw again.

Red-arguo (173), ere, -argui.
Red-do, eri, -dīdī, -ditum, 177.
Red-īgo (ago), ere, -ēglī, -actum, 159.
Re-fello (fallo, 170), ere, refellī.
Re-fero (183, 186), -ferre, -tulf, -תum.
Regō, ere, rext, rectum, 161, 183.
Re-linquo, ere, -liquī, -līctum, 159.
Reminisco, ī, to recollect.
Renīdeo, ere, to glitter.
Reor, reūrī, ratus sum, 183.
Re-perio, ire, repertī, repertum, 170.
Repō, ere, repst, repstum, 158.
Re-sipisco, ere, -sipsti (-sipst), 181.
Re-sisto, ere, -stīf, -stītum, 178.
Re-spondeo (168), ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
Re-sto, stārē, -stif, 178.
Restinguo, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, 160.
Re-tineo (texeo, 128), ēre, ut, -ten-
tum.
Re-verctor, ī, revertī, reversum, 167.
Re-vivisco, ere, vixī, vicitum, 181.
Rideo, ēre, risst, rissum, 165.
Rigeo, ēre, ut, to be stīff.
Rōdo, ere, rōst, rōsum, 165.
Rubeo, ēre, ut, to be red.
Rudo, ere, rūdīvī, itum, 176.
Rumpo, ere, rūpt, ruptum, 157.
Ruo, ere, ruf, rutum (ruitūrus), 173.

Q.
Querō, ī, ere, quaestīvī, quaestūm, Quaesō, ū 176.
Quatio, ere, (quassī), quassum, 166.
Queo, quire, 185.
Querō, quert, questus sum, 175.
Quiēscō, ere, quiēstī, quiētūm, 179.

R.
Rādo, ere, rāst, rāsum, 165.
Rapio, ere, rapui, raptum, 176.
Raucio, ire, rausis, rausum, 183.
Re-censeo (censeo, 128), ēre, -censūrī, -censūm (reccensūm).
Re-crūdēscō, ere, -crudū, to get raw again.

Red-arguo (173), ere, -argui.
Red-do, eri, -dīdī, -ditum, 177.
Red-īgo (ago), ere, -ēglī, -actum, 159.
Re-fello (fallo, 170), ere, refellī.
Re-fero (183, 186), -ferre, -tulf, -תum.
Regō, ere, rext, rectum, 161, 183.
Re-linquo, ere, -liquī, -līctum, 159.
Reminisco, ī, to recollect.
Renīdeo, ere, to glitter.
Reor, reūrī, ratus sum, 183.
Re-perio, ire, repertī, repertum, 170.
Repō, ere, repst, repstum, 158.
Re-sipisco, ere, -sipstī (-sipst), 181.
Re-sisto, ere, -stīf, -stītum, 178.
Re-spondeo (168), ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
Re-sto, stārē, -stif, 178.
Restinguo, ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, 160.
Re-tineo (texeo, 128), ēre, ut, -ten-
tum.
Re-verctor, ī, revertī, reversum, 167.
Re-vivisco, ere, vixī, vicitum, 181.
Rideo, ēre, risst, rissum, 165.
Rigeo, ēre, ut, to be stīff.
Rōdo, ere, rōst, rōsum, 165.
Rubeo, ēre, ut, to be red.
Rudo, ere, rūdīvī, itum, 176.
Rumpo, ere, rūpt, ruptum, 157.
Ruo, ere, ruf, rutum (ruitūrus), 173.

S.
Salio, ire, (salit,) saltum, 176.
Salvō, ēre, salīt, salisum, 170.
Salvē, def., 190.
Sancio, ire, sanxt., sanctum, 160.
Sapiio, ere (sapivt), sapui, 176.
Sarcio, ire, sarsi, sartum, 160.
Satis-do, -dare, -dedi, -datum, 177.
Scabo, ere, scābi, to scratch.
Scalpo, ere, scalps, scalptum, 158.
Scando, ere, scandī, scansum, 164.
Sceato, ēre, to gush forth.
Scindo, ere, scidt, scissum, 168.
Scisco, ere, scivī, sectum, 181.
Scribo, ere, scripsī, scriptum, 158.
Sculo, ere, sculpst, scalptum, 158.
Seco, ēre, secūt, sectum, 176.
Secato, ēre, secū, secātūrus,
Sedeco, ēre, sedt, sessum, 166.
Seligō (legō, 159), ere, -legī, -lectum.
Sentio, ire, sensī, sensum, 165.
Sepelio, ire, ivī, sepultum, 176.
Septio, ire, septī, septum, 158.
Sequor, i, sectitus sum, 175.
Sero, ere, 176.
Sero, ere, sévī, satum, 180.
Serpo, ere, serps, serptum, 158.
Sido, ere, stīt, 167.
Sileo, ēre, ut, to be silent.
Sino, ere, stīvī, situm, 179.
Sisto, ere, stīf, statum, 178.
Sitio, ire, ivī, to thirst.
Soleo, ēre, solitus sum, 182.
Solvo, ere, solvi, solūtum, 174.
Sono, ēre, sonūl, sonītum, 176.
Sorbeo, ēre (sorps-)i, sorbui, 158.
Sordeo, ére, ut, to be dirty.
Sortior, trt, sortitus sum, 182, R. 2.
Spargo, ere, sparst, sparsum, 160.
Sperno, ere, sprōvi, sprētum, 180.
—Spicio. *See ad-spicio.*
Splendeo, ére, ut, to shine.
Spondeo, ére, sponondi, sponsum, 168.
Spuo, ere, sput, spūtum, 173.
Squaleo, ére, to be rough, foul.
Statuo, ere, statuti, statūtum, 173.
Sterno, ere, strāvi, strātum, 180.
Sterndo, ere, sternul, 173.
Sterto, ere, stertui, 176.
—Stinguo, ere, 160.
Stō, stāre, stelt, stātum, 178.
Strepo, ere, strepul, strepītum, 176.
Strīdeo, ére (strīvi), strītī, 167.
Stringo, ere, strīnxi, strictum, 160.
Struuo, ere, struxi, structum, 163.
Studeo, ére, ut, to be zealous.
Stupeo, ére, ut, to be astounded.
Subdeo, ére, subst, subsum, 165.
Sub-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Sub-igo (aego, 159), ere, -ěgī, -actum.
Succedo (cedo, 106), ere, -cessi, -cessum.
Succenseo (see ac-cendo, 164), ere, -cendi, -cessum.
Succensoe (128), ére, ut, -censum.
Suesco, ere, suěvi, suětum, 179.
Suf-ero, -ferre, sus-tiuit, 180, R.
Suf-facio (facio, 159), ere, -feci, -fectum.
Suf-fodio (166), ere, -fodi, -fossum.
Sug-gero (see 171), ere, -gessi, -gestum.
Sūgo, ere, suxt, suctum, 160.
Sum, esse, suī, 112.
Sūmo (emo), ére, sumpi, sumptum, 169.
Suo, ere, sut, sūtum, 173.
Superbio, íre, to be haughty.
Super-sto, -stāre, -stelt, 178.
Super-sum, -esse, -suī, 113.
Sup-pōno (see 179), ere, -posui, -positum.
Surgo (rego), ere, surrext, surrectum, 161.

**T.**

Taedet, pertaesum est, it tires.
Tango, ere, tetigi, tactum, 162.
Tego, ere, textī, tectum, 161, 163.
Tenno, ere, 169.
Tendo, ere, tetentī, tensus (-tum), 168.
Teneo, ère, tenui, (tentum), 128.
Tero (eo), ére, terst, tersum, 160.
Tendo, ère, trevi, trītum, 180.
Texo, ere, texui, textum, 172.
Timo, ère, ut, to fear.
Tinguō, ère, tīnti, tinctum, 160.
Tolli, ere (sustuli, subūtum), 170.
Tondeo, ère, totondi, tonsum, 168.
Tono, ère, ut, 176.
Torpeo, ère, ut, to be torpid.
Torqueo, ère, torsi, tortum, 160.
Torreo, ère, torruī, tostum, 128.
Trā-do, ere, -didī, -ditum, 177.
Traho, ere, traxi, tractum, 163.
Tremo, ere, ut, 176.
Tribuuo, ere, ut, tribūtum, 173.
Trūdo, ere, trūst, trūsum, 165.
Tucor, èri (tuitus) tūtātus sum, 182, tūtus,
R. 2.
Tumeo, ère, ut, to swell.
Tundo, ere, tutudī, tunsum, tūsum, 168.
Turgeo, ère, tursī, 160.

**U.**

Ulciscor, I, ultus sum, 175.
Ungo, ere, unxi, unctum, 160.
Urgeo, ère, urst, 160.
Úro, ere, usst, ustum, 171.
Útor, I, ûsus sum, 175.

**V.**

Vādo, ere, 165.
Vale, 190.
Veho, ere, vext, vectum, 163.
Vello, ere, vellī (vulst), vulsum, 170.
Vēn-do, ere, -didi, -ditum, 177.
Vēn-eo, íre, īvi (īī), 185.
Venio, íre, vēni. ventum, 170.
Vēnnum-do, -dare, dedi, -datum, 177.
Vercor, èrī, veritus sum. *See* 148.
Verro, ere, verrī, versum, 170.
Verto, ere, verīi, versum, 167.
Vescor, I, to feed.
Vesperascio, ere, 181.
Veto, ère, vetui, velitum, 176.
Video, ère, vidi, visum, 164.
INDEX OF VERBS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vido, ere, etum, <em>to plait</em>.</td>
<td>See 127.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vigeo, ere, uf, <em>to flourish</em>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vincio, ire, vinxt, vincum, 160.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vincio, ere, vicf, victum, 159.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viso, ere, vist, visum, 172.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vivo, ere, vixt, victum, 163.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volo, velle, voluf, 189.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volvo, ere, volvi, volutum, 174.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomo, ere, vomut, vomitum, 176.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voveo, ere, vovi, votum, 174.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SYNTAX.

SYNTAX OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

192. Syntax treats of the formation and combination of sentences.
Sentences are divided into simple and compound.
A simple sentence is one in which the necessary parts occur but once.
The necessary parts of the sentence are the subject and the predicate.
The predicate is that which is said of the subject.
The subject is that of which the predicate is said.
Lūna splendet, The moon shines.
Lūna is the subject; splendet, the predicate.

193. The most simple form of the sentence is the finite verb:
s-u-m, I am; docē-s, thou teachest; scrib-i-t, he writes.

Remark.—Here the form contains in itself all the necessary elements (compare 111): m is the first person, s the second, t the third. From the expansion and modification of the finite verb arise all the complicated forms of the compound sentence.

194. The subject of the finite verb is always in the Nominative Case, or so considered.

Remarks.—1. The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.
2. The use of the Nominative in Latin is the same as in English.
3. The Vocative (the case of Direct Address) is not affected by the structure of the sentence, and does not enter as an element into Syntax, except in the matter of Concord. The form differs from the Nominative in the Second Declension only, and even there the Nominative is sometimes used instead, especially in poetry and solemn prose. (See further, 294, R. 1.)

Almae flius Majae. Hon. Son of mild Maia!
Audī tū, populus Albanus. Liv. Hear thou, people of Alba!
Ō is prefixed to give emphasis to the address:
FORMS OF THE SUBJECT.

ō formōse puér, nimium nē crēde colorī. Vers. O shapely boy! trust not complexion all too much.

The vocative is commonly interjected in prose, except in highly emotional passages.

195. The Subject may be a noun or pronoun, or some other word or phrase used as a noun:

Deus mundum gubernat, God steers the universe.

Ego régès sēcī, I drove out kings.

Sapiens rēs adversās nōn timet, The sage does not fear adversity.

Vīctī in servitūtem rediguntur, The vanquished are reduced to slavery.

Contendisse decūrōm est. Ov. To have struggled is honorable.

Magnūm est beneficium nātūrae quod necesse est mori. Sen. It is a great boon of nature, that we must needs die.

Vidēs habet duās syllābas, (The word) "vides" has two syllables.

The following remarks may be omitted by the beginner.

Remarks.—1. Masculine and Feminine adjectives and participles are used as substantives, chiefly in the plural number: pauperēs, the poor; divītēs, the rich; doctī, the learned; whereas, in the singular, the substantive is generally expressed: vir bonus, a good man; homo doctus, a learned person; mulier peregrina, a foreign woman.

When persons are not meant, a substantive is understood: cāni (capillī, grey hairs; calīs (aqua), warm water; dextra (manus), right hand.

2. Neuter adjectives and participles are freely employed as substantives in both numbers: medium, the midst; extrēmum, the end; reliquum, the residue; futūrum, the future; bonum, good; bona, blessings, possessions; malum, evil; mala, misfortunes.

The plural is frequently employed when the English idiom prefers the singular: vēra, the truth; omnia, everything.

3. Adjectives of the Second Declension are sometimes used as neuter substantives in the Genitive case, after words of quantity or pronouns: aliquid bonī, something good; nihil mali, nothing bad. Adjectives of the Third Declension are thus employed only in combination with those of the Second. (See 371, R. 2.)

4. Instead of the neuter adjective the word rēs, thing, is frequently used, especially in forms which are identical for different genders; so bonārum rērum, of blessings, rather than bonōrum (m. and n.).

5. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns occurs more frequently than in English: adventūs imperātōrum, the arrival(s) of the generals (because there were several generals, or because they arrived at different times). Pluralizing abstract nouns makes them concrete: fortitūdīnes, gallant actions; formīdīnes, bugbears; iīrae, quarrels.

6. Other plural expressions to be noted are: nīvēs, snowflakes; grandīnēs, hailstones; pluviae, (streams of) rains; ligna, (logs of) wood; carnēs, pieces of meat; aera, articles of bronze; also symmetrical parts of the human body: cervicēs, neck; pectora, breast.

The Plural is freely used in poetry:

Ōtia sī tollās, perdīre Cupīdinīs arcūs. Ov. If you do away with holidays, Cupid's bow (and arrows) are ruined. -

7. The rhetorical Roman often uses the First Person plural for the First Person singular. The usage originates in modesty, but mock modesty is the worst form of pomposity. In poetry there is often an element of shyness.

Librum dē senectūte ad tē misimus. Cic. We (I) have sent you a treatise on old age.

Sitque memor nūstri nee nee, referete mihi. Ov. Bring me back (word) whether she thinks of us (me among others) or no.
8. The Singular, in a collective sense, is also used for the Plural, but more rarely: 
\textit{faba}, 
\textit{bassae}; 
\textit{porcus}, 
\textit{pig} (meat); 
\textit{gallina}, 
\textit{fowl} (as articles of food); 
\textit{vestis}, 
\textit{clothing}; 
\textit{hostis}, 
\textit{the enemy}; 
\textit{miles}, 
\textit{the soldier}; 
\textit{pedes}, 
\textit{infantry}; 
\textit{eques}, 
\textit{cavalry}.

196. \textbf{COPULA.}—When the predicate is not in the form of a verb, the so-called Copula is generally employed, in order to couple the adjective or substantive with the subject.

The chief Copula is the verb \textit{sum}, \textit{I am}.

\textit{Fortuna caeca est}. Cic. \textit{Fortune is blind}.

\textit{Usus magister est optimus}. Cic. \textit{Practice is the best teacher}.

\textbf{Remark.}—Strictly speaking, the \textit{Cōpula} is itself a predicate, as is shown by the translation when it stands alone or with an adverb: \textit{est Deus, there is a God, God exists}; \textit{rectē semper erunt rēs, things will always be (go on) well}; \textit{sic vita hominum est, such is human life}; “So runs the world away.”

197. Other copulative verbs are: \textit{vidēri, to seem}; \textit{appārēre, to appear}; \textit{manēre, to remain}; \textit{nāscī, to be born}; \textit{fīrē, to become}; \textit{ēvādēre, to turn out}; \textit{creārī, to be created}; \textit{dēligī, to be chosen}; \textit{putārī, to be thought}; \textit{habērī, to be held}; \textit{dictī, to be said}; \textit{appellārī, to be called}; \textit{nōminārī, to be named}. Hence the rule:

Verbs of Seeming, Remaining, Becoming, with the Passive of verbs of Making and Choosing, Showing, Thinking, and Calling, take two nominatives, one of the Subject, one of the Predicate:

\textit{Nēmo dīvōs nāscitur}. Sen. \textit{No one is born rich}.

\textit{Aristidēs jūstus appellātur, Aristides is called just}.

\textit{Servius Tullius rēx est dēclārātus}. Liv. \textit{Servius Tullius was declared king}.

\textit{Thūcydīdēs nunquam numerātus est ōrātor}. Cic. \textit{Thucydides has never been accounted an orator}.

\textbf{Remarks.}—1. All copulative verbs retain the Nominative with the Infinitive after auxiliary verbs. (424.)

\textit{Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo potest}. Cic. \textit{No one can be happy without virtue}.

2. On the Double Accusative construction after Active Verbs, see 334.

198. \textbf{SUBJECT OMITTED}.—The personal pronoun is not expressed, unless it is emphatic, as for example in contrasts:

\textit{Amāmus parentēs, We love (our) parents}.

\textit{Ego rēgēs eijēct, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcētis}. Cic. \textit{I drove out kings, ye are bringing in tyrants}.

199. Verbs that have no definite subject are called \textbf{Impersonal Verbs}, chiefly relating to the state of the weather:
CONCORD.

Tonat, it thunders; fulgurat, fulminat, it lightens; pluit, it rains; nixit, it snows.

Remarks.—1. The passive of intransitive verbs (201) is often used impersonally: vivitur, people live; curritur, there is a running. The subject is contained in the verb itself: sic vivitur = sic vita vivitur, such is life. In the same way explain taedet, it wearies; miseret, it moves to pity; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it puts to shame.

2. All other so-called Impersonal Verbs have an Infinitive or an equivalent for a subject.

3. Other uses coincide with the English. So the Third Person Plural of verbs of Saying, Thinking, and Calling. So the Ideal Second Person Singular. (252.) To be noticed is the occasional use of inquit, quoth he, of an imaginary person:

Non concédō, inquit, Epicūrē. Cíc. I do not yield the point, quoth he (one), to Epicurus.

200. Copula Omitted.—Est or sunt is often omitted in saws and proverbs, in short questions, in rapid changes, and in tenses compounded with participles:

Summum jús summā injūria, The height of right (is) the height of wrong. Nēmo malus fēlix. Juv. No bad man (is) happy. Quid dulcius quam habēre quicum omnia audeās loquī. Cíc. What sweeter than to have some one, with whom you can venture to talk about everything? Aliquamdiū certātum. Sall. The struggle was kept up for some time.

So also esse with participles and the like.

Caesar statuit exspectandam clāsem. Caes. Caesar resolved that the fleet must be waited for.

CONCORD.

201. The Three Concorders.—There are three great concords in Latin:

1. The agreement of the predicate with the subject.
2. The agreement of attributive or appositive with the substantive. (261, 319.)
3. The agreement of the Pronoun with the Noun (Relative with antecedent.) (616.)

Remark.—It may be well for the beginner to study these together.

202. Agreement of the Predicate with the Subject.

The verbal predicate agrees with its subject in number and person.

The adjective predicate agrees with its subject in number, gender, and case.

The substantive predicate agrees with its subject in case.
**Substantiva móbilia** (21) are treated as adjectives, and follow the number and gender of the subject.

_Ego régés ejéci, vós tyrannós intródúcitis_ (198).

_Vērae amicitiae sempiterne sunt._ Cic. _True friendships are abiding._

_Dōs est decem talenta._ Ter. _The dowry is ten talents._

_Uūsus magister est optimus._ Cic. _Practice is the best teacher._

_Athēnæ sunt omnium doctrinārum inventricēs._ Cic. _Athens is the inventor of all branches of learning._

_Arх est monosyllabum._ "Arх" is a monosyllable.

**Remarks.**—1. The violation of the rules of agreement is due chiefly to one of two causes:

   i. The natural relation is preferred to the artificial (constructio ad sensum, per synesin, according to the sense).

   ii. The nearer is preferred to the more remote. Hence:

**Exceptions.**—1) Nouns of multitude often take the predicate in the Plural: _pars, part; vis, quantity; multitūdō, crowd;_ organized bodies more rarely.

_Pars mājor recēperant sēsē._ Liv. _The greater part had retired._

_Omnis multitūdō abeunt._ Liv. _All the crowd depart._

2) The adjective predicate often follows the natural gender of the subject:

_Capita conjūrātiōnis virgilis caesi sunt._ Liv. _The heads of the conspiracy were flogged._

3) The copula often agrees with the number of the predicate ("the wages of sin is death"):  

_Amantium iūne (195, R. 5) amōris integrātiō est._ Ter. _Lovers' quarrels are love's renewal._

2. A superlative adjective defined by a partitive genitive follows the gender of the subject when it precedes:

_Hordeum omnium frūgum mollissimum est._ Plin. _Barley is the softest of all grains._

Otherwise it follows the genitive:

_Vēlōcisissimum omnium animāliōn est delphinus._ Plin. _The dolphin is the swiftest of all animals._

3. The Vocative is sometimes used by the poets in the predicate, either by anticipation or by assimilation. (See 334, R. 1.)

4. The neuter adjective is often used as the substantive predicate of a masculine or feminine subject:

_Trīste lupus stabulis._ Verg. _The wolf is destruction to the folds._

_Omnium rērum (195, R. 4) mors est extrēmum._ Cic. _Death is the end of all things._

5. The demonstrative pronoun is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate:
Voices of the Verb.

203. There are two Voices in Latin—Active and Passive. The latter seems to have been Reflexive in its origin.

204. The Active Voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject.

Verbs are called Transitive when their action goes over to an object; Intransitive when their action does not go beyond the subject: *occidere, to fell* = *to kill* (Transitive); *occidere, to fall* (Intransitive).

Remark.—Transitive verbs are often used intransitively, and Intransitive verbs transitively: *suppeditāre, to supply* (Transitive), *to be on hand* (Intransitive); *quœrō, I complain* (Intransitive), *I complain of* (Transitive). When transitive verbs are used intransitively they serve simply to characterize the agent. When intransitive verbs are used transitively it is chiefly with an accusative of the Inner object. (331, R. 2.)

205. The Passive Voice denotes that the subject receives the action of the Verb.

The instrument is put in the Ablative.

*Virgis caeditur, He is beaten with rods.*

The agent is put in the Ablative with *ab* (à).

*Ā patre caeditur, He is beaten by (his) father.*

Remarks.—1. Intransitive verbs of Passive signification are construed as Passives: *fame perpetre, to perish of hunger.*

*Ab reō fustibus vāpulāvit, Quint. He was whacked with cudgels by the defendant.*

2. When the instrument is considered as an agent, or the agent as an instrument, the constructions are reversed:

*Vinci ē Voluptāte, to be overcome by Pleasure.* Cic.

*Poeno milite portās frangimus, Juv. We break down the gates with the Punic soldiers* (as if with a battering-ram).

Animals, as independent agents, are treated like Persons.

*Ā cane non magnō saepe tenūtur aper, Ov. A boar is often held fast by a little dog.*
Animals, as instruments, are treated like Things.
Equō velī, to ride a horse (to be borne by a horse); in equō, on horseback.

206. The person in whose interest an action is done is put in the Dative. Hence, the frequent inference that the person interested is the agent.
With the Perfect Passive it is the natural inference, and common in prose.

Rōs mihi tōta prōvisa est. Cic. I have had the whole thing provided for.
Carmina scripta mihi sunt nulla. Ov. Poems—I have none written (I have written no poems).

With the Gerundive it is the necessary inference, and the Dative is the reigning combination.

Nihil est homini tam timendum quam invidia. Cic. There is nothing that one has to fear to the same extent as envy. See 852.

207. The Direct Object of the Active Verb (the Accusative Case) becomes the Subject of the Passive.
Alexander Dārium vicit, Alexander conquered Darius.
Dārius ab Alexandrō victus est, Darius was conquered by Alexander.

208. The Indirect Object of the Active Verb (Dative Case) cannot be properly used as the Subject of the Passive. The Dative remains unchanged, and the verb becomes a Passive in the Third Person Singular (Impersonal Verb). This Passive form may have a neuter subject corresponding to the Inner object. (331, R. 2.)

Active: Miserī invidēnt bonīs, The wretched envy the well-to-do.
Passive: mihi invidētur, I am envied,
tībi invidētur, thou art envied,
eī invidētur, he is envied,
nōbīs invidētur, we are envied,
vōbīs invidētur, you are envied,
īs invidētur, they are envied,
ab aliquo, by some one.

Nihil facile persuādētur invītīs. QUINT. People are not easily persuaded of anything against their will.
Ānūlis nostrīs plūs quam animīs crēdītur. SEN. Our seals are more trusted than our souls.
REMARK.—The same rule applies to Genitive and Ablative. The poets are more free in imitation of the Greek. Cūr invideo r? Hos. for Cūr invidētur mihi? Why am I envied?

209. Reflexive relations, when emphatic, are expressed as in English:

Omne animal sē ipsum diliget. Cic. Every living creature loves itself.

But when the reflexive relation is more general, the Passive is employed:

Lavor, I bathe, I bathe myself.

Purgāri nequīvērunt. Liv. They could not clear themselves.

Cūrābar propriis aeger Podalirius herbīs. Ov. A sick Podalirius, I was trying to cure myself by my own herbs.

210. As the Active in all languages is often used to express what the subject suffers or causes to be done, so the Passive in Latin in its reflexive sense is often used to express an action which the subject suffers or causes to be done to itself: trahor, I let myself be dragged; tondeor, I have myself shaved.

Ipse docet quid agam; fās est et ab hoste docēri. Ov. He himself teaches (me) what to do; it is (but) right to let oneself be taught even by an enemy (to take a lesson from a foe).

211. The Deponent is a Passive form which has lost, in most instances, its Passive (or Reflexive) signification. It is commonly translated as a Transitive or Intransitive Active: hortor, I am exhorting (Trans.); morior, I am dying (Intrans.).

212. Reciprocal relations ("one another") are expressed by inter, among, and the Personal Pronouns, nōs, us; vōs, you; sē, themselves: Inter sē amant, They love one another.

TENSES.

213. The Tenses express the relations of time, embracing:
1. The stage of the action (duration in time).
2. The period of the action (position in time).
The first tells whether the action is going on, or finished. The second tells whether the action is past, present, or future.
Both these sets of relations are expressed by the tenses of the Indicative or Declarative mood—less clearly by the Subjunctive.
214. There are six tenses in Latin:
1. The Present, denoting continuance in the present.
2. The Future, denoting continuance in the future.
3. The Imperfect, denoting continuance in the past.
4. The Perfect, denoting completion in the present.
5. The Future Perfect, denoting completion in the future.
6. The Pluperfect, denoting completion in the past.

215. An action may further be regarded simply as attained, without reference to its continuance or completion. Continuance and completion require a point of reference for definition; attainment does not. This gives rise to the aoristic or indefinite stage of the action, which has no especial tense-form. It is expressed by the Present tense for the present; by the Future and Future Perfect tenses for the future; and by the Perfect tense for the past.

Of especial importance is the Indefinite or Historical Perfect (Aorist), which differs materially in syntax from the Definite or Pure Perfect.

216. The Tenses are divided into Principal and Historical. The Principal Tenses have to do with the Present and Future. The Historical Tenses have to do with the Past.

The Present, Pure Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect are Principal Tenses.

The Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Perfect are Historical Tenses.

Remark.—The Historical Tenses are well embodied in the following distich:

Talia tentābat, sic et tentāverat ante,
Vixque dēdī victās utilitāte manus. Ov.

217. Table of Temporal Relations.

Indicative Mood.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Continuance.</th>
<th>Completion.</th>
<th>[Attainment.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present: scribo,</td>
<td>scripta,</td>
<td>scribo,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am writing.</td>
<td>I have written.</td>
<td>I write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future: scribam,</td>
<td>scriptero,</td>
<td>scribam (scripsero),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall be writing.</td>
<td>I shall have written.</td>
<td>I shall write.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past: scribēbam,</td>
<td>scripteram,</td>
<td>scripta,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was writing.</td>
<td>I had written.</td>
<td>I wrote.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PASSIVE.

Continuance.  Completion.  Attainment.

Present: scribitur (epistola), scripta est, scribitur,  The letter is written,  has been written,  is written,
            (writing),  is written,

Future:  scribētur,  scripta erit,  scribētur,  The letter will be written,  will have been,  will be written.
            (writing),  will be written,

Past:  scribēsātur,  scripta erat,  scripta est,  The letter was written,  had been written,  was written.
            (writing),  was written,

Remark.—The English Passive is ambiguous. The same form is currently used for continuance, attainment, and completion. The context alone can decide. A convenient test is the substitution of the Active.

A letter was written: Continuance, Some one was writing a letter.
       Completion, Some one had written a letter.
       Attainment, Some one wrote a letter.

The detailed consideration of the Tenses may be omitted by the beginner.

Present Tense.

218. The Present Tense is used as in English of that which is going on now (Specific Present), and of statements that apply to all time (Universal Present).

Specific Present:

Auribus teneō lupum. Ter. I am holding the wolf by the ears.

Universal Present:

Probitās laudātur et alget. Juv. Honesty is bepraised and freezis.

Remarks.—1. The Specific Present is often to be translated by the English Progressive Present. The Universal Present is Aoristic, true at any point.

2. As continuance involves the notion of incompleteness the Present is used of attempted and intended action (Present of Endeavor). But on account of the double use of the Present this signification is less prominent and less important than in the Imperfect. Do not mistake the Endeavor which lies in the Verb for the Endeavor which lies in the Tense. So in the traditional example:

Quintus frater Tusculānum venditāt. Cic. Brother Quintus is "trying to sell" his Tuscan villa: venditāre itself means to offer for sale. Translate: intends to offer for sale, if the notion lies in the Tense.

3. The ambiguity of our English Passive often suggests other translations. Use and Wont make Law; hence, the frequent inference that what is done is what ought to be done; what is not done is not to be done.

 Deus) nec bene prōmeritis capitur, nec tangitur irā. Lucr. God is not to be indiged by good service, nor touched by anger.
219. The Present Tense is used more rarely than in English in anticipation of the future, chiefly in compound sentences:

Sic vincimus, omnia tūta erunt. SALL. If we conquer (= shall conquer), everything will be safe.

Antequam ad sententiam redeo dē mē paucā dicam. Cic. Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.

Exspectābo dum ille venit. Ter. I will wait all the time that he is coming, or, until he comes.

220. The Present Tense is used far more frequently than in English, as a lively representation of the past (Historical Present):

Rōmam proficiscitur. SALL. He sets out for Rome.

Mātūrat proficiscit. Caes. He hastens to depart.

Remark.—Dūm, while, commonly takes the Historical Present: Dūm haece in colloquīō geruntur. Caesāri nāntiātum est. Caes. While these things were transacting in the conference, word was brought to Caesar. Dūm, so long as, follows the ordinary law. (See 566.)

221. The Present is used in Latin of actions that are continued into the present, especially with jām, now; jām diē, now for a long time; jām prīdem, now long since. In English we often translate by a Progressive Perfect.

Mithridātēs annum jām tertium et vicēsimum regnat. Cic. Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.

Līberāre vōs ā Philippō jām diē magis vultis quam audētis. Liv. You have this long time had the wish rather than (= though not) the courage to deliver yourself from Philip.

**Imperfect Tense.**

222. The Imperfect Tense denotes *Continuance in the Past*: pugnābam, I was fighting.

The Imperfect is employed to represent manners, customs, situations; to describe and to particularize.

The Imperfect and the Historical Perfect serve to illustrate one another. The Imperfect dwells on the process; the Historical Perfect states the result. The Imperfect counts out the items; the Historical Perfect gives the sum.

223. The two tenses are often so combined that the general
statement is given by the Historical Perfect, the particulars of the action by the Imperfect:

Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant ocūl; tōtō exō crūdēlitās ēminēbat. Cic. Verres came into the forum, his eyes were blazing, cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.

224. The Imperfect is used of attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (Imperfect of Endeavor). It is the Tense of Disappointment and (with the negative) of Resistance to Pressure. (Mere negation is regularly Perfect.)

Cūrābān relinquēbat. Tac. He was for leaving the senate-house.
Postumius dēdēbatur. Cic. Postumius was to be given up.
Lēx abrogābātur. Liv. The law was to be abrogated.
Ōrem et Eretriam Eumenē dabant senātus libertātem his civitātibus dedit. Liv. They were for giving Oreus and Eretria to Eumenes; the senate gave these cities liberty.

Cūrābāt propriis aeger Podalrius herbīs. Ov. (206.)
Adītum nōn dābat. Nēp. He would not grant access (dēdit, did not).

Remarks.—1. The Imperfect as the Tense of Evolution is a Tense of Vision. But in English, Imperfect and Historical Perfect coincide; hence the various translations to put the reader in the place of the spectator.

2. The continuance is in the mind of the narrator; it has nothing to do with the absolute duration of the action. The mind may dwell on a rapid action or hurry over a slow one. With definite numbers, however large, the Historical Perfect must be used, unless there is a notion of continuance into another stage (overlapping).

Gorgiās centum et novem annōs vīxit. Quint. Gorgias lived 109 years.

3. As the Tense of Disappointment, the Imperfect of such verbs as dēbēre, to owe, possē, to be able, is sometimes used in a modal sense. (246, R. 2.)

225. The Imperfect is used as the English Progressive Pluperfect; especially with jam, jam diū, jam dūdum.

Jam dūdum tibi adversābar. Plaut. I had long been opposing you.

Remark.—As the Historical Present is used in lively narrative, so the Historical Infinitive is used in lively description, parallel with the Imperfect. (649.)

Perfect Tense.

226. The Perfect Tense has two distinct uses:


1. Pure Perfect.

227. The Pure Perfect Tense expresses completion in the Present, and hence is sometimes called the Present Perfect.
The Pure Perfect looks at both ends of an action, and the time between is regarded as a Present. The Historical Present looks at but one end; or, rather, beginning and end are one.

228. The Pure Perfect is used:
1. Of an action that is over and gone.

Filium únicum habeo, Imō habui. Ter. I have an only son—nay, I have had an only son.

2. Far more frequently of the present result of a more remote action: Resulting condition.

Equum et mūlum Brundisii tibi reliqui. Cic. I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium—they are still there.
Perdidi spem quá mé oblectábam. Plaut. I’ve lost the hope with which I entertained myself.

Actum est, períst. Ter. It is all over; you’re undone.

Remark.—The Pure Perfect is often translated by the English Present: nōvi, I have become acquainted with, I know; memini, I have recalled, I remember; sóli, I have conceived a hatred of, I hate; consuēvi, I have made it a rule, I am accustomed. This is due to the inchoative character of the Present form.

Ödärunt hilarem tristēs tristemque jocōsī. Hor. The long-faced hate the lively man, the jokers hate the long-faced man.

229. As the Present stands for the Future, so the Perfect stands for the Future Perfect.

Brūtus si conservātus erit, victimus. Cic. Brutus!—if he is saved, we are victorious, we (shall) have gained the victory.
Ötia at tollās, perierē Cupidinis arcūs. Ov. (195, R. 6.)

230. Habeo or teneo, I hold, I have, with the Accusative of the Perfect Participle Passive, is not a mere circumlocution for the Perfect, but lays peculiar stress on the maintenance of the result.

Habeo statūtum, I have resolved, and hold to my resolution.
Habeo perspectum, I have perceived, and I have full insight.
Excūsātum habeás mē rogo, cēno domī. Mart. I pray you have me excused, I dine at home.

Remark.—On the Iterative Perfect, see 569,
2. HISTORICAL PERFECT.

231. The Historical or Indefinite Perfect (Aorist) states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained.

*Vidit, vidit, vicit.* Suet. I came, saw, overcame.

*Milo domum venit, calceós et vestimenta mutavit, paulisper commorátus est.* Cic. Milo came home, changed shoes and garments, tarried a little while.

*Gorgias centum et novem vixit annos.* Quint. Gorgias lived 109 years.

232. The Historical Perfect is the great narrative tense of the Latin language, and is best studied in long connected passages, and by careful comparison with the Imperfect.

**PLUPERFECT TENSE.**

233. The Pluperfect denotes *Completion in the Past*, and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun. It is, so to speak, the Perfect of the Imperfect. Hence it is used:

1. Of an action that is *over and gone*.

*Futūram, I had thought* (before such and such a thing happened).

2. Of a Resulting Condition.

*Massilienses portās Cassarī clauseant.* Caesar. The Marseillaise had shut their gates against Caesar. (Their gates were shut.)

**REMARKS.—**1. When the Perfect of resulting Condition is translated by an English Present (228 R.), the Pluperfect is translated by an English Imperfect: *nōveram, I had become acquainted with; know; memineram, I remembered; ōderam, I hated; consumveram, I was accustomed.*

2. The Periphrastic Pluperfect with *habeo* corresponds to the Perfect. (230.)

3. On the Iterative Pluperfect, see 569.

**FUTURE TENSE.**

234. The Future Tense denotes *Continuance in the Future*.

*scribam, I shall be writing.*

The Future Tense is also used to express indefinite action in the Future: *scribam, I shall write.*

**REMARKS.—**1. In subordinate clauses the Latin language is more exact than the English in the expression of future relations.

*Dō nec eris fēlix, multōs numerābis amīcōs, Ov.* So long as you shall be (are) happy, you will count many friends.
FUTURUM PERFECT.

Quidquid eris, mea semper eris. Ov. Whatever you shall be (are), you will always be mine own.
2. Observe especially the verbs volo, I will, and possum, I can.
Odero si poteris; si non, invitus amabo. Ov. I will hate if I shall be able (can); if not, I shall love against my will.
Si qua voleat regnare diu, deditat amantem. Ov. She who shall wish to queen it long must foot her lover.

235. The Future is used in an imperative sense, as in English, chiefly in familiar language.
Tu nihil dicés. Hor. You shall, are to, say nothing (do you say nothing).
Quum voleat accédés, quum tē vitabit abibis. Ov. When she wants you, approach; and when she avoids you, begone, sir.

FUTU RUM PERFECT TENSE.

236. The Future Perfect is the Perfect, both Pure and Historical, transferred to the future, and embraces both completion and attainment: fecero, I shall have done it, or I shall do it (once for all); videro, I will see to it; profecerit, it will prove profitable.

REMARKS—1. Hence, when the Perfect is used as a Present, the Future Perfect is used as a Future:
Nōvero, I shall know; consūvero, I shall be accustomed; òdero, si poteris. Ov. (234, R. 2.)
2. In subordinate sentences, the Latin language is more exact than the English in the use of the Future Perfect.
When one action precedes another in the future, the action that precedes is expressed by the Future Perfect.
Quif prior strinserit ferrum, ejus victōria erit. Liv. Who first draws the sword, his shall be the victory.
3. The Future Perfect is frequently used in volo, I will; nōlo, I will not; possum, I can; licet, it is left free; libet, it is agreeable; placet, it is the pleasure; whereas the English idiom familiarly employs the Present.
Si potuero, faciam vōbis satīs. Cic. If I can, I shall satisfy you.
4. The Future Perfect in both clauses denotes simultaneous accomplishment or attainment; one action involves the other.
Quī MarciuM AntōniuM opresserit, is bellum confeecerit. Cic. He who shall have crushed (crushed) Mark Antony, will have finished (will finish) the war.
Ex vitia quia fügerit, est omnīa fērō vitā vitāverit. Cic. He who shall have escaped these faults, will have avoided almost all faults.
Sometimes, however, the first seems to denote antecedence, the second finality. An Imperative is often used in the first clause.
Immutā verbōrum collocētūnum, perierit tōta rēs. Cic. Change the arrangement of the words, the whole thing falls dead.

237. As the Future is used as an Imperative, so the Future Perfect approaches the Imperative.
Dē hoc tū ipse videris. Cic. You may see to that yourself hereafter.
Periphrastic Tenses.

238. The Periphrastic Tenses are formed by combining the various tenses of esse, to be, with participles and verbal adjectives.

I. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

239. The Periphrastic Tenses of the Active are chiefly combinations of esse and its forms with the so-called Future Participle Active. The Future Participle is a verbal adjective denoting capability and tendency. Compare amātor and amātūrus. The translation is very various:

1. Scriptūrus sum, I am about to write, I am to write, I purpose to write, I am likely to write.
2. Scriptūrus eram, I was about to write, etc.
3. Scriptūrus fui, I have been or was about to write (often = I should have written).
4. Scriptūrus fueram, I had been about to write, etc.
5. Scriptūrus ero, I shall be about to write, etc.
6. Scriptūrus fuero, I shall have made up my mind to write, etc. (of course very rare).

1. Bellum scriptūrus sum quod populus Rōmānus cum Jugurthā gessit. SALL. I purpose to write the history of the war which the Roman people carried on with Jugurtha.

2. Rōx nōn interfutūrus nāvāli certāmini erat. LIV. The king did not intend to be present at the naval combat.

3. Cato quā nocte peritūrus fuit lēgit. SEN. Cato read on the night when he was about to die (kill himself).

Dēditōs ultimis cruciātibus affectūri fuṣrant. LIV. They would have put the surrendered to extreme tortures.

4. Mājor Rōmānōrum grālia fuit quam quanta Carthāginiansium futūra fuerat. LIV. The Romans' credit for this was greater than the Carthaginians' would have been.

5. Plūs mihi dētractūrus ero, quam illi collātūrus. SEN. I shall in all likelihood take away more from myself than I shall bestow on him.

6. Sapiens nōn vivet, si fuerit sine homine victūrus. SEN. The wise man will not continue to live, if he finds that he is to live without human society.

Remark.—The Subjunctives and Infinitives, scriptūrus sim, essem, fuerim, scriptūrum esse, and scriptūrum fuisse, are of great importance in dependent discourse.
II. PERIPHERASTIC TENSES OF THE PASSIVE.

A.—Of Future Relations.

240. The following periphrases are used both in Active and Passive, but more frequently in the Passive.

1. **Futūrum est**, *it is to be,*
   *erat*  
   *fuit,*  
   { *ut,* *that,* with the subjunctive.  
   *was to be,*

This circumlocution is used:

1. Rarely in the Indicative.
2. Often in the Infinitive, and necessarily so, when the verb forms no Supine or Future Participle:

   **Futūrum esse (fore),**
   *ut metuās,* *that you will fear.*

   In the Passive it is more common than the Supine with *fīt.*

   **Spēro fore ut contingat id nōbis.** *Cic. I hope that we shall have that good fortune.*

   **In fātis scriptum Vējentēs habēbant fore ut brevi ā Gallis Rōma caperētur.** *Cic. The Vicentes had it written down in their prophetic books that Rome would shortly be taken by the Gauls."

**Remarks.**—1. **Fore ut . . .** is used chiefly with Present and Imperfect Subjunctive; Perf. and Pluperf. are very rare. *Cic. ad Att. xvi. 16 E. 16.*

2. The form **futūrum fuissē ut . . .** is used with Passive and Supineless verbs, to express the dependent apodosis of an unreal conditional sentence.

   **Nisi ēō ipseō tempore nūntī dē Caesāris victōriā essent allēti, existimēbant plēriqē futūrum fuissē ut oppidum ēmitterētur.** *Cās. (662).*

3. **Posse, to be able, and velle, to will,** on account of their future sense, do not require a periphrasis. In the absence of periphrastic forms, the forms of **posse** are often used instead. (889.)

4. The Subjunctive forms **futūrum sit, esset, fuerit, ut . . .** are used in the grammars to supply the periphrastic subjunctive of Passive and Supineless verbs. (See 513, R. 2.)

   **Warrant in real usage is scarce.**

   **An utique futūrum sit ut Carthaginem superent Rōmānī?** *Quint. I. O. III. 8. 7. (not merely periphrastic).*

241. 2. **In ēō est,** *it is on the point,*
   *erat,*  
   *fuit,*  
   { *ut,* *that (of), with the*  
   *was (Impersonal),*  
   *subjunctive.*

   **In ēō erat ut Pausanīās comprehenderētur.** *Nēp. It was on the point that Pausanias should be (P. was on the point of) being arrested.*

**Remark.**—This phrase occurs in Nēpos and Livy, seldom in earlier writers.
TENSES IN LETTERS.

B.—Of Past Relations.

242. The Perfect Participle Passive is used in combination with sum, I am, and fut, I have been, I was, to express the Pure Perfect and Historical Perfect of the Passive Voice. Emeram, I was, and fueram, I had been, stand for the Pluperfect; and ero, I shall be, and fuero, I shall have been, for the Future Perfect.

Remark.—Fut is the favorite form when the participle is frequently used as an adjective: convivium exornatum fuit, the banquet was furnished forth; fut is the necessary form when the Perfect denotes that the action is over and gone: amat us fut, I have been loved (but I am loved no longer). The same principle applies to fueram and fuero, though not so regularly.

Simulacrum e marmore in sepulcro positum fuit; hoc quidam homo nobilis deportavit. Cic. A marble effigy was deposited in the tomb; a certain man of rank has carried it off.

Arma quae fæxa in parietibus fuerant, humi inventa sunt. Cæo. The arms which had been fastened to the walls were found on the ground.

Neque mater fuerit dicta nec orba dixit. Ov. I shall not have been called another mother now childless long.

C.—Periphrastic Conjugation—Passive Voice.

243. The combination of the Tenses of esse, to be, with the Gerundive (verbal in -ndus), is called the Periphrastic Conjugation of the Passive, and follows the laws of the simple conjugation. (See 150.)

Remarks.—1. The Gerundive has the form of a Present Participle Passive, (-ndus for -ntus). Whenever a participle is used as a predicate it becomes characteristic, and good for all time. Compare 439, R.

As amans not only = qui amat, but also = qui amatur, so amandus = qui amatur.

2. The Gerundive follows the law (205), and can be formed only from verbs that take the accusative. Otherwise the Impersonal form must be used.

Parcendum est victis. The vanquished must be spared.

TENSES IN LETTERS.

244. The Roman letter-writer not unfrequently puts himself in the position of the receiver, more especially at the beginning and at the end of the letter, often in the phrase Nihil erat quod scriberem, “I have nothing to write.” This permutation of tenses is never kept up long, and applies only to temporary situations, never to general statements.

Table of Permutations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>becomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scribo,</td>
<td>I am writing,</td>
<td>scribēbam,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I write,</td>
<td></td>
<td>scripseram,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scriptūrus eram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scripsīl</td>
<td>I have written,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wrote,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or remains unchanged.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scribām,</td>
<td>I shall write,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MOODS.

The adverbial designations of time remain unchanged—or
Heri, yesterday, becomes pridiē.
Hodiē, to-day, " quō dīs hās litterās dēdī, dabam.
Orās, to-morrow, " postera dīs, posteridiē.
Formiās mē continuō recipere cōgitābam. Cīc. I am thinking of re-
tiring forthwith to Formiās.

Quum mihi Cæcilius dixisset puerum sē Rōmam mittere, haec scripsī
rāptim. Cīc. As Cæcilius has told me that he is sending a servant to Rome,
I write in a hurry.

Litterās eram datūrus postrīdiē et qui mihi primus obviam vēnisset.
Cīc. I will give the letter to-morrow to the first man that comes my way.

MOODS.

245. Mood signifies manner. The mood of a verb signifies
the manner in which the predicate is said of the subject.

There are three moods in Latin:
1. The Indicative.
2. The Subjunctive.
3. The Imperative.

REMARK.—The Infinitive form of the verb is generally, but improperly, called a mood.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

246. The Indicative Mood represents the predicate as a
reality. It is sometimes called the Declarative Mood, as the
mood of direct assertion.

The use of the Latin Indicative differs little from the English.

* * * The beginner may omit the Remarks.

REMARKS.—1. The Latin language expresses possibility and power, obligation and neces-
sity, and abstract relations generally, as facts; whereas, our translation often implies the
failure to realize. Such expressions are: dēbeco, I ought, it is my duty; oportet, it be-
hooves; nescie est, it is absolutely necessary; possum, I can, I have it in my power;
convenit, it is fitting; pār, aequum est, it is fair; infinitum, endless; difficile, hard
to do; longum, tedious; and the Indicative form of the Passive Periphrastic Conju-
gation:

Possum persequi multa oblectāmenta rārum rūsticārum. Cīc. I might rehearse
many delights of country life.

Longum est utilitātēs persequi asinōrum. Cīc. It would be tedious to rehearse
the useful qualities of asses (I will not do it).

Ad mortem tē duxit oportēbat. Cīc. It behooved you to be led to execution (you were
not), you ought to have been led off.

Volumnia dēbuit in tē officiāsior esse, et id ipsum, quod fēcit, potuit
facere diligentius. Cīc. It was Volumnia’s duty to be (V. ought to have been) more at-
tentive to you; and the little she did do (she had it in her power to do), she might have done
more carefully.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Quae condicio non necipienda fuit potius quam patria relinquentia? Cic. What terms ought not to have been accepted in preference to leaving thy country?

Nil mihi düberat cum versibus amplius esse. Ov. Naught more should I have had (were then) to do with verses.

The Perfect and Pluperfect always refer to a special case.

2. The Imperfect as the Tense of Disappointment is sometimes used in these verbs to denote opposition to a present state of things: dēbēbam, I ought (but do not); poterās, you could (but do not). These may be considered as conditionals in disguise. (See R. 8.)

Poteram morbōs appellāre, sed non convenire ad omniam. Cic. I might translate (that Greek word) "diseases," but that would not suit all the cases. (Poteram si convenire.)

At poterās, inquis, melius mala ferre silendo. Ov. "But," you say, "you could (you do not) bear your misfortunes better by keeping silent." (Poterās si silērēs.)

3. The Indicative is sometimes used in the leading clause of conditional sentences (the Apodosis), thereby implying the certainty of the result, had it not been for the interruption.

The Indicative clause generally precedes, which is sufficient to show the rhetorical character of the construction.

With the Imperfect the action is often really begun:

Lūbēbar longius. nisi mē retinuiissēm. Cic. I was letting myself go on (should have let myself go on) too far, had I not checked myself.

Omnīō erat supervacua doctrina, si natūra sufficeret. Quint. Training were wholly superfluous, did nature suffice.

Praeclārē vicērāmus, nisi Lepidus recēsisset Antōnium. Cic. We had (should have) gained a brilliant victory, had not Lepidus received Antony.

In all these sentences the English idiom requires the Subjunctive, which is disguised by coinciding with the Indicative in form except in "were."

4. In general relative expressions, such as the double formations, quisquis, no matter who, quotquot, no matter how many, and all forms in -cunque, -ever, the Indicative is employed where we may use in English a Subjunctive or its equivalent: quisquis est, no matter who he is, be, may be; quacunque est, whatever sort of thing it is, be, may be.

Quidquid id est, timent Danaos et dona ferentēs. Virg. Whatever it (may) be, I fear the Danai even when they bring presents.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

247. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate as an idea, as something merely conceived in the mind (abstracts from reality).

REMARK.—The Latin Subjunctive is often translated into English by the auxiliary verbs may, can, must, might, could, would, should. When these verbs have their full signification of possibility and power, obligation and necessity, they are represented in Latin by the corresponding verbs: may, can, might, could, by the forms of posse, to be able, licet, it is left free; will and would, by velle, to will, to be willing; must, by dēbeo or oportet (of moral obligation), by necesse est (of absolute obligation).

Nos trās injūriās nec potest nec possit alius uliscōt quam vōs. Liv. Our wrongs no other than you has the power or can will have the power to avenge. Here potest gives the simple affirmation, possit, the moral conviction of the speaker.

248. The realization of the idea may be in suspense, or it may be beyond control. The first, or purely Ideal Subjunctive,
is represented by the Present and Perfect Tenses; the second, or Unreal, is represented by the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

Remarks.—1. The Subjunctive, as the name implies (subjungo, I subjoin), is largely used in dependent sentences, and will be treated at length in that connection.
2. The following modifications of the above principles must be carefully observed:
   A. The Romans, in lively discourse, often represent the unreal as ideal, that which is beyond control as still in suspense. (506, R. 2.)
   B. In transfers to the past, the Imperfect represents the Present, and the Pluperfect the Perfect Subjunctive. (510.)

249. The idea may be a view, or a wish. Hence the division of the Subjunctive into the Potential and the Optative. The Potential Subjunctive is nearer the Indicative, from which it differs in tone; the Optative Subjunctive is nearer the Imperative, for which it is often used.

 POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

250. The Potential Subjunctive represents the opinion of the speaker as an opinion. The tone varies from vague surmise to moral certainty, from "may" and "might" to "must." The negative is the negative of the Indicative nōn.

The Potential of the Present or Future is the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The verification is in suspense, and so future; the action may be present or future: with Perfect sometimes Past.

Velim, I should wish; nōlim, I should be unwilling; mālim, I should prefer; dicās, you would say; crēdās, you would believe, you must believe; dicat, dixerit aliquis, some one may undertake to say, so far as to say.

Caedī discipulōs minimē velim. QUINT. I should by no means like pupils to be flogged.

Tū Platōnem nec nimis valde unquam nec nimis saepe laudāverís. Cic. You can't praise Plato too much nor too often.

251. The Mood of the Question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer (464). Hence the Potential Subjunctive is used in questions which serve to convey a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.

Quis dūbitet (= nēmo dubitet) quīn in virtūte divitiae sint? Cic. Who can doubt that there is wealth in virtue? (No one).

Quis tulerit Graccōs dē sēditōne querentēs? Juv. Who could bear the Gracchi complaining of rebellion? (No one).

Apud exercitum fueris? Cic. You were with the army?
252. The Potential of the Past is the Imperfect Subjunctive, chiefly in the Ideal Second Person, an imaginary "you."

Statement:

Crēderēs victōs. You would, might, have thought them beaten.
Haud facile dēcernēs utrum Hannibal imperātōri an exercitiul cārior esset. Liv. Not readily could you have decided whether Hannibal was dearer to general or to army.
Mīrārētur qui tum cerneret. Liv. Any one who saw it then must have been astonished.

Vellēm, I should have wished; nōllem, I should have been unwilling; māllem, I should have preferred (it is too late).

Question:

Hoc tantum bellum quis unquam arbitrārētur ab ūnō imperātōre conficī posse? Cic. Who would, could, should have thought that this great war could be brought to a close by one general?

Remarks.—1. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes explained by the ellipsis of an Ideal or of an Unreal Conditional Protasis. But the free Potential Subjunctive differs from an elliptical conditional sentence in the absence of definite ellipsis, and hence of definite translation. Compare the first two sentences above with:

Eum qui palam est adversārius facile cavendī (si cavēs) vitāre possīs. Cic. An open adversary you can readily avoid by caution (if you are cautious).

Nil ego contestām jīcundī sānus (= dum sānus ero) amīēs. Hom. There is naught I should compare to an agreeable friend, while I am in my sound senses.

2. The Unreal of the Present and the Ideal of the Past coincide. What is unreal of a real person is simply ideal of an imaginary person. The Imperfect is used as the tense of Description.

The Aoristic Perfect Subj. is rarely used as the Ideal of the Past.

3. The Potential Subjunctive, as a modified form of the Indicative, is often found where the Indicative would be the regular construction. So after quanquam (208, R. 1).

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

253. The Subjunctive is used as an Optative or wishing mood.

The regular negative is nē. Nōn is used chiefly to negative a single word.

The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are used when the decision is in suspense, no matter how extravagant the wish; the Imperfect and Pluperfect are used when the decision is adverse. The Perfect is rare and old.

Sēt hase urbs. Cic. May this city continue to stand!
Dī faxint = fēcerint. Thē gods grant!
Nē istāc Jūpitter optimum maximus sīrit (= stverit)! Liv. May Jupi-
ter, supremely great and good, suffer it not!

254. The Optative Subjunctive frequently takes Utinam, utin-
am nē, utinam nōn—in poetry also ō si, Oh if.
OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Utinam modo cōnāta efficer e pos s i m. Cic. May I but have it in my power to accomplish my endeavors.

Utinam reviviscat frāter! Gell. Would that my brother would come to life again!

Utinam inserere jocōs mōris esset. Quint. Would that it were usual to introduce jokes!

Illud utinam nē vērē scriberem. Cic. Would that what I am writing were not true!

Utinam susceptus nōn esset. Cic. Would I had not been born!

Ō mihi praeteritūs referat si Jūppiter annōs. Verg. O if Jove were to bring me back the years that are gone by!

Remarks.—1. Utinam was originally an interrogative, How, pray? and belongs partly to the potential. Ō si is an elliptical conditional sentence, which is not intended to have an Apodosis. When the Apodosis comes, it may come in a different form. So in the example. Verg. Aen. viii. 560, 568.

2. For the wish with adverse decision vellem, mālem, and nōllem are often used with Imperf. and Pplf. Subj.

Vellem adesse posset Panaetius. Cic. Would that Panaetius could be present!

Nōllem dixissem. Cic. Would that I had not said it!

So velim, nōlim, etc., for the simple wish (546, R. 3).

255. The Optative Subjunctive is used in asseverations:

Ita vīvam ut maximās sumptūs facio. Cic. As I live, I am spending very largely (literally, so may I live as I am making very great outlay).

256. The Subjunctive is used as an Imperative—
1. In the First Person, which has no Imperative form:

Amāmus patriam. Cic. Let us love our country.
Nē difficīlia optēmus. Cic. Let us not desire what is hard to do.

2. In the Second Person—In the Present chiefly of an imaginary "you."

Ūtāre, you may use it; nē requīrās, you must not pine for it.

In the Perfect negatively:

Nē transieris Hībērum. Liv. Do not cross the Ebro.

3. In the Third Person (regularly):

Amet, let him love; nē amet, let him not love. (See 265.)

257. The Subjunctive is used as a concessive:

Sīt fūr. Cic. (Granted that) he be a thief.
Fēcerit, sī ita vis. Cic. (Suppose) he have done it, if you will (have it so).
Other examples with ut and nē, see 606.
258. The Subjunctive is used in Questions which expect an Imperative answer (conjunctivus deliberativus).

Genuine questions are commonly put in the First Person, or the representative of the First Person:

Quid faciam? roger anne rogem? quid deinde rogabo? Ov. What shall I do? shall I ask or be asked? what then shall I ask him?

Magna fuit contentio utrum moenibus sē défenderent an obviam irent hostibus. Nep. There was a great dispute whether they should defend themselves behind the walls or go to meet the enemy. (Utrum nōs défendāmus an obviām sēmūs?)

Rhetorical questions (questions which anticipate the answer), under this head, are hardly to be distinguished from Potential.


Quid agerem? Cic. What was I to do?

Imperative Mood.

259. The Imperative is the mood of the will. It wills that the predicate be made a reality. The tone of the Imperative varies from stern command to piteous entreaty. It may appear as a demand, an order, an exhortation, a permission, a prayer.

Abi in malam rem. Plaut. Go (to the mischief), and be hanged.
Conpesce mentem. Hor. Curb your temper.
Dā mihi hoc, mel meum! Plaut. Give me this, honey dear!

260. The Imperative has two forms, known as the First and the Second Imperative. The First Imperative has only the Second person; the Second Imperative has both Second and Third persons. The First Person is represented by the Subjunctive.

Amōmus patriam. Cic. Let us love our country.

Remark.—Some verbs have only the second form. This may be due to the signification: so scītō, know thou; mēmentō, remember thou; and habētō, in the sense of know, remember.

261. The First Imperative looks forward to immediate fulfilment (Absolute Imperative):

Special: Patent portae; proficiscere. Cic. Open stand the gates; depart.
General: Justitiam cole et pietatem. CIC. Cultivate justice and piety.

262. The Second Imperative looks forward to contingent fulfilment (Relative Imperative), and is chiefly used in laws, legal documents, maxims, and the like:

Rēgiō imperiō duo suntō, there shall be two (officers) with royal power.
Consulēs appellantōr, they shall be called consuls.
Nēmini pārenito, they are to obey no one.
Illīs salūs populi suprēma lex estō. CIC. To them the welfare of the people must be the paramount law.
Rem vōbis prōponam: vōs eam penditōte. CIC. I will propound the matter to you: do you thereupon perpend it.
Percontātōrem fugītō, nam garrulus idem est. HOR. Avoid your questioner, for he is a tell-tale too.

263. Negative of the Imperative.—The regular negative of the Imperative is nē (nēve, neu), which is found with the Second Imperative; with the First Imperative, in poetry only.

Hominem mortuum in urbe nēve sepelito nēve ērito, thou shalt not bury nor burn a dead man in the city.
Impius nē audēto plācāre dōnis frām deōrum. CIC. The impious man must not dare attempt to appease by gifts the anger of the gods.
Tū nē cēde malis, sed contrā audēntiōr ētō. VERG. Yield not thou to misfortunes, but go more boldly (than ever) to meet them.

Remark.—Nōn may be used to negative a single word.
A lāgibus nōn recēdamus. Let us not recede from (let us stick to) the laws.
Opus poliat lima, nōn exterat. QUINT. Let the file rub the work up, not rub it out.

264. Periphrases.—I. Cūrā ut, take care that; fac ut, cause that; fac, do, with the Subjunctive, are common circumlocutions for the Positive Imperative.

Cūrā ut quam primum (317) veniā. CIC. Manage to come as soon as possible.
Fao cogitēs. CIC. Reflect!

II. Cavē nē, beware lest, and cavē, with the subjunctive, and nōli, be unwilling, with the Infinitive, for the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive).

Cavē festinēs. CIC. Do not be in a hurry.
Tantum quum fingēs nē sis manifesta cauētō. Ov. Only, when you pretend, beware that you be not detected.
Nōlī vexāre, quiēscit. Juv. Don't disturb her; she's sleeping.

265. REPRESENTATIVES OF THE IMPERATIVE.—Instead of the Positive Imperative, may be employed:
1. The Second Person of the Future Indicative;
2. The Third Person of the Present Subjunctive:

Facēs, ut sciam, let me know; vīvēs, live on.
Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae. Ov. Let a man give everything that he has to his lady-love.
Quaedam cum prīmā resecēntur crīmina barbā. Juv. Let certain faults be clipped off with the sprouting beard.

266. Instead of the Negative Imperative (Prohibitive), may be employed:

The Second Person of the Perfect Subjunctive, with nē.
The Second Person of the Future, with nōn.
The Third Person of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with nē.

Hoc facito, hoc nē fēcēris. Cic. This do, that leave undone.
Nōn cessābis. Cic. You must not be idle.
Puer tēlum nē habeat. Cic. A boy is not to have a deadly weapon.
Nē metus quemquam cēperit. Liv. Let not fear seize any one.
Misericordiā commōtus nē sis. Cic. Don't let yourself be moved by pity.

REMARKS.—1. Nōn is often used in poetry for nē, and neque, nec for nēve, nēn.
Aut nōn tentāris aut perfcē. Ov. Either do not try (at all), or effect (your object).
Nec, si quem fallēs, tū perjūrēre timētō. Ov. Nor if you (shall try to) deceive a man, do you fear to forewear yourself.
On the negative nōn with a single word, see 263 R. With the Perfect Subjunctive, neque, nihil, nēmo, nullus are freely used, as well as nēve, nē, nēquis, nēquid.
2. The Present Subjunctive is employed when stress is laid on the continuance of the action; the Perfect, when stress is laid on the completion. Hence in total prohibitions, the Perfect Subjunctive is the favorite form.
3. The Imperative of the Past is expressed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (unfulfilled duties).

Dōtem darētis; alium quaerēt virum. Ter. You should have given her a portion; she should have sought another match.
Crēs frēs potius, hodiē hic pūnērēs. Valēs. Plaut. You ought rather to have put off going till to-morrow, you ought to (have) dine(d) with us to-day. Good-bye. Anything decided is regarded as past.
Nē poposciēstis librōs. Cic. You ought not to have asked for the books.

267. The Second Person Singular of the Present Subjunc-
tive is used both positively and negatively; but in prose, only of an imaginary subject ("you"):

Corporis viribus ātāre, dum absint; cum absint nē requirās. Crī. Enjoy your vigor of body while you have it; when it is gone, you must not pine for it.

268. Passionate questions are equivalent to a command:

Nōn tacēs? won't you hold your tongue? quīn tacēs? why don't you hold you tongue?

Cūr nōn ut plēnus vitae convīva recēdis? LuCR. Why do you not withdraw as a guest sated with life?

269. SUMMARY OF IMPERATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Positive.

2d P. Ἀυτή, hear thou; auditō (legal or contingent); audiēs (familiar); audiās (ideal 2d Person).

3d P. Auditō (legal), let him hear; audiat.

Negative.

2d P. Nē audī, hear not (poetic); nē auditō (legal); nōn audiēs (familiar); nē audiās (ideal); nē audīverēs; nōli audīre.

3d P. Nē auditō (legal), let him not hear; nē audiat; nē audīverit.

TENSES OF THE MOODS AND VERBAL NOUNS.

270. The Indicative alone expresses with uniform directness the period of time.

271. 1. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive have to do with continued action, the Perfect and Pluperfect with completed action. The Perfect Subjunctive is also used to express the attainment.

2. In simple sentences Present and Perfect Subjunctive postpone the ascertainment of the Predicate to the Future. The action itself may be Present or Future for the Present Subjunctive; Present, Past, or Future for the Perfect Subjunctive.

Crēdat. He may believe (now or hereafter).

Crēdiderit. Let him have had the belief (heretofore), he may have come to the belief (now), he may come to the belief (hereafter.)

3. In simple sentences the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjuncti-
tive are Past Tenses. The notion of unreality lies in the past tense, rather than in the Subjunctive Mood. Compare 243, R. 2.

4. In dependent sentences the Subjunctive is future if the leading verb has a future signification; otherwise the Subjunctive represents the Indicative. The tense is regulated by the law of sequence. (See 510.)

272. The Imperative is necessarily Future.

273. The Infinitive has two uses:
1. Its use as a Noun.
2. Its use as a representative of the Indicative.

274. 1. As a Noun, the Infinitive has two tenses, Present and Perfect.

The Present Infinitive has to do with continued action. It is the common form of the Infinitive, used as a noun.

The Perfect Infinitive has to do with completed action, and is also used to express attainment.

The Present Infinitive is used as a subject.

Valére est vita, Being well is life.

The Present Infinitive is used as the object of verbs of creation (Auxiliary Verbs, Verbs that help the Infinitive into being). (424.)

Metuī quam amāri mālo, I prefer being feared to being loved.

275. The Perfect Infinitive is comparatively little used as a noun.

1. As a Subject, it is used chiefly in fixed expression or in marked opposition to the Present.

Plūs prōderit dēmonstrāsse rectam prōtinus viam quam re-vocāre ab errōre jam lapsōs. QUINT. It will be more profitable to have pointed out the right path immediately than to recall from wandering those that have already gone astray.

Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendīsse decūrum est. Ov. 'Twas not so much dishonor to be beaten as 'tis an honor to have struggled.

So by a kind of attraction with dēbuit, ought, decuit, became, and the like, especially in earlier and late Latin.

Tunc decuit flōsse. LIV. That was the time when it would have been becoming to weep (to have wept).
2. As an Object, the Perfect Infinitive is seldom found in the active: so after *velle*, *to wish*:

Nēminem notā strēnui aut ignāvi militis notāsse volū. Liv. *I wished to have marked (to mark finally) no soldier with the mark of bravery or of cowardice.*

Otherwise it is found only in the poets (after the fashion of the Greek Aorist Infinitive):

Frātrēs tendentēs opācō Pēlion imposisse Olympō. Hor. *The brothers striving to pile Pélion on shady Olympus.*

In the Passive, the Perfect Infinitive is used after verbs of Will and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfilment.

Here the Infinitive *esse* is seldom expressed.

Dēmocritum nōllem (esse) vituperātum. Cic. *I should rather not have had Democritus abused.*

276. 2. As the representative of the Indicative, the Infinitive has all its Tenses: Present, Past, Future, and Future Periphrastics.

277. The Present Infinitive represents *contemporaneous action*—hence the Present Indicative after a Principal Tense, and the Imperfect after a Historical Tense:

**Dico eum venire,** *I say that he is coming*; **dicēbam eum venire,** *I said that he was coming.*

The Perfect Infinitive represents *Prior Action*—hence the Perfect and Imperfect Indicative after a Principal Tense:

**Dico eum vēnisse,** *I say that he came, has come, used to come*; and the Pluperfect, Imperfect, and Historical Perfect Indicative after a Historical Tense:

**Dixi eum vēnisse,** *I said that he had come, used to come, did come.*

Remark.—*Memini,* *I remember,* when used of personal experience commonly takes the present.

Tum mē rēgem appellārī & vōbis memini, nunc tyrannum vocārī video. Liv. *I remember being styled by you a king then, I see that I am called a tyrant now.* So also *memorā* *teneo* and *recordor,* *I remember,* *I recall.* When the experience is not personal, the ordinary construction is followed:

**Memineram Marium ad infīmōrum hominum misericordiam configisse.** Cic. *I remembered that Marius had thrown himself on the mercy of a set of low creatures.*

The peculiar construction with the Present arises from the liveliness of the recollec-
tion. When the action is to be regarded as a bygone, the Perfect may be used even of personal experience:

Mē memini Irātum dominae turbāsse capillōs. Ov. I remember in my anger having tousled my sweetheart’s hair.

278. The Present Participle Active denotes continuance; the Perfect Passive, completion or attainment.

Remark.—The Perfect Participle is often used where we should employ a Present: ratus, thinking; complexus, embracing; hortātus, exhorting.

279. The Future Participle (Active) is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, I am, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Remark.—The so-called Future Participle Passive is more properly called the Gerundive, and has already been discussed. (248.)

SIMPLE SENTENCE EXPANDED.

280. The sentence may be expanded by the multiplication or by the qualification, A, of the subject, B, of the predicate.

A.

1. MULTIPLICATION OF THE SUBJECT.

Concord.

281. NUMBER: The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural number:

Jūs et injūria nāturā dījudicantur. Cic. Right and wrong are distinguished by nature.

Pater et avus mortuī sunt. Ter. Father and grandfather are dead.

Exceptions.—1. The common predicate may agree with a singular subject when that subject is the nearest or the most important: (“My flesh and my heart faileth,” Psa. lxxiii. 26.)

Aētās et forma et super omnia Rōmānum nōmen tō ferōciōrem facit. Liv. Your youth and beauty, and, above all, the name of Roman, makes you too mettlesome.

Nāvēs et praevidium excessit. Liv. The fleet and garrison departed.

2. Two abstracts in combination, when they are conceived as a unit, take a singular verb: (“When distress and anguish cometh upon you,” Prov. i. 27.)
Rēligio et fidēs antepōnātur amicitiae. Cio. Let the religious obliga-
tion of a promise be preferred to friendship.

So any close union: ("Your gold and silver is cankered," Jas. v. 3.)

Señātus populusque Rōmānus intellegit. Cio. The senate and
people of Rome perceives (= Rome perceives.)

REMARKS.—I. Neque — neque, neither — nor, allows the Plural chiefly when the Per-
sons are different:

Haec neque ego neque tū fāciimus. Ter. Neither you nor I did this.

2. A singular subject combined with another word by cum, with, is treated sometimes as a singular, sometimes as a plural:

Māgo cum omnibus ferē armātis refugērat. Liv. Mago with almost all the
armed men had retreated.

Taurus cum quinque vaccis undō iotū fulminis examimāti sunt. Liv. A
bull with five cows were killed by one stroke of lightning.

282. GENDER: When the genders of combined subjects are
different, the adjective predicate takes either the strongest gend-
er or the nearest.

In things with life, the masculine gender is the strongest; in
things without life, the neuter.

The strongest:

Pater et māter mortui sunt. Ter. Father and mother are dead.

Mūrus et porta dē caelō tæcta. Liv. Wall and gate had been struck
by lightning.

The nearest:

Convicta est Messalina et Silius. Tac. Messalina was convicted and
(so was) Silius.

Hippolochus Larissaeorumque dēditum est præsidium. Liv. Hippolochus and the Larissaean garrison (were) surrendered.

When things with life and things without life are combined, the gender varies.

Both as persons:

Rēx rōgīaque clāssis prōfecti sunt. Liv. The king and the king’s
fleck set out.

Both as things:

Nātūrā inimīca sunt libera civitās et rēx. Liv. A free State and a
king are natural enemies.

REMARK.—On the neuter as a predicate see 199, R. 4.

Pāx et concordia victis utīlia, victōribus tantum pulchra sunt. Tac. Peace
and harmony are useful (things) to the conquered, to the conquerors alone are they orna-
ments.
283. Persons: When the persons of combined subjects are different, the First Person is preferred to the Second, the Second to the Third:

Si tā et Tullia, lūx nōstra, valētis, ego et suāvissimus Cicero valēmus. Cio. If Tullia, light of my eyes, and you are well, dearest Cicero and I am well.

Remarks.—1. The order is commonly the order of the persons, not of modern politeness: Ego et uxōr mea. Wife and I.

2. Exception.—In contrast, and when each person is considered separately, the predicate agrees with the person of the nearest subject:

Ego sententiam, tā verba défendis. I am the champion of the spirit, you of the letter.

Et ego et Cicero mens flāgitābit. Cio. My Cicero will demand it and (so will) I. So regularly with disjunctives. On neque—neque, see 281, R. 1.

2. Qualification of the Subject.

284. The subject may be qualified by giving it an attribute. An attribute is that which serves to give a specific character.

The chief forms of the attribute are:

I. The adjective and its equivalents: amīcus certus, a sure friend.

II. The substantive in apposition: Cicero orātor, Cicero the orator.

Remark.—The equivalents of the adjective are: 1. The pronouns hīs, this, ille, that, etc. 2. Substantives denoting rank, age, trade: servus homo, a slave person; homō senex, an old fellow; homō gladiator, a gladiator-fellow; mulier ancilla, a servant-wench. 3. The genitive (337). 4. The ablative (402). 5. Preposition and case: excessus sōlītus, departure from life. 6. Adverbs chiefly with participial nouns: rectā facta, good actions. 7. Relative clauses (506).

I. Adjective Attribute.

Concord.

285. The Adjective Attribute agrees with its substantive, in gender, number, and case:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vir sapiens, a wise man,</td>
<td>viri sapientēs, wise men.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mulier pulchra, a beautiful woman,</td>
<td>mulierēs pulchrae, beautiful women.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>régium dōnum, royal gift,</td>
<td>régia dōna, royal gifts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PECULIAR FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

286. The common attribute of two or more substantives agrees with the nearest:

Omnēs agrī et marīa, | All lands and seas.
Agri et maria omnīa,

Remarks.—1. The Latin language repeats the common attribute more frequently than the English: omnēs agrī et omnīa marīa, all lands and (all) seas. Generally, the Latin language has a strong tendency to rhetorical repetition.

2. A common surname is put in the plural: M. et Q. Cicerōnēs, Marcus and Quintus Cicerō; G., Gn., M. Carbūnēs, Gaius, Gnaeus (and) Marcus Carbo; otherwise, M. Cicerō et Q. Cicerō, Marcus and Quintus Cicerō.

287. Position of the Attribute.—When the Attribute is emphatic, it is commonly put before the substantive, ordinarily after it.

1. Fugītīvus servus, a runaway slave (one complex).
2. Servus fugītīvus, a slave (that is) a runaway (two notions).

Many expressions, however, have become fixed formulæ, such as civis Rōmānus, Roman citizen; populus Rōmānus, people of Rome.

Remark.—The superlatives which denote order and sequence in time and space are often used partitively, and then generally precede their substantive: summa aqua, the surface of the water; summus mons, the top of the mountain; vēre primō, primō vēre, in the beginning of spring; in medīa urbe, in the midst of the city. So also, reliqua, cētera Graecia, the rest of Greece.

288. When the attribute belongs to two or more words, it is placed sometimes before them all, sometimes after them all, sometimes after the first.

All lands and seas, omnēs agrī et marīa; agrī et marīa omnīa; agrī omnēs et marīa.

The beginner may omit to 313.

PECULIAR FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE ATTRIBUTE.

289. The following forms of the Adjective Attribute present important peculiarities.

1. Demonstrative Pronouns.
2. Determinative and Reflexive Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Indefinite Pronouns.
5. Numerals.
6. Comparatives and Superlatives.

1. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

290. Hic, this (the Demonstrative of the First Person), refers to that which is nearer the speaker, and may mean:

1. The speaker himself: hic homo = ego.
2. The judges in a suit of law: si ego hos növi, if I know these men (= the jury).
3. The most important subject immediately in hand: hic sapiens de quod loquor, this (imaginary) wise man of whom I am speaking.
4. That in which the speaker is peculiarly interested: hoc studium, this pursuit of mine, of ours.
5. That which has just been mentioned: haec haecneus, these things thus far = so much for that.
6. Very frequently, that which is about to be mentioned: his conditionibus, on the following terms.
7. The current period of time: hic dies, to-day; haec nox, the night just past or just coming; hic mensis, the current month.

291. Iste, that (of thine, of yours), refers to that which belongs more peculiarly to the Second Person (Demonstrative of the Second Person):

Perser istam militiam. Cic. Endure that military service of yours.
Adventus tuos ista subcellia vacuefacta sunt. Cic. At your approach the benches in your neighborhood were vacated.

Remark.—The supposed contemptuous character of Iste arises from the refusal to take any direct notice of the person under discussion, "the person at whom."

292. Ille, that (the Demonstrative of the Third Person), denotes that which is more remote from the speaker, and is often used in contrast to hic, this.

Heu quantum haec Niobë Niobë distabat ab illa. Ov. Alas! how far this Niobe differed from that Niobe.
Ille may mean:
1. That which has been previously mentioned (often ille quidem):
illo quod initio vobis proposui, that which I propounded to you at first.
2. That which is well known, notorious (often put after the substantive):
testula illa, that (notorious) potsherds = institution of ostracism; illud Solōnis, that (famous saying) of Solon's.

3. That which is to be recalled: illud imprīmis mirābile, that (which I am going to remind you of) is especially wonderful.

4. That which is expected:

illa diēs veniet mea quā lūgubria pōnam. Ov. The day will come when I shall lay aside (cease) my mournful strains.

Remarks.—1. Hic and ille are used together in contrasts: as, the latter—the former, the former—the latter.

When both are matters of indifference the natural signification is observed: hic, the latter; ille, the former.

Ignāvia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; ictus māturam senectūtem, hic longam adulescentiam reddit, Cis. Laziness weakens the body, toil strengthens it; the one (the former) hastens old age, the other (the latter) prolongs youth.

When the former is the more important, hic is the former, ille the latter:

Melior tūtorque est certa pāx quam sperāta vīctoriā; haec in nostrā, ictus in debrum mandā est. Liv. Better and safer is certain peace than hoped-for victory; the former is in our hand(s), the latter in the hand(s) of the gods.

2. Hic et ille; ille et ille; ille aut ille, this man and (or) that man = one or two.

Nōn dīcam hōc signum ablātum esse et ictus; hoc dico, nullum tē signum religisse. Cic. I will not say that this statue was taken off and that; (what) I say (is) this, that you left no statue at all.

3. The derived adverbs retain the personal relations of hic, iste, ille: hic, here (where I am); hinc, hence (from where I am); hāc, hither (where I am); istic, there (where you are); illic, there (where he is), etc.

4. The Demonstrative Pronouns hic, iste, ille, and the Determinative is, are often strengthened by quidem, indeed. The sentence often requires that either the demonstrative or the particle be left untranslated.

Optāre hoc quidem est, nōn docēre. Cic. That is a (pious) wish, not a (logical) proof.

Nīhil perfertur ad nōs praeter rūmōrēs satisfōs quidem constantē sed adhuc sine auctūre. Cic. Nothing is brought to us except reports, quite consistent, it is true but thus far not authoritative.

2. DETERMINATIVE AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

293. Is, that, is the determinative pronoun, and the regular antecedent of the relative.

Mihi obviam vēnit tuus puer; is mihi litterās abs tē reddidit. Cic. I was met by your servant; he delivered to me a letter from you.

Is minimō eget mortālis qui minimum cupid. Syrus. That mortal is in want of least, who wanteth least.

Remarks.—1. Is, as the antecedent of the relative, is often omitted, chiefly in the Nominative, more rarely in an oblique case.

Bis dat qui cito dat. Prov. He gives twice who gives in a trice.

2. Is, with a copulative or adversative particle, is used as he or that in English, for the purpose of emphasis. Such expressions are: et is, atque is, isque, and he too, and that
too; neque is, et is nōn, and he not, and that not; sed is, but he, further strengthened by quidem, indeed.

Exempla quærimus et e a nōn antiqua. Cic. We are looking for examples, and those, too, not of ancient date.

Epicūrus unā in domō et eō quidem angustā quam magna tenuit amicorum gregēs. Cic. What shoals of friends Epicurus had in one house, and that a pinched-up one!

3. Is does not represent a noun before a Genitive, as in the English that of. In Latin the noun is omitted, or repeated, or a word of like meaning substituted.

Nōn jūdictū discipulorum discere dēbet magister sed discipŭlī magistri. Quint. The master is not to speak according to the judgment of the pupils, but the pupils according to that of the master.

Nulla est celeritàe quae possit cum animī celeritàte contendere. Cic. There is no speed that can possibly vie with that of the mind.

M. Coelius tribunāl suum juxta G. Trēbōnī sēllām collocāvit. Cat. Marcus Coelius placed his chair of office next to that of Gaius Trebonius.

Of course Hic, Ille, and Iste can be used with the Genitive in their proper sense.

294. Reflexive. Akin to is is the Reflexive Pronoun sui, sibi, sé. Instead of the Genitives ējus, ēorum, ēārum, ēōrum, the Possessive of the Reflexive, suōs, suā, suum, is employed when reference is made to the subject of the sentence:

Alexander moriens ānulum suum dederat Perdicca. Nep. Alexander (when) dying had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Quod quis habet dominae conferat omnes suae. Ov. (265.)

On the other hand:

Deum agnōscis ex operibus ējus. God you recognize by his works.

The same principle applies to the other cases of is and of the Reflexive. Hence the general rule:

295. The forms of the Reflexive Pronoun are used when reference is made to the subject of the sentence.


Remarks.—1. Suōs, when used in an emphatic sense (own, peculiar, proper), may refer to another case than that of the subject:


Justitia suōm cuique distribuit. Cic. Justice gives each man that is his own = his due.

Inque suōs volui cōgere verba pedēs. Ov. And I wished to force the words into their proper feet (places in the verse).

Suō tempore, at the proper, fitting time. So suō locō:

Cōmeodiae quem suōm in puēris putem suō locō dicoam. Quint. What I consider to be the good of comedy in the case of boys I will mention in the proper place.

2. In dependent clauses the reflexive is used with reference either to the principal or to the subordinate subject. See for fuller treatment 521.
296. *Idem*, the same, serves to unite two or more attributes or predicates on a person or thing. *Idem* is often to be translated by *at the same time*; likewise, also; yet, notwithstanding.

Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus. Nep. Cimon fell into the same odium as his father.

Quidquid honestum est idem est utile. Cic. Whatever is honorable is also (at the same time) useful.

Nam prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem. Ov. Nothing helps that may not likewise hurt.

Epιcūrus, quum optimam et praestantissimam nātūram dei dicit esse, negat idem esse in deō grātiām. Cic. Although Epicurus says that the nature of God is transcendentally good and great, yet (at the same time) he says that there is no sense of favor in God.

Difficilis facilis, jūcundus acerbus, es idem. Mart. Crabbled (and) kindly, sweet (and) sour, are you at once.

Remarks.—1. *The same* as is expressed by *Idem* with *qui*, with *atque* or *ac*, with *ut*, with *cum*, and poetically with the Dative:

Servi mōribus idem erant quibus dominus. Cic. The servants had the same character as the master.

Est animus erga te idem ac fuit. Terr. Her feelings toward you are the same as they were.

Disputātiōnem expōnimus idem fere verba ut actum disputātumque est. Cic. We are setting forth the discussion in very much the same words in which it was actually carried on.

Tibi mēcum in eōdem pistrīnō vivendum. Cic. You have to live in the same treading with me.

Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti. Hor. He who saves a man's life against his will, does the same thing as one who kills him (as if he killed him).

2. *Idem* cannot be used with *is*, of which it is only a stronger form (*is+dem*).

297. *Ipsa*, self, is the distinctive pronoun, and separates a subject or an object from all others:

Ipsa fœcī, I myself did it and none other, I alone did it, I did it of my own accord, I am the very man that did it.

Nunc ipsum, at this very instant, at this precise moment.

Conōn nōn quaeavit ubi ipsae tūtō vivērer, sed unde praevidē esse possēt cīvibus suīs. Nep. Conon did not seek a place to live in safety himself, but a place from which he could be of assistance to his countrymen.

Valvae subitō se ipsae aperuérunt. Cic. The folding-doors suddenly opened of their own accord.

Cato mortuus est annis octōgintā sex ipsīs ante Cicerōnem cōnāgulem. Cic. Cato died just eighty-six years before Cicero's consulship.
REMARKS.—1. Owing to this distinctive character, *ipse* is often used of *persons* in opposition to *things*; *riders* in opposition to *horses*; *inhabitants* in opposition to the *towns* which they inhabit: the *master* of the house in opposition to his *household*.

_Ego quō mē ipse misti_. PLAUT. *I am going where mistress sent me.*

2. Et *ipse*, likewise, *as well*, is used when a new subject takes an old predicate:

_Virtūtēs et ipsae taedium pariunt nisi grātiā varietātēs adjutae_. QUINT. *Virtues likewise (as well as faults) produce weariness unless they are flavored with variety.*

_Camillus ex Volscis in Aeqūs transīvit et ipsōs bellum mōlientēs_.Liv. *Camillus went across from the Volscians to the Aequians, who were likewise (as well as the Volscians) getting up war.*

298. *Ipse* is used to lay stress on the reflexive relation; in the Nominative when the subject is emphatic, in the Oblique Cases when the object is emphatic.

Sē _ipse_ laudat, _he_ (and not another) _praises himself_.

Sē _ipsum_ laudat, _he_ _praises himself_ (and not another).

_Piger_ _ipse_ sibi obstat. PROV. *The lazy man stands in his own way, is his own obstacle.*

_Nōn ego medicīnā; mē _ipse_ consōlor_. CIC. *I do not need medicine; I comfort myself (I am my only comforter).*

_Omnibus potius quam _ipsīs_ nōbis consululumus, _we have consulted the interest of all rather than our own.*

Exceptions are common:

_Quique aliīs cāvit nōn cavet _ipse_ sibī_. OV. *And he who took precautions for others takes none for himself.*

3. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

299. The Possessive Pronouns are more rarely used in Latin than in English, and chiefly for the purpose of contrast or clearness.

_Manūs lavā et cēnā_. CIC. _Wash (your) hands and dine._

_Praedia meā tū possidēs, ego aliōnā misericordiā vivō_. CIC. _You are in possession of my estates, (while) I live on the charity of others._

REMARK.—Observe the intense use of the Possessive in the sense of *property, particularly, fitness: suum esse, to belong to one’s self, to be one’s own man._

_TEMPORE TŪ ND PUGNĀSTI_. LIV. _You have fought at your own time (= when you wished)._  

_Ego annō_ _meā_ _consul factus sum_. CIC. _I was made consul in my own year (= the first year in which I could be made consul)._  

_Pugna suum fine quaer quam jacet hostis habet_. OV. _A fight has reached its end when the foe is down._
4. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

300. Quidam means one, a, a certain one (definite or indefinite to the speaker, not definitely designated to the hearer): quidam rhetor, a certain rhetorician.

In the plural, it is equivalent to some, sundry, without emphasis.

Quidam is often used with or without quasi, as if, to modify an expression:

Est quaedam virtutum vitiorumque vicinia. Quint. There is a certain neighborhood relation between virtues and vices.

Non sunt isti audienti qui virtutem duram et quasi ferream quanquam esse volunt. Cic. Those friends of yours are not to be listened to who will have it (maintain) that it is hard, and as it were made of iron.

301. Aliquis (aliqui), means, some one (wholly indefinite), some one or other: fecit hoc aliquis tui similis, some one or other like you did this; aliqui scrupus, some scruple or other.

In the predicate it is emphatic (by Litotes, 448, R. 2): sum aliquis, aliquid, I am somebody = a person of importance, something = of some weight, opposed to: nullus sum, nihil sum, I am a nobody, nothing.

Est aliquid fatale malum per verba levare. Ov. It is something to relieve the fated misfortune by words.

302. Quis (qui), fainter than aliquis, is used chiefly in relative sentences and after quum, when, si, if, ne, lest, num, whether, quod the ... 400.

Nes quid nimis! nothing in excess!
Si qua volent regnare diu, deludat amantem. Ov. (231, R. 2.)
Quod quis habet dominae conferat omne suae. Ov. (265.)

Remark.—Aliquis is used after si, and the rest when there is stress: si quis, if any; si aliquis, if some.

Si aliquid dandum est voluptati, modiis convivialis senectus delectari potest. Cic. If something is to be given to pleasure (as something or other must), old age can take delight in mild festivities. Si quid, if anything; si quidquam, if anything at all.

When used with negatives, the negative itself is commonly negativized: Verrès nihil unquam fecit sine aliquo quaestu. Cic. (415.)

303. Quispiam is rarer than aliquis, but not to be distinguished from it, except that quispiam is never found in negative sentences: dixerit quispiam, some one may say.

304. Quisquam and ullus (adjective) mean any one (at all),
and are used chiefly in negative sentences, in sentences that imply total negation, and in sweeping conditions:

\textit{Justice never hurts anybody.}

\textit{What Greek rhetorician ever drew anything from Thucydides?}

\textit{If any one at all (was) wise, he was.}

\textit{Is anything of such importance as that you should lose (for its sake) the splendid title of a good man?}

The negative of \textit{quisquam} is \textit{nemo, nobody; nihil, nothing (105)}. \textit{Nemo, however, is sometimes used as an adjective:}

\textit{Nemo discipulus, no scholar.}

The negative of \textit{ullus} is \textit{nullus, no, none}, which is also used regularly as a substantive in the Genitive and Ablative instead of \textit{neminis} and \textit{nemine}.

\textbf{Remarks.---1. On neque quisquam and \textit{et nemo}, see 479. 2. Nullus is used in familiar language instead of \textit{nun} (so sometimes in English): Philippus nullus usquam. Liv. \textit{No Philip anywhere.}}

\textbf{305. Quisque (from quisquis) means each one.}

\textit{All were praised and rewarded, each one according to his desert.}

With superlatives and ordinals \textit{quisque} is loosely translated every:

\textit{Every good thing is rare, more accurately, The better a thing, the rarer it is. (645, R. 2.)}

\textit{Every fifth year all Sicily is assessed.}

\textit{The sooner the better, as soon as possible.}

\textbf{Remarks.---1. Quisque is commonly postpositive, almost invariably after the reflexive: ipse \textit{sae quisquod diligent} (395); suum \textit{culque} (395, R. 1), except when the reflexive is especially emphatic.}

\textit{a. Non omnia omnibvs tribuenda sunt, sed suum culque;}

\textit{b. Omnes idem faciunt, sed optimus quisque optimae;}

\textit{c. Non omnibus annis hoc fit, sed tertio quique annis;}

\textit{d. Non omnem idem faciunt, sed quod quisque vult.}

\textbf{306. Alter and alius are both translated other, another, but alter refers to one of two, alius to diversity.}
Sēlus aut cum alterō, alone or with (only) one other; alter Nero, a second Nero.

Alter alerum quaeit, one (definite person) seeks the other (definite person); alius alium quaeit, one seeks one, another another; alter—alter, one party—another party (already defined); alii—alii, some—others. Alter often means neighbor, brother, fellow-man; alius, third person.

Alter:
Āgēsilaus claudus fuit alterō pede. Nēp. Agesilaus was lame of one foot.

Alterā manū fert lapidem, pānem ostentat alterā. Plaut. In one hand a stone he carries, in the other holds out bread.

Mors nec ad vivōs pertinet nec ad mortuōs: alterī nullī (304, R. 2) sunt, alterōs nōn attinget. Cic. Death concerns neither the living nor the dead: the latter are not, the former it will not reach.

Alius:
Fallācia alia aliam trūdit. Ter. One lie treads on the heels of another (indefinite series).

Divitiās alii praepōnunt, alii honōres. Cic. Some prefer riches, others honors.

Aliud alii nātūra iter ostendit. Sall. Nature shows one path to one man, another path to another man.

Alter and alius:
Ab aliō expectēs alterī quod fēceris. Syrus. You may look for from another what you've done unto your brother (from No. 3, what No. 1 has done to No. 2).

5. NUMERALS.

307. Duo means simply two, ambo, both (two considered together), uterque, either (two considered apart, as, "They crucified two others with him, on either side one," John xix. 18):

Supplicatio ambōrum nōmine et triumphus utrīque dēcrētus est. Liv. A thanksgiving in the name of both and a triumph to either (each of the two) was decreed.

Remark.—Uterque is seldom plural, except of sets:

Utrīque [plēbis fœntōres et senātus] victōriam crūdēlēr exercēbant. Sall.

Either party (democrats and senate) made a cruel use of victory.

Duae fœrunt Ariovistī uxōres: utrāque in ea fuga perlārunt. Cas. Ariovistus's wives were two in number; both perished on that flight.

On uterque with the Genitive, see 370 R. 2.

308. Milē, a thousand, is in the Singular an indeclinable Adjective, and is less frequently used with the Genitive: milē militēs, rather than mille militum, a thousand soldiers; in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive, and must have the Genitive: duo milia militum, two thousand(s of) soldiers = two regiments of soldiers.
But if a smaller number comes between, the noun follows the smaller number:

\[
\begin{align*}
3500 & \text{ cavalry}, \\
\{ & \text{tria milia quingenti equitēs,} \\
& \text{tria milia equitum et quingenti, but} \\
& \text{equitēs tria milia quingenti, or} \\
& \text{equitum tria milia quingenti.}
\end{align*}
\]

309. The ordinals are used for the cardinals with a carelessness which gives rise to ambiguity:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Quattuor anni sunt, } & \text{ex quō tē nōn vidi,} \\
& \text{It is four years,} \\
& \text{that I have not seen you (since I saw you).} \\
\text{Quartus annus est,} \\
& \text{It is the fourth year (four years, going on four years).}
\end{align*}
\]

Remark.—To avoid this ambiguity ineptus, begun, and exactus, finished, seem to have been used. Gellius, N. A. iii. 16.

310. The distributives are used with an exactness which is foreign to our idiom wherever repetition is involved, as in the multiplication table.

With singult either cardinal or distributive may be used.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Antōnius [pollicitus est] dēnāriōs quingēnōs (or quingentōs) singulis militibus datūrum.} \\
\text{Cic. Antonius promised to give 500 denarii to each soldier.}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Scriptum eculeum cum quīnque pedibus, pullōs gallināceōs trēs}
\text{cum ternīs pedibus nātōs esse.} \\
\text{Liv. A letter was written to say that a colt}
\text{had been foaled with five feet (and) three chickens hatched with three feet}
\text{(apiece).}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Carmen ab tē nōvēns virgīnibus canē jussūrant.} \\
\text{Liv. They ordered a chant to be sung by thrice nine virgins.}
\end{align*}
\]

Remark.—The poets often use the distributive where the cardinal would be the rule, and the cardinals are sometimes found even in prose, where we should expect the distributives. Bini is not unfrequently used of a pair: Bini scyphi, a pair of cups. On the distributives with Plūrālia tantum, see 95, R. 2.

6. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

311. Comparative.—The comparative degree generally takes a term of comparison either with quam, than, or in the Ablative:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ignōrātio futūrōrum malōrum útilior est quam scientia.} \\
\text{Cic. Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge (of them).}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Tullius Hostilius ferōcior etiam Rōmūlō fuit.} \\
\text{Liv. Tullius Hostilius}
\text{was even more metilesome than Romulus.}
\end{align*}
\]

Remarks.—1. The Ablative is used only when the word with quam would stand in the Nom. or Acc.
COMPARATIVES.

Caesar minor est quam Pompeius. Caesar is younger than Pompey.

Pompejus. But—

Caesaris magis amamus quam Pompeium. We love Caesar more than Pompey.

Pompejus.

But—

Caesarī magis favēmus quam Pompejō, we favor Caesar more than Pompey (647).

2. The Ablative is very common in negative sentences, and is used exclusively in negative relative sentences.

Nōn adeō occidī quamvis dējectus ut infrā tē quoque sim, inferius quō nihil esse potest. Ov. I have not fallen so far, however cast down, as to be lower than you, than whom nothing can be lower.

3. Measure of difference is put in the ablative, 397.

4. Quam is often omitted after plūs, amplius, more, and minus, less, and the like, without affecting the construction.

Homīnti miserō plūs quingentōs colaphōs infrēgit mihi. Tēr. He has dealt me, luckless creature, more than five hundred crushing boxes on the ear.

Spatium est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum. Caes. The space is not more than (gf) six hundred feet.

More than thirty years old: 1. Nātus plūs (quam) trīgintā annōs.

2. Nātus plūs trīgintā annīs (rare).

3. Mājor (quam) trīgintā annōs nātus.


5. Mājor trīgintā annōrum.

Palūs nōn lātior pedibus quinquāgintā. Caes. A swamp not broader than fifty feet (or pedēs quinquāgintā).

5. On the combination of the comparative with opinīōne, opinion, spē, hope, and the like, see 399, R. 1.

6. Atque for quam is poetical.

312. Standard of Comparison omitted.—When the standard of comparison is omitted, it is supplied: 1. By the context; 2. By the usual or proper standard; 3. By the opposite.

1. By the context:

Solent rēgēs Persārum plūrēs uxorēs habēre. Cic. The kings of Persia usually have more wives [than one].

2. By the proper standard:

Senectūs est nātūrā loquācīor. Cic. Old age is naturally rather (or too) talkative.

3. By the opposite:

Sed melius nōscisse fuit. Ov. But it had been better not to have known (than to have known), ignorance had been bliss.

313. Disproportion.—Disproportion is expressed by the comparative with quam prō, than for, and the Ablative, or with ut, that, or qui, who, and the subjunctive:

Mīnōr caedēs quam prō tantā victoriā fuit. Liv. The loss was (too) small for so great a victory.
Major sum quae ut mancipium sum mei corporis. Sen. I am too great to be the slave of my body.
Major sum quae cui possit Fortuna nocère. Ov. I am too great for Fortune possibly to hurt me.

314. Two Qualities compared.—When two qualities of the same substantive are compared, we find either magis and quam with the positive, or a double comparative:

Celer tuus disertus magis est quam sapiens. Cic. Your (friend) Celer is more eloquent rather than wise—more eloquent than wise.
Paulus contio fuit verior quam gravior populō. Liv. Paulus's speech was more true than agreeable to the people.

Remark.—There is no distinction to be made between the two expressions. In the latter turn, mainly post-Ciceronian, the second comparative is merely attracted into the same form as the first. The same rule applies to the adverb: fortius quam félicius, with more bravery than good luck.

315. Restriction to the Comparative.—When but two objects are compared, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison, whereas, in English, the superlative is employed, unless the idea of duality is emphatic.

Nātū mājor, the eldest (of two), the elder; nātū minōr, the youngest, the younger.
Prior, the first; posterior, the last.
Posteriorōres cogitātiōnēs, ut ājunt, sapientiorēs solent esse. Cic. Afterthoughts, as the saying is, are usually the wisest.

Remark.—The same rule applies to the interrogative uter, which of two? (whether?):
Quaeritur: ex duōbus uter dignior; ex plūribus, quis dignissimus. Quint. The question is: Of two, which is the worthier; of more (than two), which is the worthiest. Exceptions are rare.

316. Superlative.—The Latin superlative is often to be rendered by the English positive, especially of persons:

Quintus Fabius Maximus, Quintus Fabius the Great.
Tam fēlicē essēs quam formōsissimam vellem. Ov. Would thou wert fortunate as (thou art) fair.
Maximō impetū, mājōre fortūnā. Liv. With great vigor, with greater luck.

317. Superlative strengthened.—The superlative is strengthened by longē, by far; multō, much; vel, even; unus, unus
omnium, one above all others; quam, quantus—potuit, as—as possible.

Ex Britannis omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī qui Cantium incolunt. Caes. Of all the Britons by far the most cultivated are those that inhabit Kent.

Prōtagoras sophistēs illīs temporībus vēl maximus. Cic. Protagoras, the very greatest sophist (= professor of wisdom) in those times.

Urbem ēnam mihi amīcissīmam dēclināvi. Cic. I turned aside from a city above all others friendly to me.

Caesar quam aequissimō locō potest castra commīnīt. Caes. Caesar fortifies a camp in as favorable a position as possible.

Remark.—Quam aequissimus locus = tam aequus quam aequissimus. (For other expressions, see 845, R. 5.

APPPOSITION.

318. By apposition one substantive is placed by the side of another, which contains it:

Cicero orātor, Cicero the orator.
Rhēnus flūmen, the river Rhine.

CONCORD.

319. The word in apposition agrees with the principal word in number and case, and as far as it can in gender:

Nom. Hērodotus pater historiae, Herodotus the father of history;
Aesatus exsōr mūrōrum. Lucri. Titus the devourer of walls.
Athēnae omnium doctrinārum in vēntūris. Cic. Athens the inventor of all branches of learning. (See 202.)

Remarks.—1. The predicate sometimes agrees with the word in apposition, especially in names of towns: Coriolī oppidum captum est. Liv. Coriolis-town was taken.

Otherwise regular:

Pompēius, nostri amōrēs, ipse se affīxīt. Cic. Pompey, our bosom friend, has floored himself.

2. The Possessive Pronoun takes the Genitive in apposition:

Tuum, hominis simplicitōs, pectus vidīmus. Cic. We have seen your bosom bare’d, you open-hearted creature!

Urbs meā ūnus operā salva fuit. Cic. The city was saved by my exertions alone.

320. Partitive Apposition.—Partitive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which a part is taken out of the whole:
Cōtera multītūdō sorte decimus quīisque ad supplicium lectī sunt. Liv. (Of) the rest of the crowd every tenth man was chosen by lot for punishment. (Sometimes called Restrictive Apposition.)

321. Distributive Apposition.—Distributive Apposition is that form of Apposition in which the whole is subdivided into its parts, chiefly with alter—alter, the one—the other; quīisque, each one; aliē—aliē, some—others. (Often called Partitive.)

Due filiae altera occisa altera capta est. CAES. (Of) two daughters, the one was killed, the other captured.

REMARK.—The Partitive Genitive is more commonly employed than either of these forms of apposition.

322. Mihi nōmen est. Instead of the apposition with nōmen, name, the name of the person is more frequently attracted into the Dative.

1. Mihi Cicerō nōmen est; most common.

My name is Cicero,

2. Mihi nōmen Cicerō est; less common.

3. Mihi nōmen Cicerōnis est; least common.

Nōmen Arctūrō est mihi. PLAUT. My name is Arcturus.

Tibi nōmen insānō posuēre. HOR. They called you “cracked.”

Samnītēs Maleventum, cui nunc urbi Beneventum nōmen est, perfūgėrunt. Liv. The Samnites fled to Maleventum (Ilcome), a city which now bears the name Beneventum (Welcome).

Nōmen Mercurīt est mihi. PLAUT. My name is Mercury.

323. Apposition to a Sentence.—Sometimes an accusative stands in apposition to a whole preceding sentence:

Admoneor ut aliquid etiam dē sepultūrā dicendum existimem, rem nōn difficilēm. CIC. I am reminded to take into consideration that something is to be said about burial also—an easy matter.

REMARK.—This accusative may follow a Passive or Neuter verb as the object affected. Others regard such Neut. Accusatives as Nominatives.

PREDICATIVE ATTRIBUTION AND PREDICATIVE APPPOSITION.

324. Any case may be followed by the same case in Predicative Attribution or Apposition, which differ from the ordinary Attribution or Apposition in translation only.

NOMINATIVE: Filius aegrōtus rediit.

Ordinary Attribution: The sick son returned.
Predicative Attribution: The son returned sick = he was sick when he returned.

Hercules juvenis leōnem interfécit.
Ordinary Apposition: The young man Hercules slew a lion.
Predicative Apposition: Hercules, when a young man, slew a lion = he was a young man when he slew a lion.

Genitive: Potestās ājus adhíbendae uxorís, The permission to take her to wife.

Dative: Amicō vivō non subvēnisti, You did not help your friend (while he was) alive.

 Accusative: Hercules servum vivam cepit.
Ordinary Attribution: Hercules caught a living doe.
Predicative Attribution: Hercules caught a doe alive.

Ablative: Aere ītuntur importāto, They use imported copper = the copper which they use is imported.

Remarks.—1. The vocative, not being a case proper, is not used predicatively. Exceptions are apparent or poetical.
Quō, moritūre, ruís! Verg. "Whither dost thou rush to die?" = Whither dost thou rush, thou doomed to die?
Notice here the old phrase:
Macte virūtē estō. Verg. Increase in virtue = Heaven speed thee in thy high career.
Macte is regarded by some as an old vocative, from the same stem as magnus; by others as an adverb.

2. Victōrēs rediērant may mean, the conquerors returned, or they returned conquerors; and a similar predicative use is to be noticed in Idem, the same.
Idem abeunt qui vēnerant, they go away just as they had come (literally, the same persons as they had come).

3. Predicative Attribution and Apposition are often to be turned into an abstract noun:
Ego nōn eadem volo senex, quae puer volui, I do not wish the same things (as an old man) in my old age, that I wished (as a boy) in my youth.
So with prepositions:
Ante Cicero nēm consulém, before the consulship of Cicero; ante urbem conditam, before the building of the city.

4. Do not confound the "as" of apposition with the "as" of comparison—ut, quasi, tāquum. (845, R. 4).
Cicero sae quae nunc sunt veniunt océinit ut vātēs. Nep. Cicero foretold all that is coming to pass now as (if he were) an inspired prophet.

5. When special stress is laid on the Adjective or Substantive predicate, in combination with the verbal predicate, it is well to resolve the sentence into its elements:
Themistocles finus restitit, Themistocles alone withstood = Themistocles was the only one that withstood.

Argonautae prīmi in Pontum Euxīnum intrāvērant, the Argonauts first entered the Euxine (Black) Sea = were the first to enter the Black Sea.

Una salūs victis nullam spērāre salūtem. Verg. The only safety which the vanquished have, is to hope for none.

Fragilēm truēt commodius pelagī ratem prīmus. Hor. He was the first to trust his frail bark to the wild waves.

6. The English idiom often uses the adverb and adverbial expressions instead of the Latin adjective: so in adjectives of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and igno-
QUALIFICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

rancé, of order and position, of time and season, and of temporary condition generally: libens with pleasure; volens, willing(ly); nolens, unwilling(ly); invitus, against one's will; prudens, aware; imprudens, unaware; sciens, knowing(ly); primus, prior, first; ultimus, last; medius, in, about the middle; hodiernus, to-day; matutinus, in the morning; frequens, frequent(ly); sublimis, aloft.

Ödoro si poteris, si nón, invitus amabo. Ov. (251, R. 2.)

Plautus hoc fact imprudens quam scienis ante hunc diem unquam. Tnr.
I have done more good to-day unaware than I have ever done knowingly before.

Addurrit, mediam mulierem complectitur. Tnr. He runs up, puts his arms about the woman's waist.

Qui prior strinxerit ferrum ejus victória erit. Liv. Who draws the sword first, his shall be the victory.

Vespertinus pete tectum. Hor. Seek thy dwelling at eventide.

Rarus venit in cénacula miles. Juv. The soldiery rarely comes into the garret.

So also totus, wholly.

Philosophiae nón totos tradimus. Cic. We give ourselves wholly to philosophy.

Sóli hoc contingit sapienti. Cic. This good luck happens to the wise man alone — it is only the wise man who has this good luck.

7. Carefully to be distinguished are the uses of primus, and the adverbs primum, first, for the first time, and primó, at first.

Primus: Ego primus hanc orationem llegi, I was the first to read this speech.

Hanc primum orationem llegi, this was the first speech that I read.

Primum: Hanc orationem primum légì deinde transcripti. I first read (and) then copied this speech.

Hodié hanc orationem primum légì. I read this speech to-day for the first time.

Primó: Hanc orationem primó libenter llegó, postea magis magisque mihi jéhuna vis est, at first I read this speech with pleasure, afterward it seemed to me drier and drier.—Lattmann and Müller.

B.

1. MULTIPLICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

325. The Multiplication of the Predicate requires no further rules than those that have been given in the general doctrine of Concord.

2. QUALIFICATION OF THE PREDICATE.

326. The Qualification of the Predicate may be regarded as an External or an Internal change:

I. External change: combination with an object:
   1. Direct object, Accusative.
   2. Indirect object, Dative.

II. Internal change: combination with an attribute, which may be in the form of
   1. The Genitive case.
   2. The Ablative.
3. Preposition with a case.
4. An Adverb.

**Remark.**—The Infinitive forms (Infinitive, Gerund, Gerundive, and Subjunctive) appear now as objects, now as attributes, and require a separate treatment.

### I. EXTERNAL CHANGE.

**Accusative.**

327. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.
The Object may be contained in the verb (Inner Object, Object Effected):

Deus mundum creavit, *God made a creation—the universe.*

Akin to this is the Accusative of Extent:

Ā rectā conscientiā transversum ungue mōn oportet discēdere. *Cic.*

One ought not to swerve a nailbreadth from a right conscience.

Decem annōs Trōja oppugnāta est. *Liv.* Ten years was Troy besieged.

Maximam partem lacte vivunt. *Cæs.* For the most part they live on milk.

From the Accusative of Extent arises the Accusative of the Outer Object (Object Affected):

Deus mundum gubernat, *God steers the universe.*

**Remark.**—The Accusative of the Inner Object is the characteristic use of the case; the Accusative of the Outer Object the most common use. It is sometimes impossible to determine which element preponderates; so in verbs compounded with prepositions.
The so-called Terminal Accusative may be conceived as an Inner or an Outer Object. Hence the following table is only approximate:

### GENERAL VIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

328. I. Inner Object: Object effected.

Cognate Accusative.

Accusative of Extent.

1. In Space.
2. In time.
3. Of Adverbial Relation.

Terminal Accusative
(Point Reached).

II. Outer Object: Object affected.

Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

1. Whole.
2. Part (so-called Greek Accusative).

Verbs compounded with Prepositions.
III. Double Accusative: Asking and Teaching.
Making and Taking.

IV. Accusative as the most general form of the object (object created or called up by the mind):
In Exclamations.
Accusative and Infinitive.

329. Active Transitive Verbs take the Accusative case:

Rōmulus Urbem Rōmam condidit, Romulus founded the City of Rome.
(Object Effected.)
Mēns regit corpus, Mind governs body. (Object Affected.)

Remarks.—1. Many verbs are intransitive in English which are transitive in Latin: dolēre, to grieve (for); déspērāre, to despair (of); horrēre, to shudder (at); mīrāre, to wonder (at); ridēre, to laugh (at). Especially to be noted is the wide scope of the Inner Object:
Honōrēs déspērant, Cic. They despair of honors (give them up in despair).
Necāta est Vitia quod filiī necem févissent (541). Tac. Vitia was executed for having wept (for) her son’s execution.

Conscia mēns rectī Fāmae mendācia risit. Ov. Conscious of right, her soul (but) laughed (at) the falsehoods of Rumor.

Verbs of Smell and Taste have the Inner Object:
Pīscis ipsum mare sapit. Sen. The fish tastes of the very sea.
Nūn omnēs possess olearē unguenta exōtica. Plaut. It is not every one can smell of foreign ointments.

2. The Accusative with Verbal nouns, such as tactō, touching, is comic.

330. Verbs compounded with the prepositions ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, per, praeter, sub, subter, super, and trans, become transitive, and take the accusative:

All with circum, per, praeter, trans, super, and subter.
Many with ad and in.
Some with ante and con.

Pýthagorās Persārum magōs adīvit. Cic. Pythagoras applied to (consulted) the Persian magi.

Stella Veneris ante greditur sōlem. Cic. The star Venus goes in advance of the sun.

Tām mē circumstant densōrum turba malōrum. Ov. So dense a crowd of evils encompass(es) me.

Eam, si opus esse vidēbitur, ipse conveniam. Cic. I will go to see her myself, if it shall seem expedient.

Consilium multae calliditātis init. Ov. He engages in (devises) a plan of deep cunning.

Tanās Europam et Asiām interfluit. Curt. The Don flows between Europe and Asia.
Mortem obiit, e medio abiit. Ter. She went to face Death (died), she left the world.

Caesar omnem agrum Picenum percurrit. Caes. Caesar traversed rapidly all the Picenian district.

Populus solet dignōs praeterire. Cic. The people is wont to pass by the worthy.


Flüminaque antiquōs subterlābentia mūros. Verg. And rivers gliding under ancient walls.

Rōmāni ruinas mūri supervādēbant. Liv. The Romans marched over the ruins of the wall.

Crassus Euphrātem nullā bellī causā transit. Cic. Crassus crossed the Euphrates without any cause for war.

Remarks.—1. If the simple verb is a transitive, it can take two accusatives:


2. With many of these verbs the preposition may be repeated:

Cōpiās trājēcit Rhodanum, or trans Rhodanum, He threw his troops across the Rhone.

Sometimes with difference of signification:

Adire ad aliquem, to go to a man; adire aliquem, to apply to (to consult) a man.

331. Any verb can take an Accusative of the Inner Object, when that object serves to define more narrowly or to explain more fully the contents of the verb.

When the dependent word is of the same origin or of kindred meaning with the verb, it is called the Cognate Accusative.

Faciam ut mei memineris dum vītam vīvās. Plaut. I'll make you think of me the longest day you live.

Servus est qui ut antiquī dixerunt servītūtem servīt. Quint. He is a slave who, as old-style people said, slaves a slavery —who is a slave that is a slave.

Remarks.—1. The Cognate Accusative, when a substantive proper, is commonly attended by an attribute:

Consimilem lūserat jam ēlim ille lādum. Ter. He had long before played a like game.

Cantilēnam sāndem canis. Ter. You are singing the same song.

Mīrum atque insēctum somniāvī somnium. Plaut. A marvellous and uncanny dream I've dreamed.

2. Much more common is the Cognate Accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives treated as substantives:

Xenophōn eadem fers peccat. Cic. Xenophon makes very much the same mistakes.

Equidem posse vellem idem glōriāri quod Čyρus. Cic. For my part I could wish that it were in my power to make the same boast as Cyrus.
DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

Quid quid dēlfrant rēgēs pīctuntur Achiyi. Hom. Whatever mad freak
the kings play, the Achivi are punished for it.

Quid lacrimās? Ter. What are you crying for?

With transitive verbs an accusative of the person can be employed beside:

Discipulōs id ā nūm. moeet ut praeceptōres suas nōn minus quam ipsa
studia ament. Quint. I give pupils this one piece of advice, that they love their teachers
no less than their studies themselves.

3. From this the accusative neuter gradually passes over into an adverb, such as
alquantum, somewhat; nihil, nothing (‘nothing loath’); summum, at most. Especi-
ally to be noted are: magnum partem, to a great extent; id temporis, at that time; id
ætātis, of that age; id genus, of that kind; omne genus, of every kind.

Hæc vulnera vitae nōn minimam partem mortis formidine aluntur. Lucr.
These wounds of life are not the least part fostered by the fear of death.

Nāstram vici um ultus est ipse sēā. Cic. He took vengeance on himself in our
stead.

4. Instead of the Cognate Accusative the Ablative is occasionally found: lapidibus
plure, to rain stones; sanguine sūdā, to sweat blood.

Herculis simulācrum multō sūdōre mānāvit. Cic. The statue of Hercules ran
freely with sweat.

332. A part of the object affected is sometimes put in the
Accusative case after a passive or intransitive verb or an
adjective:

Tacitā cūrā animum incensus. Liv. His soul on fire with silent care.

Jam vulgātum actis quoque saucius pectus. Quint. Now-a-days
“breast-wounded” is actually a common newspaper phrase.

REMARKS.—1. This is commonly called the Greek Accusative, and is found chiefly in
poetry. The common prose construction is the Ablative.

Nēscit stāre locō; micat auribus et tremit artūs. Verg. He cannot stand still;
he twitches with his ears and quivers in his limbs.

2. Somewhat different is the Accusative with indōr, I don; exōr, I doff; cīngōr,
I gird on myself; in which verbs the reflexive signification is retained:

Intītō ferrum cingitur. Verg. He girds on (himself) a useless blade.

Lōrēcum indūitur fidēque accingitur ense. Verg. He dons a corset and begins
himself with his trusty gaitae.

Arminius impētū eque pervāsit oblītus faciēm suō crucērenē nōsecessētur.
Tac. Hermann got through, thanks to his fiery charger, having smeared his face with his
own gore to keep from being recognized.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

333. When two Accusatives depend on the same verb, one is the In-
ner, the other the Outer object.

Active verbs signifying to Inquire, to Require, to Teach, and
celāre, to conceal, take two Accusatives, one of the Person, and
the other of the Thing.

Pūsīōnem quendam Sōcratēs interrogat quaedam geometrica. Cic.
Socrates asks an arching sundry questions in geometry.
Caesar Aeduōs frumentum flāgitābat. Caes. Caesar kept on demanding the corn of the Aeduī.

Quid nunc tē, asine, litterās doceam? (258). Cic. Why should I now give you a lesson in literature, you donkey?

Iter omnēs cēlat. Nep. He keeps all in the dark about his route, conceals his route from all.

Remarks.—1. The Passive form with the Nominative of the Person and the Accusative of the Thing is sparingly used. Discere is more common than docēri.

Mōtās docēri gaudet Iōniōs matūra virgō. Hor. The rare ripe maid delights to learn Ionic dances.

Omnēs militiae artēs ὑδοτος fuerat. Liv. He had learned (been taught) thoroughly all the arts of war.

2. The expressions vary a good deal. Observe:

   This then is not the only way, 
   For it is also right to say;  
   Doceče and cēlāre dē, 
   Interrogāre dē quō rē,

   Posco, I claim, and flāgitō,  
   And always peto, postulo: 
   Take aliquid ab aliquid,  
   While quaero takes ex. ab. dē, quō.

   Adherbal Rōmam lēgātōs merērat, qui senātum docērent dē caede fratris.  
   Sall. Adherbal had sent envoys to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother.

   Bassus nōstér mē dē hōc librō cēlāvit. Cic. Our friend Bassus has kept me in the dark about this book. (So commonly in the Passive.)

   Aquam & pāmie nunc postulās. Plaut. You are now asking water of a pumice- 
   stones (blood of a turnip).

3. With doceo the Abl. of the Instrument is also used: doceče filibus, equō, to teach the lyre, to teach riding. Doctus generally takes the Abl.: Doctus Graeci litteris, a good Greek.

4. Quid mé vis? what do you want of me? what do you want me for? belongs to this general class.

5. On Double Accusative with compound verbs, see 330, R. 1; on the accus. neuter of the Inner Object, see 331, R. 2.

334. Verbs of Naming, Making, Taking, Choosing, Showing, may have two Accusatives of the same Person or Thing:

Īram bene Ennius initium dīxit insānīae. Cic. Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.

Ancum Marcium rēgēm populus creāvit. Liv. The people made Ancus Marcius king.

Cato Valerium Flaccum collēgam habuit. Nep. Cato had Valerius Flaccus (as) colleague.

Sōcratem Apollo sapientissimum jūdicāvit. Cic. Apollo judged Socrates (to be) the wisest.

Athēniēnibus Pythia præcēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātorem surrent. Nep. The Pythia instructed the Athenians to take Miltiades (as) their commander.


Quem intellegimus dīvitem? Cic. Whom do we understand by the rich man?
(REMARK.—The Double Accusative is turned into the Double Nominative with the Passive (197). Reddo, I render, is not used in the Passive, but, instead thereof, fio, I become.

Habeo, with two Accusatives, commonly means to have; in the sense of hold, regard, other turns are used:

Utrum prō ancillā mē habēs an prō filiā? Plaut. Do you look upon me as a maid-servant or a daughter?
So habēre servōrum locō, (in) numerō deōrum, to regard as slaves, as gods.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE AND TIME.

335. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the verb, either with or without per, through.

1. With per to denote entire occupancy (from one end to the other, all through).

Sparsi per provinciam militēs, the soldiers scattered all through the province.

Phoebidās iter per Thēbās sēcit. Nēp. Phoebidas marched through Thebes.

2. Without per to denote distance, how far, how long.

Trabēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs distābant. Caes. The beams were two feet apart.

Campus Marathōn abest ab oppidō Athēnīōn circiter milia passuum decem. Nēp. The plain (of) Marathon is about ten miles from the city of Athens.

A rectā conscientiā transversum unguem non oportet discēdere. Cic. (327.)

(REMARKS.—1. With abesse and distāre, an Ablative of measure may also be employed:

Milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse, to be twenty-four miles off.

2. When the point of reference is taken for granted, ab (§) with the Ablative may be used:

Hostēs ab milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt. Caes. The enemy pitched their camp less than two miles off.

336. The Accusative of Extent in Space accompanies the adjectives longus, long; lātus, wide; altus, high (deep).

Fossa pedēs trecentōs longa est, sex pedēs alta, the ditch is three hundred feet long, six feet deep.

Militēs aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs triginta altum pedēs octōgintā exsturūrunt. Caes. The soldiers raised an embankment three hundred and thirty feet wide (and) eighty feet high.
337. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the verb, either with or without per, in answer to the question, How long?

Gorgias centum et novem vixit annos. Quint. Gorgias lived 109 years.

Tenuisti provinciam per decem annos. Cic. You have held on to the province for 10 years (10 years long).

Est mōcum per tōtum diem. Plin. Ep. He is with me the livelong day.

Remark.—Per with the Accusative is frequently used like the Ablative of Time within which. Per illa tempora = illis temporibus, in those times.

So especially with the negative:

Nulla rēs per triennium nisi ad nātum istius jūdicāta est. Cic. No matter was decided during (in) the three years except at his beck.

338. The Accusative of Extent in Time accompanies the adjective nātus, old (born):

Puer decem annōs nātus est, the boy is ten years old.

Cyrus regnavit ānnōs trīginta; quadrāgintā ānnōs nātus regnāre coepit. Cic. Cyrus reigned thirty years; (he was) forty years old (when) he began to reign.

ACCUSATIVE AS A GENERAL OBJECTIVE CASE.

339. The Accusative as the Objective Case generally is used as an object of Thought, Perception, Emotion; an object created by the mind, evoked or deprecated by the will. Hence the use of the Accusative:

1. In Exclamations.
2. With the Infinitive.

340. The Accusative is used in Exclamations as the general object of Thought, Perception, or Emotion:

Mē miserum, poor me!

Mē caecum qui haec ante nōn viderim. Cic. Blind me! not to have seen all this before.

So in Exclamatory Questions:

Quō mihi fortūnam, si nōn concēditur ūtī? Hor. What (is the object of) fortune to me if I'm not allowed to enjoy it?

Interjections are used:

Heu mē miserum! Alas! poor me!
Ö miseräs hominum mentēs, Ö pectora caeca. LUCR. Oh, the wretched minds of men, oh, the blind hearts!

Remarks.—1. Ö with the Vocative is an address; with the Nom. a characteristic; with the Accus. an object of emotion.
2. En, Lo! and Ecce, Lo here! take the Nominative:
En Vārus, Lo Vārus! Ecce homo! Behold the man!
In the earlier language the Accusative was used:
En tibi hominem! PLAUT. Here's your man!
Ecce mē! PLAUT. Here am I!
So Eccum, ellum, eccam, eccillam, in comic poetry.
There seems to be some confusion between the interrogative En and Em (Hem).
Prō takes the Vocative: Prō dī immortalēs! Ye immortal gods! The Accusative occurs in: Prō deum (hominum, deum atque hominum) fidem! For heaven's sake.
Hei! and Vae! take the Dative.
Hei mihi! Ah me! Vae victis! Woe to the conquered!

341. The Accusative as the most general form of the substantive, and the Infinitive as the most general form of the verb, are combined so as to present the general notion of Subject and Predicate as an object of thought or perception (537).

The Accusative with the Infinitive is used
1. In Exclamations:
   Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, stō vexāri! Hem, light of my eyes, for you to be so harassed now, Terentia dear. (The idea of) you(r) being so harassed! So in idiomatic English, Me write!
2. As an Object. (See 527.)
3. As a Subject. (See 535.)

Remark.—The Infinitive was originally a Dative-Locative, but almost every syntactical trace has vanished, and practically it has become an Accusative Neuter.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE LOCAL OBJECT.

Terminal Accusative.

342. The Accusative of the Local Object, Whither commonly takes a preposition, such as: in, into; ad, to; versus, -ward:

In Graeciam proficisci, to set out for Greece.

Remarks.—1. The omission of the preposition, except as below stated, is poetical: Italianam vēnit. Ver. He came to Italy.
2. Names of Towns and Smaller Islands are put in the Accusative of the place Whither? without a preposition. So also rūs, into the country; domum, domīs, home.
   For further explanations, see 410.
**DATIVE WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS.**

**DATIVE.**

343. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object, and always implies an object effected which may be contained in the verb or expressed.

Nēmō errat ūni sibi. **Sen.** _No one errs (makes mistakes) to, for himself alone._

Fortūna multis dat nimis, satis nullī. **Mart.** _Fortune to many gives too much, enough to none._

**REMARKS.**—1. In English the form of the Indirect Object is the same as that of the Direct: "He shewed me (Dat.) a pure river;" He shewed me (Acc.) to the priest. Originally a case of Personal Interest, it is used freely of Personified Things, sparingly of Local Relations, and this despite the fact that Locative and Dative are blended in the First and Third Declensions.

2. When parts of the body and the like are involved, the English possessive is often a convenient though not an exact translation.

Tuō virō occūl dolent. **Ter.** _Your husband's eyes ache._ Nearer: _Your husband has a pain in the eyes._ Tuī virī occūl _Your husband's eyes._

**DATIVE WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS.**

344. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with Transitive verbs, which already have a Direct Object in the Accusative. Translation, _to, for, from._ This Accusative becomes the Nominative of the Passive.

**Active Form:**

To: Facile omnēs, cum valēmus, recta consilia aegrotis damus. **Ter.** _Readily all of us, when well, give good counsel to the sick._

For: Frangam tonsōri crūra manūsque simul. **Mart.** _I'd break the barber's legs for him and hands at once._

From: Somnum mīhi adēmit. **Cic.** _It took my sleep away from me._

**Passive Form:**

Perpetuum nullī datur ūsus. **Hor.** _Perpetual enjoyment (of a thing) is given to no one._

Immeritis franguntur crūra caballīs. **Juvi.** _The innocent horses get their legs broken for them._

Arma adimuntur militibus. **Liv.** _The soldiers have their arms taken from them._

Domus pulchra dominīs aedificātur non mūribus. **Cic.** _A handsome house is built for its owners, not for the mice._

**REMARKS.**—1. **For** is nearer the Dative than **To;** but for (in defence of) is prō: prō patriā mori, to die for one's country. **To** (with a view to) is ad or in, and when the Idea of motion is involved the preposition must be used, even with dare, which gives its name to the Dative:
DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

345. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative with many Intransitive Verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding, such as: prōdēsse, to do good; nocēre, to do harm; indulgēre, to give up; cedere, to yield; servire, to be a slave; pārēre, oboedīre, to be obedient; crēdere, to lend belief; ignōscere, to grant forgiveness; placēre, to give pleasure; imperāre, to give orders; resistere, to make resistance.

Ne pōsunt dominō quae prōsunt omnibus artēs. Ov. And the arts which do good to all do none to their master.

Verba nōbis magis nocent, minus prōsunt nostra quam aliēna. Quint. Our own words do us more harm (and) less good than the words of others.

Indulsa lacrimās. Ov. She gave free course to her tears.

Turpe servire puellae. Ov. It is disgraceful to play the slave to a girl.

Tāne cōde mālis. Verg. Yield not thou to misfortunes.

Mundus deō pāret et huic oboedīunt maria terraeque. Cic. The universe is obedient to God, and seas and lands hearken unto him.

Nimium nō crēde colōri. Verg. Trust not complexion all too much.
DATIVE.

Ignōse timōri. Prop. Grant pardon to my fear. (Be to my fear as if you knew it not.)

Cui placeō próthinus ipsa placet. Ov. The girl I please straight pleases herself.

Reliquum est ut tūte tibi imperēs. Cic. It remains that you give orders to yourself (have absolute command over yourself).

Arbor resistit ventis. Ov. The tree offers resistance to the winds.

REMARKS.—1. Among the most notable exceptions are: aequāre, to be equal; de cēre (to distinguish), to be becoming; dāscere, to be wanting; juvāre, to be a help; jubēre, to order; and vetēre, to forbid, which take the Accusative:

Eam pictūram imitātī sunt multi, aequāvīt nēmo. Plin. That style of painting many have imitated, none equalled.

Forma virōs neglecta decet. Ov. A careless beauty is becoming to men.

Mē diēs dēficiat. Cic. The day would fail me.

Fortēs fortūna adjuvat. Ter. Fortune favors the brave.

On jubeo and veto see 424, R. 3. Fido and confido take the Ablative as well as the Dative.

2. The Dative use is often obscured by the absence of etymological translation. So nubere alicui, to marry a man (to veil for him); medēri alicui, to heal (to take one’s measures for) a man; supplicio, I beg (I bow the knee to); persuādeo, I persuade (I make it sweet).

3. The novice is again reminded that the passives of these verbs are used impersonally:

Quī invident agent, illī quibus invidētur rem habent. Plaut. Those who envy are the needy, those who are envied have the stuff.

DATIVE AND VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

346. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions

.ad, ante, con, in, inter,
.ob, post, prae, sub and super,

take the Dative, especially in moral relations.

Transitive Verbs have an accusative case besides.

Pēlopidas omnibus periculīs adfuit. Nep. Pelopidas was present (to help) in all dangers.

Virtūs omnibus rōbus antēit. Plaut. Virtue goes before all things.

Non omnis aestās, Lūde, lūdō convēnit. Plaut. Not every age, (good) Lydus (Playfair), sorts with play.

At lupus et turpēs instant morientibus ursī. Ov. But the wolf and foul bears press the dying hard.

Probās invidēt nēmini. Cic. The upright man (looks hard at) envies no one.
Aristides was engaged in the naval battle off Salamis.

Obstit principis. Ov. Oppose the beginnings.

Hannibal Alexander Magnō non postpōnendus est.
Hannibal is not to be put below Alexander the Great.

Omnibus Druidibus praeest ūnus. Caes. At the head of all the
Druids is one man.

Blanda quēs victis ērētibus subēpsit ocellis. Ov. Caressing
sleep crept stealthily over her vanquished eyes.

Miseris succurrere discō. Verg. I learn to succor the wretched.

Anatum ōva gallinīs saepe suppōninimus. Cic. We often put
ducks’ eggs under hens (for them to hatch).

Lucumo superfuit patri. Liv. Lucumo survived his father.

So with Transitive Verbs, compounded with dē and ex.

Caesar Dejotarō tetrarchiam ēripuit, eīdemque dēstraxīt
Armeniam. Cic. Caesar wrested from Dejotarus his tetrarchy, and stripped
from him Armenia.

REMARKS.—1. When the local signification preponderates, the preposition is repeated
with its proper case:

Ad haeret nāvis ad scopulum, the ship sticks to the rock.

Ajax incubuit in gladium. Ajax fell on his sword.

Congredi cum hoste, to engage the enemy.

Dēstraō ēnulum dē digitō, to draw a ring from one’s finger.

The tendency in later Latin is to neglect this distinction, which even in the best period
is not rigidly observed. Compounds with cum (con-) commonly repeat the preposition:
always communicaōre aliqūid cum aliqūō, to communicate something to a man
(share it with him).

The analogy of this class of verbs, which imply Nearness, is followed in poetry and
later prose by haerōc, miscēco, jungō, and others.

Haerōt latēlis arundō. Vīna. Sticks to the side the lethal shaft.

Quod haerērē in equō senex posset (542) admīrāri solēbānus. Cic. We used
to wonder that the old man could stick to his horse.

Miscē stultitiam consiliō brevem. Hor. Mix with sense a little nonsence (add
to sense a little spice of nonsence).

Nōn potest amor cum timōre miscēri. Sen. Love cannot mingle with fear.

Jungitur Ursidō. Juv. She is yoked to Orion.

Junctus is found in Cicero with the Dative.

VERBS WITH ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

347. Some verbs are construed both with the Accusative and
with the Dative.

Sometimes there is hardly an appreciable difference; sometimes the
Dative emphasizes the personal relation.

Comitor aliquem, I accompany a man; comitor alicul, I act as com-
panion to a man; adúlor, generally Accusative, I fawn on; aemulor, I rival, I am a rival; praestólor, I wait for.

Sometimes the difference follows naturally from the difference of case:

Cavère alicui, to take precautions for; aliquem, against some one.

Quique aliís cāvit nōn cāvet ipsi sibi. Ov. (298.)
Hic niger est, hunc tú, Rōmāne, cavētō. Hor. He is a black fellow; against him be thou on thy guard, oh Roman!

Metuere alicui, to fear for; aliquem, to dread some one.

So all Verbs of Fearing.

Consulere alicui, to take measures for, consult the interest of some one; aliquem, to consult

Conventere alicui, to be suitable for some one; aliquem, to meet

Moderāri { alicui ref, to moderate
Temperāre { to set bounds to a matter.

aliquid, to manage

To be noticed are the constructions of invideo, I envy.

Invidēre alicui aliquid (Cic.) to begrudge a man a thing.

(in) aliquā rē

alicījus ref (once in Horace).

alicījus alicui ref, to envy something belonging to a man.

Nōn invidērunt laudēs suās mulieribus virī Rōmānī. Liv. The men of Rome did not begrudge the women the honors that were due them.

Invidet igne rogī miseris. Lucan. Begrudges the hapless men the funeral fire.

Vacāre ref { to be at leisure for
   to attend to a matter.

Vacāre rē, ā rē, to be at leisure from

DATIVE WITH VERBS OF GIVING AND PUTTING.

348. A few verbs, chiefly of Giving and Putting, take a Dative with an Accusative, or an Accusative with an Ablative, according to the conception.

Dōno tibi librum, I present (to) you a book.
Dōno tē librō, I present you with a book.
Circumdo urbi mūrum, I put round the city a wall.
urbem mūro, I surround the city with a wall.

So also aspergere, to besprinkle and to sprinkle on; impertire, to endow
and to give; induere, to clothe and to put on; exuere, to strip of and to strip off; miscere, to mix and to mix in.

DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.

349. Esse, to be, with the Dative, denotes an inner connection between its subject and the Dative, and is commonly translated by the verb to have:

Mihi est amicus, I have a friend.
An nescis longas regibus esse manus? Ov. Or perhaps you do not know that kings have long arms?

Remarks.—1. The predicate of esse with the Dative is translated in the ordinary manner:

Caesar amicus est mihi, Caesar is a friend to me (amicus meus, my friend, friend of mine).

2. The Dative is never simply equivalent to the Genitive. The Dative is the Person interested in the Possession, hence the Possession is emphatic; the Genitive characterizes the Possession by the Possessor, hence the Possessor is emphatic.

Latini concédunt Rōmam caput Latō esse. Liv. The Latins concede that Latium has its capital in Rome. (Latīn: that Latium's capital was Rome.)

3. On the attraction of the Dative with nomen esse (392).

4. The possession of qualities is expressed by in and the Ablative or some other turn:

In Cicerōne magna fuit eloquentia, Cicero had great eloquence.
Cimon habēbat satis eloquentiae. Nef. Cimon had eloquence enough.

DATIVE OF THE OBJECT FOR WHICH.

350. Certain verbs take the Dative of the Object for Which (to what end), and often at the same time a Dative of the Personal Object For Whom, or To Whom, as in the legal phrase, cui bonō? To whom is it (for) an advantage? = who is advantaged?*

Nimia fiducia magnae calamitātī solet esse. Nef. Excessive confidence is usually a great calamity.

Virtūs sōla neque datur dōnō neque accipitur. Sall. Virtue alone is neither given nor taken as a present.

Paupertās prōbrō habērī coepit. Sall. Poverty began to be held (as) a disgrace.


Vitiō mihi dant quod hominis necessāriō mortem graviter fero.

* Such verbs are: esse, to be; fieri, to become, to turn out; dare, to put; mittēre, to send; accipere, to receive; venire, to come; relinquare, to leave; habēre, to hold; vertere, to interpret; dācere, to count, and the like.
DATIVE.

Matius ap. Cic. They charge it to me as a fault that I resent the murder of one so near to me.

Caesar receptum cani jussit. Caes. Caesar ordered a retreat to be sounded.

Remark.—The origin of this usage seems to be mercantile (Key). In English we treat Profit and Loss as persons.

Quem fors diærum cumque dabit lucrum appone. Hor. “Every day that Fate shall give, set down to Profit.”

On the Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive in a similar sense, see 430.

ETHICAL DATIVE.

351. The Ethical Dative indicates special interest in the action. It may be called the Dative of Feeling, and its use in Latin (and Old English) is confined to the personal pronouns.

Tū mihi Antonī exemplō istius audāciam dēfendis? Cic. Do you defend me (to my face) by Antony’s example that fellow’s audacity?

Ecce tibi Sēbōnus! Cic. Here’s your Sebōnus! “She’s a civil modest wife, one (I tell you) that will not miss you morning nor evening prayer.”—Shakespeare.

Et quōcunque meō fēcisti nōmine versūs, ūre mihi, laudēs dēsine habēre mēs. Prop. And whatever verses you have made on my account, burn them me (I beg); cease to keep praises of me.

Remark.—Especially to be noted is sibi velle, to want, to mean: Quid tibi vīs, mulier? Hor. What do you want, woman? Quid sibi vult hæc ėrōtio? What does this speech mean?

DATIVE OF THE AGENT.

352. The Dative is used with Passive Verbs, in prose chiefly with the Perfect Passive, to show the interest which the agent takes in the result. That the person interested is the agent is only an inference. (See 206.)

Rēs mihi tōta prōvisa est. Cic. I have had the whole matter provided for.

Carmina scripta mihi sunt nūlla. Ov. I have no poems written, (therefore) have written no poems.

Remark.—Instances of this Dative with the Tenses of continuance are poetical, or admit of a different explanation:

Barbarus hic ego sum quia nōn intellegor ullī. Ov. I am a barbarian here because I can’t make myself understood to any one.

Whenever an Adjective or an equivalent is used, the Dative Plural may be an Ablative:

Sic dissimilium bestiōs communīte cibus queritur. Cic. So, though these little creatures are so very unlike, their food is sought in common.
Carmina quae scribuntur aquae potoribus. Hor. Poems which are written when people are water-drinkers.

Cena ministratur pueros tribus. Hor. Dinner is served, (the waiters being) the waiters are (but) three.

353. The agent of the Gerund and Gerundive is put in the Dative.

Hoc mihi faciendum est, I have this to be done (this is to be done by me, I must do this).

Est mala sed cunctis ista terenda via, Prop. That is a bad road, but one all have to travel.


Compare the Dative with verbals in -bilis: mihi amabilis, lovable in my eyes.

Remark.—When the verb itself takes the Dative, the Ablative with ab (א) is employed for the sake of clearness:

Civibus a vobis consulendum. Cic. The interest of the citizens must be consulted by you.

Where there is no ambiguity there is no need of ab.

Linguae moderandum est tibi. Plaut. You must put bounds to your tongue.

DATIVE OF PARTICIPLES.

354. Datives of Participles are used as predicative attributes.

Phaselis conspicitur prima terrarum Rhodium à Ciliciâ petentibus. Liv. Phaselis is the first land sighted as you make for Rhodes from Cilicia (to people as they make for Rhodes).

In universum aestimanti (= Si aestimēs) plus penes peditem rōboris. Tac. If you look at it as a whole, there is more real strength in the infantry.

Remark.—Notice the Greekish phrase: mihi volenti est, I am willing for it to be so.

DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE SUBSTANTIVES.

355. A few derivative substantives take the Dative of their primitives:

Jūstitia est obtemperatio lēgibus. Cic. Justice is obedience to the laws.

Remark.—Otherwise the Dative must have a verb to produce the Object Effected.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

356. Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, Nearness, and the like, with their opposites, take the Dative:
Rāra avis in terris nigrōque simillima cygnō. Juv. A rare bird in this world, and very like a black swan.

Non ego sum laudī non nātus idōneus armīs. Prop. I am not fitted by nature for glory, not fitted for arms.

Utilis urbi. Hor. Useful to the city.

Amica lūtō sus. Hor. A hog, devoted to the mire.

Semper, tū scito, flamma fūmō est proxima. Plaut. Bear thou in mind, that fire is aye next door to smoke.

Testis id dict quod illī causae maximē est aliēnum. Cic. The witness says what is especially damaging to that case (side).

Remarks.—1. Many adjectives which belong to this class become substantives, and as such are construed with the Genitive: amīcus, friend; affīnis, connection; aequālis, contemporary; aliēnus, foreign, strange; cognātus, kinsman; commūnis, common; contrārus, opposite; pār, match; proprius, pecūliāris, own, peculiar; similis, like; (“we ne'er shall look upon his like again”), especially of gods and men; sacer, set apart, sacred; superstes, survivor.

Domini similis es. Ter. You are like your master.

Virtūte sis pār dispār fortūnis patris. Attīus. Be thou thy father’s match in valor, not in luck.

2. The object toward which is expressed by the Accusative with in, ērgā, adversus:

Manlius fuit severus in filium. Cic. Manlius was severe toward his son.

Mē esse scit ērgā sē benevolum. Plaut. He knows that I am kindly disposed toward him.

Adversus dēs immortāles implī judicandī sunt. Cic. They are to be judged impious toward the immortal gods.

3. The object for which may be expressed by the Accusative with ad, to:


This is the more common construction with adjectives of fitness.

4. Proprius, nearer, proximus, next, are construed also (like ē prope, near) with the Accusative and the Ablative with āb, off:

Proprius est fidem, it is nearer belief, i. e., more likely.

Quī tē proximus est, he who is next to you.

Proximus a tectis ignis dēfenditur aegrō. Ov. A fire next door is kept off with difficulty (is hard to keep off).

5. Aliēnus, foreign, strange, is also construed with the Ablative, with or without āb (§):

Homō sum, hūmānī nihil sō me aliēnum puto. Ter. I am a man, and nothing that pertains to man do I consider foreign to me.

6. In poetry, Idem, the same, is often construed after the analogy of the Greek, with the Dative.

Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti. Hor. (296, R. 1.)

7. Derived adverbs take the Dative.

II. INTERNAL CHANGE.

GENITIVE.

357. The Genitive Case is the Case of the Complement, and is akin to the Adjective with which it is often parallel. It is the substantive form of the Specific Characteristic.
The chief English representatives of the Genitive are:
The Possessive case:
**Domus rēgis**, the king's palace.
The Objective case with of:
**Domus rēgis**, the palace of the king.
Substantives used as adjectives or in composition:
**Arbor abletis**, fir-tree.

**Remarks.**—1. Other prepositions than of are not unfrequently used, especially with the Objective Genitive. (361, R. 1.)

**Patriae quis exul sē quoque fūgit?** Hor. What exile from his country ever fled himself as well?
**Bōrōrum triumphi spēm collāgae rēlīquit.** Liv. He left the hope of a triumph over the Boii to his colleague.
**Via mortis.** Liv. The death-path, the way to death. Elsewhere: **via ad mortem**.

2. An abstract Noun with the Genitive is often to be translated as an attribute:
**Vĕrnī temporis suāvitās**, the sweet spring-time.
And, on the other hand, the predicative attribute is often to be translated as an abstract noun with of:
**Ante Rōmam condītam**, before the founding of Rome. (394, R. 3.)
Notice also **hīc metus**, this fear = fear of this, and kindred expressions.

358. The Genitive is employed:
I. and II. Chiefly as the complement of Nouns Substantive and Adjective.
III. Occasionally as the complement of Verbs.

**Remark.**—The Locative of the Second Declension coincides in form with the Genitive, and is generally treated under the head of the Genitive. (See 412.)

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

ADNOMINAL GENITIVE.

**Appositive Genitive, or Genitive of Specification.**

359. The Genitive is sometimes used to specify the contents of generic words instead of Apposition in the same case:

**Vitium nimiae tarditātīs.** Quint. The fault of excessive slowness.
**Virtūs continentiae.** Cic. The virtue of self-control.

So especially with **vōx**, expression; **nōmen**, name; **verbum**, word, verb: **vōx voluptātīs**, the word "pleasure;" **nōmen rēgis**, the name or title of king.

**Sulla nōmen Fēlicis assumpsit.** Vell. Sulla assumed the surname (of) "the Lucky."
REMARK.—So also occasionally other words, such as:
Urbs Rōmae, the city of Rome.
Arbor abietis, fir-tree.
Sprētae injūria formae. Vexae. The insult of despised beauty.

POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.

Genitive of Property.

360. The Possessive Genitive is the substantive form of an adjective attribute with which it is often parallel:

Domus rēgis = domus rēgia, the palace of the king, the king’s palace =
the royal palace.

REMARKS.—1. The adjective form is often preferred. So always with the possessive pronoun: amīcus menus, a friend of mine; canis allēmus, a strange dog, another man’s
dog; filius herellis, master’s son. So of cities: Thalēs Milēsius, Thales of Mileth.
2. The attention of the student is called to the variety of forms which possession may
take. Status Myrōnis, Myron’s statue, may mean: 1. A statue which Myron owns;
2. Which Myron has made; 3. Which represents Myron.
3. Observe the brief expressions: Ventum erat ad Vestae, We (they) had come to
Vesta’s (i.e., temple, aedem); Hasdrubal Glagōnis, Gisco’s Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal
Gisco’s son (as it were, Hasdrubal O’Gisco); Flaccus Claudii, Claudius’s Flaccus =
Flaccus the slave or freedman of Claudius.
4. The chorographic (geographic) Genitive is rare and late:

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE GENITIVE.

361. When the Substantive on which the Genitive depends contains the idea of an action, the possession may be active or
passive. Hence the division into
1. The Active or Subjective Genitive: amor Del, the love of
God, the love which God feels (God loves).
2. Passive or Objective Genitive: amor Del, love of God, love
toward God (God is loved).

REMARKS.—1. The English form in of is used either actively or passively: the love of
women. Hence, to avoid ambiguity, other prepositions than of are often substituted for
the Passive Genitive, such as for, toward, and the like. So, also, sometimes in Latin:
Voluntās provinciae ergā Caesarem, the good-will of the province toward Caesar.
Odium in hominem universum genus, Hate toward all mankind.
2. Both Genitives may be connected with the same Substantive:
Quanta sit avidītās hominum tālis victōriās scio. Cic. How great the eagerness
of men for such a victory is, I know.

362. The Genitive of the Personal Pronouns, except nōstrum
and vestrum, is used as the Passive Genitive:
Amor mei, love to me.
Désiderium tuum, longing for thee.
Memoria nostræ, memory of us (our memory).

Remark.—Nostrum and vestrum are used as Partitive Genitives:
Magna pars nostrum, a great part of us; uterque vestrum, either (both) of you.
Nostrî melior pars means the better part of our being, our better part.
With omnium, the forms nostrum and vestrum must be used.

363. The Possessive Pronoun is generally used as the Active Genitive.

Amor meus, my love (the love which I feel).
Désiderium tuum, your longing (the longing which you feel).
Additional attributives are put in the Genitive:
Hoc negotium meâ ipsius (solius, unius) operâ perfectum est. This business was finished by my exertions alone.

Remark.—Occasionally, however, in Latin, as in English, the Possessive Pronoun is used passively: désiderium tuum, longing for thee; injuria tua, your wrong (“The deep damnation of his taking off”).

GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

364. The Genitive of Quality must always have an Adjective or its equivalent:

Tridui via. Caes. A three days’ journey.
Non multî cibi hospitem accipies, multî joci. Cic. You will receive a guest who is a small eater but a great joker.

Remark.—The Genitive of Quality is less common than the Ablative, being found chiefly of the essentials. The Genitive always of Number, Measure, Time, Space; the Ablative always of externals, so of parts of the body. Often the use seems indifferent. (409.)

GENITIVE AS A PREDICATE.

365. The Genitives of Possession and Quality may be used as Predicates:

Domus est regis, the house is the king’s.
Vir est magni ingenii, the man is (one) of great genius.

Remarks.—1. The Possession appears in a variety of forms, and takes a variety of translations:
Hujus erō vivus. mortuus hujus erō. Pnpr. Hers I shall be, living; dead, hers I shall be.
Omnia quae mulieris fuerunt viri sunt. Cic. *All that was the wife’s (property) becomes the husband’s.*

Is [Herculis] diebātūr esse Myrōnis. Cic. *That (statue of Hercules) was said to be Myron’s (work).*

Nōlē senātūs Rōmānorum, plēbs Hannibalis erat. Liv. *At Nola the senate was (on the side) of the Romans, the common folk (on) Hannibal’s.*

Damnātio est jūdicum, paena lēgis, Condemning is the judges’ (business), punishment the law’s.

Est animi ingenii cōn multum dēbēs eōdem plūrimum velle dēbēre. Cic. *It shows the feeling of a gentleman to be willing to owe very much to him whom you already owe much.*

Pauperis est numerāre pecūs. *‘Tis only the poor man that counts his flock (‘Tis the mark of a poor man to count the flock).*

Stultitiae est, it is folly; Mōris est, it is customary.

So also with facere, to make (cause to be): Rōmānæ dicōnis facere, to bring under the Roman sway.

2. In the Third Declension of the Adjective, the Genitive is the usual form:

Amentis est superstitione praesumptūrum contra rationem causae trahe. QUINT. *It is madness to let oneself be carried by a superstitious regard for rules counter to the requirements of the case.*

Sometimes the Nom. of the Third Declension is used in combination with the Nom. of the Second.

Pigrum et iners vidētur sūdōre adquirere quod possēs sanguine parēre. Tac. *It is thought slow and spiritless to acquire by sweat what you can get by blood.*

3. The same methods of translation apply to the Possessive Pronoun in the Predicate (‘Vengeance is mine’): meum est, it is my property, business, way.

Non est meum mentiri. Ter. *Lying is not my way (I do not lie).*

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

366. The Genitive stands for the Whole to which a Part belongs:

Magna vis militum, a great number of soldiers.
Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers.
It militum, those (of the) soldiers.
Fortissimi militum, the bravest (of the) soldiers.
Satis militum, enough (of) soldiers (soldiers enough).

367. The Partitive Genitive is used with substantives of Quantity, Number, Weight:

Modius tritici, a measure of wheat.
Libra farris, a pound of spelt.
Āla equitūm, a squadron of cavalry.

REMARK.—This is sometimes called the Genitivus Generis. Whether the conception be partitive or not, depends on circumstances.

Medimnus tritici, a medimnus of wheat may be a medimnus of wheat (Genitivus Generis) or a medimnus of wheat (Partitive).

368. The Partitive Genitive is used with numerals, both special and general:
Special:
Centum militum, a hundred (of the) soldiers, a hundred (of) soldiers.
(Centum militēs, a, the hundred soldiers.)
Quintus rēgum, the fifth (of the) king(s).
(Quintus rēx, the fifth king.)

General:
Multi militum, many of the soldiers, many soldiers.
(Multi militēs, many soldiers.)

Remarks.—1. The English language commonly omits the partition, unless it is especially emphatic:
   Quot civium adsunt? How many citizens are present? Quot civēs adsunt?
   How many are the citizens present?
2. When all are embraced, there is no partition:
   Nōs trecentī conjurāvimus, three hundred of us have bound ourselves by an oath.
   Amīcis quōs multōs habēt, friends whom he has in great number (of whom he has many).
   Quī omnēs, all of whom.
   Quot estis? How many are (there of) you?
   Here the English language familiarly employs the partition. Exceptions are very rare.
   On milīe and milīa, see 308.

369. The Partitive Genitive is used with Pronouns:
   It militum, those (of the) soldiers.
   It militēs, those soldiers.
   Illī Graecōrum, those (of the) Greeks.

370. The Partitive Genitive is used with Comparatives and Superlatives:

Prior hōrum. Līv. The former of these.
Rēgum ultimus ille bonōrum. Juv. The last of the good kings.

Remarks.—1. When there are only two, the comparative exhausts the degrees of comparison. (315.)
2. Uterque, either (both), is commonly used as an adjective with substantives: uterque consilium, either consilium = both consilia; as a substantive with pronouns: uterque hōrum, both of these.
3. On the concord of the Superlative see 202, R. 2.

371. The Partitive Genitive is used with the Neuter Singular of the following and kindred words, but only in the Nominative or Accusative:

tantum, so much, quantum, as (how much), aliquantum, somewhat.
multum, much, plūs, more, plārium, most.
paulum, little, minus, less, minimum, least.
satis, enough, parum, too little, nihil, nothing.
hoc, this, id, illud, istud, that, idem, the same.
quod and quid, which and what? with their compounds.
Carnis plūs habet Aeschines, minus lacertōrum. Quint. Aeschines has more flesh, less muscle.

Cimōn habēbat satis eloquentiās. Nep. (349, R. 4.)

Surgit amāri aliquid, quod in ipsis flōribus angat. Lucr. Uprises something bitter to choke us amid the very flowers.

Nihil reliqui facere. 1. To leave nothing (not a thing). 2. (Occasionally), to leave nothing undone.

Remarks.—1. The conception is often not so much partitive as characteristic. As we say: Scalus puer ēs. Plaut. You are a rascal of a boy—where the boy is the rascal, so Quodcumque hoc regnī. Verg. This realm, what (little) there is of it (what little realm I have).

2. Neuter Adjectives of the Second Declension can be treated as substantives in the Genitive; not so Adjectives of the Third, except in combination with Adjectives of the Second: aliquid bonum, or bonī, something good; aliquid memorābile, something memorable; aliquid bonī et memorābiles, something good and memorable.

Vixque tenet lacrimās quia nīl la c rī mā bīle cernit. Ov. And scarce restrains her tears, because she desiers naught to shed tears for.

3. The partitive construction is not admissible with a preposition: ad tāntum studium, to so much zeal. (Exceptions are late: ad multum diēf. far into the day.)

4. The Partitive Genitive is also used with Adverbs of Quantity, Place, Extent: ar-mōrum affectum, abundance of arms; ubi terrārum, gentium, where in the world? huc, eō arrogantiās processit, he got to this, that pitch of presumption. (Later Latin, tūm temporis, at that time). Notice especially the phrase: quod sūs facere possum, as far as I can do so.

5. Instead of the Partitive Genitive with Numerals, Pronouns, Comparatives, and Superlatives, the Ablative may be employed with ex out of, dē, from (especially with proper names and singulaires), or the Accusative with inter, among: Gallus prōvocat finum ex Rōmānis, The Gaul challenges one of the Romans; finus dē multis, one of the many (the masses); Croesus inter rēgēs opulentissimus, Croesus, wealthiest of kings; (but in a series: quōrum finus, alter, tertius).

6. On theAttribute used partitively, see 287, R.

7. Qualitative Adjectives are combined with the Genitive in later Latin:

Dēgenerēs canum cāndam sub alvum flectunt. Plin. Curious dogs curl the tail up under the belly.

In poetry and silver prose the Neuter of Qualitative Adjectives is frequently used before the Genitive:

Ardua dūm metuunt sēmittunt vēra viāl. (27, R. 1.) Lucr. The white they fear the steeper road, they miss the true.

So amāra cūrārum, bitter elements of cares, bitter cares; strāta viārum, strātae viāe, the paved streets.

8. The Partitive Genitive as a Predicate is Greekish:

Fīsīn nōbitium tū quoque fontium. Hor. Thou too shalt count among the famous fountains.

Genitive with Prepositional Substantives.

372. Causā, grātiā, ergō, and instar, are construed with the Genitive:

Causā and grātiā, for the sake, commonly follow the Genitive. So also
ergō, on account (in old formulae). Instar is an old Accusative, as it were, an “instead.”

Sophistae quae stūs causā philosophābantur. Cic. The professors of wisdom dealt in philosophy for the sake of gain.

Tū mē amōris magis quam honoris servāvisti gratiā. Enn. Thou didst save me more for love’s sake than (thou didst) for honor’s sake.

Virtūs ergō, on account of valor.

Instar montis equus. Verg. A horse to stand in mountain’s stead (a horse that stood a mountain high).

Plato mihi ēnus instar est omnium. Cic. Plato by himself is in my eyes worth them all.

Remark.—So meā, tuē, suē causā, seldom gratiā.

II. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

373. Adjectives of Fulness, of Participation, and of Power, of Knowledge and Ignorance, of Desire and Disgust, take the Genitive:

Plēnus rīmārum, full of chinks (“a leaky vessel”).
Particeps cōnsilīt, a sharer in the plan.
Compos mentis, in possession of (one’s) mind.
Peritus belli, versed in war.
Cupidus gloriæ, grasping after glory.
Fastidiosus Latinārum literārum, too dainty for Latin.
Omnium rērum inscius, a universal ignoramus.
Oūr nōn ut plēnus vitae convivae recēdias? Luocr. (268.)
Sitque mēmor nōstri necne, referte mihi. Ov. (195, R. 7.)
Consca mens recti Pāmae mendacii rīsit. Ov. (339, R. 1.)
Agricolam laudat jūris lēgumque peritus. Hor. The husbandman’s lot is praised by the counsel learned in the law.
Vēnātor tenerae conjugi sēmemor. Hor. The hunter of his tender spouse unmindful.
Vis cōnsilī expers mâle ruit suā. Hor. Force void of counsel tumbles by its own mass.
Mentis inops gelidā formidīne lōrā remīsit. Ov. Senseless from chill fear, he let go the reins.

Remarks.—1. The following adjectives—refertus, stuffed; praeeditus, endowed; contentus, satisfied; frūtus, supported—show their participial nature by being constricted with the Ablative:

Vita referta bona, a life filled to overflowing with blessings.
Membris hīmāns esse praeeditum, to be endowed with human limbs.
Frūtus opulentūs, trusting in wealth.
Uxor contenta est quae bona est ūnū virū. Plaut. A wife who is good is contented with one husband.
GENITIVE.

2. Plenus, full, sometimes takes the Ablative:
   Maxima quaeque domus servis est plena superbis. Juv. Every great house is
   filled with overbearing slaves.

3. Dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy, are construed with the Ablative:
   Digne puere misèreiam. Hor. Boy worthy of a better flame.
   Vité tua dignior setás. Virg. Your age is worthier of life.
   The Genitive is rare.

4. Liber, free, and vacuus, empty, take the Ablative with or without ab (8) (388):
   Librum (vacuum) esse metu (et metu), to be free from (void of) fear.

5. On aliénus, strange, see 356, R. 5.
   On aequális, commúnis, conscient, contrárius, pár, similís, superstes, and the
   like, see 356, R. 1.

6. Verbs of Filling sometimes follow the analogy of plenus, full, and take the Geni-
   tive.

   Con ségere and indigére with the Gen., see 389, R. 2.
   The poets carry the analogy of Plenty and Want very far.
   Solidus operum. Hor. Looséd (released from) work.
   Thus the Genitive in poetry comes near the Ablative or Whence case:
   Désine mollium tandem queréllarum. Hor. Cease at last from womanish com-
   plainings.

GENITIVE WITH VERBALS.

374. Present Participles take the Genitive when they lose their verbal nature; and so do verbs in -áx in poetry and later prose:

   Epaminóndas adeó vérítáitis erat díligéns ut nē jocó quidem
   mentíeret. Nep. Epaminondas was so careful of the truth as not to tell lies
   even in jest.

   Omnium consensú capáx imperíí nisi imperásset. Tac. By general
   consent capable of empire, had he not become emperor.

REMARKS.—1. The participle is transient; the adjective permanent. The simple test
   is the substitution of the relative and the verb: amans (participle), loving (who is lov-
   ing); amans (adjective), fond, (substantive), lover; patiens (part.), bearing (who is bear-
   ing); patiens (adjective), enduring, (substantive), a sufferer.

   2. In later Latin and in the poets almost all adjectives that denote an affection of the
   mind take a Genitive of the Thing to which the affection refers: aéger timóris, sick of
   ear; ambiguus cónsiliis, doubtful of purpose; vítae dubius, doubtful of life.
   Here model prose requires the Ablative or a Preposition.

   The analogy of these adjectives is followed by others, so that the Genitive becomes a
   complement to the adjective just as it is to the corresponding substantive.

   Integer vítae. Hor. Spotless of life; like Integritáés vítae. (Fámá et fortunís
   integer. Sall. In fame and fortunes intact.)

   3. The seat of the feeling is also put in the Genitive, chiefly with animé (which is
   suspected of being a Locative). Aéger animé, sick at heart, heart-sick; audáx ingeníí,
   daring of disposition.
III.—GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF MEMORY.

375. Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting, take the Genitive:

Tē veteris amicitiae commonēfacio. [Cic.] *I remind you of our old friendship.*

Est proprium stultitiaei aliōrum vitia cernere, oblivisci suōrum. *Cic.* The fact is, it shows a fool to have keen eyes for the faults of others, to forget one’s own.

Ipse jubes mortis tē meminisse Deus. MART. *God himself bids you remember death.*

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Reminding also take the Ablative with dē (so regularly moneo), and the Acc. Neut. of a Pronoun or Numerical Adjective:

Öro ut Terentiam moneāsīs dē testāmentō. *Cic.* *I beg you to put Terentia in mind of the will.*

Discipulōs id ūnum moneō. QUINT. (531, R. 3.)

2. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting also take the Accusative, especially of things:

Haec ālim meminisse juvābit. VERG. *To remember these things one day will give us pleasure.*

Dulce mortis reminiscitur Argōs. VERG. *Dying, he remembers sweet Argos.*

Obliviscī nihil solēs nīsī injūriās. *Cic.* You are wont to forget nothing except injuries.

Recordor (literally = *I bring to heart, to mind*) is commonly construed with the Acc.:

Et vocem Anchissae magnī vultumque recordor. VERG. *And I recall (call to mind) the voice and countenance of Anchises the Great.* With persons, dē:

Memint, *I bear in mind,* I (am old enough to) remember, takes the Accusative:

Antipatrum tū probē meministī. *Cic.* *You remember Antipater very well.*

3. Venit mihi in mentem, *it comes into (up to) my mind,* may be construed impersonally with the Genitive, or personally with a subject:

Venit mihi in mentem Platōnis. *Cic.* (or Plato.) *Plato rises before my mind’s eye.*

Certīōrem aliquem facere, *to inform,* follows the analogy of Verbs of Reminding.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

376. Misereor and miserescō, *I pity,* take the Genitive, and miseret, *it moves to pity,* paenitet, *it repents,* piget, *it irks,* pudet, *it makes ashamed,* taedet and pertaessum est, *it tires,* take the Accusative of the Person Who Feels, and the Genitive of the Exciting Cause:

Miserēre sorōris. VERG. *Pity thy sister!*

Suae quemque fortūnae paenitet. *Cic.* *Each man is discontented with his lot.*
Miseret tē alīorum, tuī tē nec miseret nec pudet. Plaut. You are sorry for others, for yourself you are neither sorry nor ashamed.

Pudet is also used with the Genitive of the Person whose Presence excites the shame:

Pudet deōrum hominumque. Liv. It is a shame in the sight of gods and men.

Remark.—These Impersonals can also have a subject, chiefly a Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun:

Nōn tē haec pudēt? Ter. Do not these things put you to the blush?

Other constructions follow from general rules:

Nōn mē paenitet vixisse. Cic. (640.)

Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit. Cic. Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.

Genitive with Judicial Verbs.

377. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the Charge:

Miltiadēs accūsātus est prōditōnis. Nep. Miltiades was accused of treason.

Cannensem exercitum quis pavōris insimulāre potest? Liv. Who can charge the army of Cannae with craven fear?

Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnāre, Cupīdo. Ov. Be slow to condemn thy hard crime, O Cupid!

Absolvere improbitātis, to acquit of dishonesty.

So also kindred expressions: reum facere, (to make a party) to indict, to bring an action against; sacrilegī compertum esse, to be found (guilty) of sacrilege.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Condemning and Acquitting take the Ablative as well as the Genitive of the Charge and the Punishment, and always the Ablative of the Fine:

Accūsāre capitis, or capite, to bring a capital charge.

Damnāre capitis, or capite, to condemn to death.

Damnāri decem milibus, to be fined 10,000.

Multāre, to mulet, is always construed with the Ablative:

Multāre pecūniā, to mulet in (of) money.

Manlius virtūtem filī morte multāvit. Quint. Manlius punished the valor of his son with death.

2. Most verbs belonging to this class take also instead of the Genitive the Ablative with dē: accūsāre dē vi, of violence (no Genitive); dē venēndō, of poisoning; dē rebus repetundis, of extortion.

3. Destination and Enforced Labor are expressed by ad or in: damnāri ad bestiās, to be condemned (to be thrown) to wild beasts; ad (in) metallā, to the mines; ad (in) opus publicum, to hard labor. Vōti damnāri, to be bound to fulfill a vow.

Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying.

378. Verbs of Rating and Buying are construed with the
Genitive of the general value or cost, and the Ablative of the particular value or cost. (404.)

Verbs of Rating are: aestimāre, to value; putāre, to reckon; dūcere, to take; habēre, to hold; pendere, to weigh; facere, to make, put; esse, to be (worth).

Verbs of Buying are: emere, to buy; vēndere, to sell; vēnis, to be for sale; stāre and constāre, to cost, to come to; prōstāre, licēre, to be exposed, left (for sale); condūcere, to hire; locāre, to let.

379. Verbs of Rating take:

| Magni, much,    | plūris, more,         | plūrimi, maxiōm, most.  |
| Parvi, little,  | minōris, less,        | minimi, least.          |
| Tanti, so much, | quanti, how much,     | nihilī, naught.          |

Equivalents of nihilī, nothing, are floccī, a lock of wool; naucī, a trifle, assis, a copper, and the like, and so also hūjus, that (a snap of the finger), with the negative, which is omitted only in the earlier times.

Tanti is often used in the sense of operaē pretium est = it is worth while.

Dum nē ob malefacta peream pārvt [id] aestimo. PLAUT. So long as I be not killed for my misdeeds little do I care.

Voluptātem virtūs minimi facit. CIC. Virtue makes little account of the pleasure of the senses.

Jūdicēs rempūblīcam flocoī nōn faciunt. CIC. The judges do not care a fig for the State.

Nōn habeo naucī Marsum augurem. ENNIUS. I do not value a Martian augur a baubee.

Est mihi tantī hūjus invidiae tempestātem subūre. CIC. It is worth while (the cost), in my eyes, to bear this storm of odium.

380. Verbs of Buying take tantī, quantī, plūris, and minōris. The rest are put in the Ablative:

Vēndo meum frūmentum nōn plūris quam cēterī, fortasse etiam minōris. CIC. I sell my corn not dearer than everybody else, perhaps even cheaper.

Magis illa juvant quae plūris emuntur. JUV. Things give more pleasure which are bought for more.

Emit Canīus hortōs tantī quantī Pythius voluit. CIC. Canīus bought the gardens at the price Pythius wanted.

Quantī cēnās? What do you give for your dinner?
Quantī habitās? What is the rent of your lodgings?

But:

Pārvō famēs cōnstat, magnō fastīdium. SEN. Hunger costs little, daintiness much.
GENITIVE.

REMARKS.—1. Aestimo is found with the Ablative as well as with the Genitive. So aestimare magnō and magnō, to value highly.

2. Observe the phrases: boni (aequī bonique) facio, boni consulo, I put up with, take in good part.

3. Bene emere, to buy cheap; bene venderē, to sell dear; male emere, to buy dear; male venderē, to sell cheap.

GENITIVE WITH INTEREST AND RĒFERT.

381. Interest and Rēfert take a Genitive of the Person, seldom of the Thing, concerned.

Clōdiī interest. Cic. It is Clodius's interest.

Rēfert compositiōnis quae quibus antepōnās. Quint. It is of importance for the arrangement of words, which you put before which.

Instead of the Genitive of the Possessive Pronouns the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessives is employed:

Meā interest, meā rēfert, I am concerned.

REMARKS.—1. Rēfert is commonly used absolutely, occasionally with meā, etc., seldom with the Genitive.

2. Instead of Apposition use the Relative:

Vehementer intereat vestrā, quī patrēsēs, libērōs vestrōs hīo potissimō discēre. Plin. Ep. It were vastly to the interest of you parents, that your children, if possible, were taught at home.

3. No satisfactory explanation has been given of this construction. Meā seems to be an adverbial form like quō, hāc, ea. (Madvig.)

382. 1. The Degree of Concern is expressed by an Adverb, Adverbial Accusative, or a Genitive of Value:

Multum (nihil) interest. It makes much (no) difference.

Quid interest? What difference does it make?

Magnī interest meā ānā nōs esse. Cic. It is of great importance to me that we be together.

2. The Object of Concern is commonly put in the Infinitive, Accusative and Infinitive, ut or nē, with the Subjunctive, or an Interrogative Sentence.

Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdiōm? Cic. What interest had Milo in Clodiōn's being killed.

Caesar dicere solēbat nōn tam suā quam reipūblicae interesse ut salvus esset. Suet. Caesar used to say that it was not of so much importance to him(self) as to the State that his life should be spared.

Vestrā interest nē imperātōrem pessimī faciant. Tac. It is to your interest that the dregs of creation do not make the emperor.
QUID REFERT TALEAS VERSUS QUAE VOCES LEGANTUR. JUV. WHAT MATTERS IT WHAT VOICE SUCH VERSES ARE RECITED WITH?

Occasionally by the Nominative of a Neuter Pronoun:
QUID (ACC.) TUA ID (NOM.) REFERE? TER. WHAT BUSINESS IS THAT OF YOURS?

3. The Thing Involved is put in the Acc. with ad:
MAGNI AD HONOREM NOSTRUM INTEREST QUAM PRIMUM NOS AD URBEM VENIRE. CIC. IT MAKES A GREAT DIFFERENCE TOUCHING OUR HONOR THAT WE SHOULD COME TO THE CITY AS SOON AS POSSIBLE.

ABLATIVE.

383. The Ablative is the Adverbial, as the Genitive is the Adjective case. It contains three elements:
A. Where?  B. Whence?  C. Wherewith?

In a literal sense, the Ablative is commonly used with Prepositions; in a figurative sense, it is commonly used without Prepositions.
A. The Ablative of the Place Where appears in a figurative sense as the Ablative of the Time When.
B. The Ablative of the Place Whence appears as:
1. The Ablative of Origin.
2. The Ablative of Measure.
C. The Ablative of the Thing Wherewith appears in a figurative sense, as:
1. The Ablative of Manner.
2. The Ablative of Quality.
3. The Ablative of Means.

Remark.—It is impossible to draw the line of demarcation with absolute exactness. So the Ablative of Cause may be derived from any of the three fundamental significations of the case, which is evidently a composite one.

To these we add:
D. The Ablative of Cause:
E. The Ablative Absolute.

I. THE LITERAL MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHERE.

Ablativus localis.

384. The Ablative answers the question WHERE? AND TAKES AS A RULE THE PREPOSITION IN:
In portō nāvigo. Ter. *I am sailing* in harbor.

Pons in Hībĕrō prope effectus erat. Caess. *The bridge over the Ebro* was nearly finished.

Histrio in scēnā est. Plaut. *The actor is on the stage.*

Haeret in equō senex. Cic. *The old man sticks to his horse.*

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Placing and kindred significations take the Ablative with in, to designate the result of the motion: pōnere, to place; collocāre, to put; statuere, constituere, to set; considiere, to settle; dēsigere, to plant; dēmergere, to plunge; imprimere, to press upon; inscribere, to write upon; incidere, to carve upon.

Plato ratiōnem in capite posuit. Iram in pectore locāvit. Cic. *Plato has put reason in the head, has placed anger in the breast.*

Lūcretia cultrum in orde dēsigit. Liv. *Lucretia plants a knife in* (thrusts a knife down into) *her heart.*

Philosophi in iis ipsis libris quōs scribunt dē contemnendā gloriā sua nōmina inscribunt. Cic. *Philosophers write their own names on* (the titles of) *the very books which they write about contempt of glory.*

Index inciduntur in aēneis tabulis. Suet. *An index is engraved on tablets of bronze.*

The same observation applies to sub:

Pōne sub currā nīminum propinquī sōlis in terrā domibus nēgātā. Hon. *Put (me) under the chariot of the all-too neighboring sun, in a land denied to dwellings.*

So humī, which is a *Where-case: humī prōsternere, to throw flat on the ground.*

2. The poets are free in omitting in, but regard must be had to 887.

3. On the Locative Ablative of Towns and Small Islands, see 412.

385. In citations from books and in enumerations, the Ablative of the Place Where is used without in:


Remark.—Locus, *place,* used metaphorically, generally omits in: hoc locū, in *this position, situation;* in hoc locō (or hoc locū), in *this place, part of the country.* Librō is used when the whole book, in librō, when merely a passage in the book, is devoted to the subject in hand.

386. In designations of place with tōtus, *whole,* and the like, the Ablative of the Place Where is generally used without in:

Menippus disertissimus tōtā Asiā fuit. *Menippus was the most eloquent man in all Asia* (Minor).

Battiaēs tōtō semper cantābitur orbe. Ov. *Battiades* (Callimachus) will always be sung throughout the world.

387. In all such Designations of Place as may be regarded in the light of Cause, Manner, or Instrument, the Ablative is used without a preposition:

Ut terrā Thermopylārum angustiae Graeciam ita marī fretum Euripī claudit. Liv. *As the pass of Thermopylae bars Greece by land, so the frith of Euripus by sea.*
Nemo ire quenquam publica prohibet vias. Plaut. No man forbiddeth (any one to) travel by the public road.
Matri cinerés Tiberi subvecti sunt. Suet. His mother's ashes were brought up by the Tiber.
Imperator milités (in) castris tenēbat (intrā castra). Caes. The general kept the soldiers in camp.
Recipere aliquem tectō, oppiāō, portā. To receive a man into one's house, town, harbor.

B.ABLATIVE OF THE PLACE WHENCE.

Ablātivus Sēparātivus.

388. The Ablative answers the question Whence? with or without the prepositions ex, out of, de, from, ab, off:

* Araneās dējiciam dē pariete. Plaut. I will get the cobwebs down from the wall.
* Non ex eō locō sed ab eō locō mē dējēcit. Cic. It was not out of that place, but from that place that he dislodged me.

The prepositions are omitted chiefly with Verbs of Abstaining, Removing, Relieving, and Excluding, but with Persons a preposition (chiefly ab) must be used.

Aliēnō manūs abstineat. Cato. Let him keep his hands from other people's property. But:
Alexander vix a sē manūs abstinuit. Cic. Alexander hardly kept (could hardly keep) his hands from himself (from laying hands on himself).
Populus Athēnēnsis Phōciōnem patriā petulit. Nep. The Athenian people drove Phocion from his country. But:
Illum aemulum ab eā pellito. Ter. Drive that rival from her.
Multōs fortūna liberat paenā, metū nēminem. Sen. Fortune rides many of punishment, none of fear. But:
Tē ab eō libero. Cic. I rid you of him.
Amicitia nullō locō exclūditur. Cic. Friendship is shut out from no place. But:
Ab illā exclūdor, hoc conclūdor. Ter. I am shut out from her (and) shut up here (to this, to live with her).
Alcibiadem Athēnēnsēs e civitāte expulērunt. Nep. The Athenians banished Alcibiades from the State.
Hannibal ex Italā dēcēdere coactus est. Cic. Hannibal was forced to withdraw from Italy.
ABLATIVE.

Crēde mihi, mōrēs distant ā carmine nostrō. Ov. Believe me, far my conduct differs from my song.
Consulēs sē abdīcant magistrātū. Cic. The consuls abdicate their office.

So also kindred Adjectives:

Animus excelsus omni est liber cūrā. Cic. A lofty mind is free from all care.
Cato, omnibus hūmānīs vitīs immūnis, semper fortūnam in suā potestāte habuīt. Vell. Cato, exempt from all human failings, always had fortune in his own power.

Remarks.—1. Compounds with di (dis) also take the Dative (in poetry):

Paulum sepultae distat inertiae cēlēta virtūs. Hor. Little doth hidden worth differ from buried sloth.

2. The Place Whence takes the point of view from which. In English a different translation is often given, though not always necessarily: a tergo, in the rear; ex parte dextrā, on the right side; ab oriente, on the east; ā tantō spatīo, at such a distance; ex fugā, on the flight; ā re frumentāriā labōrāre, to be embarrassed in the matter of provisions.

3. The poets are free in the use of the Ablative as a Whence-case without a preposition. On the difference of conception between Dative and Ablative, see 344, R. 2. On the Genitive, see 378, R. 6.

4. On the Ablative as a Whence-case in Names of Towns and Small Islands, see 411.

389. Verbs of Depriving and Filling, of Plenty and Want, take the Ablative:

Democritus dicitur oculis sē privāsse. Cic. Democritus is said to have deprived himself of his eyes.

Deus bonis omnibus explēvit mundum. Cic. God has filled the universe with all blessings.

Abundant dulcibus vitīs. Quint. They abound in charming faults.

Nōn caret effectū quod voluēre duō. Ov. What two have resolved on never lacks execution.

Amor vacat metū. Ov. Love is void of fear.

Sapiens eget nullā rē. Sen. The sage stands in need of nothing.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Filling are commonly referred to the Instrumental Ablative rather than to the Ablative of the Source, and are put here for convenience of contrast. But observe that in the classic tongues the construction of opposites is identical.

2. Egeo and (more frequently) indigeo also take the Genitive.

Nōn tam artīs indigent quam labōris. Cic. They are not so much in need of skill as of industry.

3. Adjectives of Plenty and Want take the Genitive, but some of them follow the analogy of the verb (373, R. 1):

Pollicitās dives quilibet esse potest. Ov. Anybody can be rich in promises.

Amor et melle et sōlē est fōundissimus. Plaut. Love is very fruitful both in honey and in gall (of acrimony).
390. Opus and Úsus take the Dative of the Person who Wants and the Ablative of the Thing Wanted; but the Thing Wanted may be the subject and opus the predicate:

Opus est mihi librō, librīs, I want a book, books.
Liber mihi opus est, a book is a want to me (is what I want).
Librī mihi opus sunt, books are a want to me (are what I want).
Quid opus est speculō tibi? Plaut. What do you want to do with a mirror?
Emās nōn quod opus est sed quod nescieś est; quod nōn opus est asse cārum est. Cato. Buy not what you want, but what is absolutely needful; what you do not want (have no use for) is dear at a penny.

So with the Perfect Participle Passive:

Quod parātō opus est parā. Ter. What must be got ready, get ready.
Vicinō opus est convénētō. Plaut. The neighbor must be called on.
Úsus est pecūnīā or pecūnīā. Plaut. Money is wanted (is, would be (246, R. 1) useful).
Nōn factō est ūsus. Plaut. It were better let alone.

REM.ark.—This construction belongs to the Instrumental, and is put here for convenience of reference:

Opus est, there is work to be done with.
Úsus est, there is making use of (like ātor, 405).
The Genitive is of rare occurrence. Other constructions are the Infinitive and ut.
The Neneter Accusative is often adverbial (331, R. 3):

Quid (Acc.) digitōs opus est graphiō lassāre tenēndō? Ov. What is the use of tiring the fingers by holding the stylus?
Opus est tā animō valēre ut corpore possīs. Cic. You must be well in mind in order to be well in body.
An culquām est ūsus homīnī sē ut cruciēt? Ter. Of what good is it to any man to torture himself?

C. ABLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātivus Sociātivus.

391. The Ablative of Attendance takes the preposition cum, with:

Cum baculō pērāque senex. Mart. An old man with stick and wallet.
Neō tēcum possēm vīvere nec sīne tā. Mart. I can’t live either with you or without you.

Rem.arks.—1. In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the Ablative, with or without cum; generally without cum when an adjective is used (Ablative of Manner), with cum when no adjective is used (Ablative of Attendance):

Rēx Helēspontum cum exercītum transit, The king crossed the Hellespont with an army.
Ablative.

Dictator (sum) ingenti exercitu ab urbe profectus est. The dictator set out from the city with a great army.

2. Not to be confounded with the above is the Instrumental Ablative:

Nāvibus proficiē, to set out by ship.

So also with verbs which denote other military actions:

Hostes sagittāris et funditōribus terrēbat, he was frightening the enemy with archers and slingers.


Nil actum est nisi Poeno mīlitēs portās frangimus. Juv. Naught is accomplished unless we break the gates with the Punic soldiery (as if with a battering-ram).

II.—THE FIGURATIVE MEANINGS OF THE ABLATIVE.

A. The Place Where is transferred to the Time When.

Ablative of Time.

392. Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.

Quā nocte nātus est Alexander eādem Dīānae Ephesiae templum dēflagrāvit. Cic. On the same night on which Alexander was born, the temple of Diana of Ephesus burnt to the ground.

Sāturē stella trīgintā fērē annis cursum suum conficit. Cic. The planet Saturn completes its period in about thirty years.

Many adverbial forms of time are really locative ablatives:

So hodiē, to-day; heri(e), yesterday; māne, in the morning.

Remarks.—1. Time within which may be expressed by per and the accusative:

Per eōs ipsōs dīe quībus Philippus in Achāia fuit, Philocolēs saltum Cithae-rōnis transcendit. Liv. During those very days, while Philip was in Achaea, Philocolēs crossed the range of Cithaeron.

2. Time Within Which may embrace both extremities; so with tōtus, all, whole:

Tōtō nocte pluit. redēunt spectācula māne. Verg. All night (Jupiter) rains; back come the shows in the morning.

So with definite numbers (chiefly later):

Apud Pythagoram discīpulis quīnque annīs erat tæendum. Snn. In the school of Pythagoras the disciples had to keep silence five years.

3. When the Notion is Negative the English Time For Which is the Latin Within Which:

Quadriennīō (or per quadriennium) nōn miliēvit. Liv. For four years he did not serve as a soldier (during, at any time within, four years).

4. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of Time with hic, this; ille, that:

Ego ad tē hīc duībus mensībus nōn scīpseram (344). Cic. I have not written to you these two months (at any time within the last two months).

Hanc urbem hōc biennīō ēvertēs. Cic. This city you will overturn in the next two years.

Transferred to Oρātio Obliqua, hic becomes ille (699, 3):

Diodōrōs responōtī ilīd argentum sē panctōs illīs diēbus misisse Lilybaeum, Diodorus answered that he had sent that silver plate to Lilybaeum within a few days (a few days before).
393. The Ablative with the preposition in is used of points within a period of time, or of the character of the time:

 Bis in diē, twice a day; in pueritiā, in boyhood; in adulescentiā, in youth.

 Nullō modō mihi placuīt bis in diē saturum fierī. Cic. It did not suit me in any way to eat my fill twice a day.

 Sometimes, however, bis diē, as diēs = ānus diēs.

 Fēcī ego istaeo itidem in adulescentiā. Plaut. I did those things too in my youth.

 In may be omitted, chiefly with an adjective or in phrases:

 Prīmā pueritiā, in early boyhood; illō tempore, at that time; in illō tempore, in those circumstances, at that crisis; in tempore or tempore = at the right time; bellō Persicō, at the time of the Persian war; in bellō, in war times; in pāce, in peace times.

 Remark.—Dē is also used in designations of time:

 Ut jugulent hominēs surgunt dē nocte latrōnēs. Hor. To kill people, highwaymen rise by night, I. e., while it is yet night.

 Inter, between: Quot prandia inter continuum perdidi triennium. Plaut. How many luncheons I have lost during three years together!

 Intra, within: Subēgit sōlus intra viginti diēs. Plaut. He quelled them all alone in less than twenty days.

 On per, through, see 337, R.

 Cum, with; cum prīmō lūce, with daybreak.

 394. B. The Place Whence is transferred:

 1. To Origin; 2. To Measure.

 1. Ablative of Origin.

 395. Participles which designate Birth take the Ablative of Origin, with or without the Prepositions ex and dē:

 Tanaquill summō locō nātā. Liv. Tanaquil born (by birth) of high degree.

 Numae Pompiliō rēgis nepōs, filliā ortus, Ancus Marciō erat. Liv. King Numa Pompilius's grandson, a daughter's son, was Ancus Marcius.

 Maecēnās atavis ēdite rēgibus. Hor. Maecenas, offshoot of great-grand sire kings.

 Dis genitē et genitūre deōs. Verg. Begotten of gods and destined to beget gods!

 Sate sanguine dīvūm! Verg. Seed of blood divine!

 Ex mē atque hoc nātus es. Ter. You are his son and mine.

 Ôdērunt nātōs dē pellice. Juv. They hate the offspring of the concubine.
Ab is employed of remote progenitors:
Plurique Belgae sunt orti ab Germânis. CAES. Belgians are mostly of German descent.

396. The Ablative of Material commonly takes ex: constâre, to consist, sometimes omits the preposition:

Animō constâmus et corpore, constâmus ex animō et corpore. Cic. We consist of mind and body.
Medicina tota constat experimentis. QUINT. All medicine is made up of experiments (is empirical).
But: Statua ex aurō, ex aere, facta, a statue made of gold, of bronze.
Often an adjective is used: aureus, golden, ligneus, wooden.

Remarks.—1. A remnant of the old usage is found with fio and facio:
Quid fæcesti scipione? What have you done with the wand?
Quid mē fiet? What will become of me?
Quid mē futūrum est? What is to become of me?
Quid faciēs hōc homine? How will you dispose of this man?
Hunc hominem? What will you do to this man? Dē hōc homine, in this man’s case.
Fītās dē rhētore consul. Juv. From (having been) rhetorician you will become consul.

2. Otherwise the simple Ablative of Material is poetic or late:
Meliorā lūtō finxit. Juv. He fashioned him of better clay.

2. Ablative of Measure.

397. The Ablative gives the Point from which a thing is measured or treated: Ablative of Measure or Reference.

398. The Ablative is put in answer to the questions From What Point of View? According to What? By What? In Respect of What?

Magnōs homineüs virūte mētimur, nōn fortūnā. NEP. We measure great men by worth, not by fortune.
Sonis hominēs dignōscimus ut aera tinnītū. QUINT. We distinguish men by sound as coppers by ring.
Dēscriptus erat populus Rōmānus censū, ordinibus, æstātibus. CIC. The people of Rome was drawn off according to income, rank, (and) age.
Ennius ingeniō maximus arte rudis. Ov. Ennius in genius great, in art unskilled.
Animō prāvus, procārōre. TAC. Crooked of soul, saucy of tongue.
Crine ruber, red-haired; captus oculis (literally, caught in the eyes),
blind; captus mente, insane; meā sententiā, according to my opinion; 
fūre, by right; lēge, by law; and the Supines in -ā (437).

Remarks.—1. Prepositions are also used, which serve to show the conception:

Caesaris adventus ex colōre vestitus cognitus est. Caes. The arrival of Caesar

was known by the color of his clothing.

Dē gestā intellīgo quid respondēs. Cíc. I understand by your gesture what

answer you are giving.

Ex lēge, according to law; ex pactō, according to agreement; ex (dē) mōrē, accord-
ing to custom; ex animī sententiā, according to (my) heart’s desire; ex usū, useful.

Ab animō sēger ful. Plaut. At heart I was sick.

Ōtōsum esse ab animō. Ter. To be easy in mind.

2. Dignus (distinguished), worthy, and indignus, unworthy, are most conveniently

referred to this head. (Examples, see 373, R. 3.)

So also dignor, I deem worthy.

399. The Ablative of Measure is used with the Comparative instead of quam, than, with the Nominative or Accusative:

Tunica propior pallīs. Prov. The shirt is nearer than the cloak.

Phidiae simulācrīs (= quam simulācrā) cōgitāre possimus pulchriōra.

Cíc. We can imagine more beautiful things than the statues of Phidias.

So also after adverbs, but not so freely in prose:

Nēmo est qui tībi sapientius suādēre possit tē ipsō. Cíc. There is no

one who can give you wiser advice than you yourself.

Pulchrum ornātum turpēs mōrēs pējus caenō collinunt. Plaut. Foul

behavior doth bedraggle fine apparel worse than mud.

Remarks.—1. The comparative is also employed with the Ablative of certain abstract

substantives and adjectives used as substantives:

Consul sērius spē (= quam spēs fuerat) Rōmam vēnit. Liv. The consul came to

Rome later than was hoped.

Amnis solitō cītātor. Liv. The river running faster than usual.

2. Alius, other than, with the Ablative, is poetic.

400. Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative:

Turrēs dēnīs pedibus quam mūrus altīorēs sunt. Curt. The towers

are (by) ten feet higher than the wall.

Tantō est accōsāre quam dēfendere quantō facere quam sānāre vul-

nera facilius. Quint. It is as much easier to accuse than to defend as it is

easier to inflict wounds than to cure them.

Perfer et obdūrā: multō graviōra tulistī. Ov. Endure to the end and

be firm: you have borne much more grievous burdens.

Quōque minor spēs est, hōc magis ille cupid. Ov. And the less his

hope, the greater his desire.

Remarks.—1. This rule applies to verbs involving difference as well as to comparatives:

Aesclusāpīt templum quīnque millibus passuum ab urbe Epidaurusqē dīstāt. Liv.

The temple of Aesculapius is five miles from the city of Epidaurus.

2. The Accusative is sometimes employed. (See 335.)
3. Especially to be noted is the use of the Ablative of Measure with ante, before, and post, after:

Paucis ante diebus, Paucis diebus ante, a few days before.
Paucis post diebus, Paucis diebus post, a few days after, afterward.
Duobus annis postquam Roma condita est, Two years after Rome was founded.
Paulo post Troja captam, A little while after the taking of Troy.

The Accusative can also be employed: post paucos annos, after a few years; ante paucos annos, a few years before; and the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers: two hundred years after(ward) may be:

Ducentis annis post or Ducentisimō annō post,
Post ducentos annos " Post ducentēsimum annum.

Ante hōs sex mensēs, six months ago (comp. 392, R. 2), more frequently abhinc sex mensēs: abhinc sex mensibus, means six months before (Madvig).

With a relative sentence the Ablative may be used alone:

Rosciō mors quattuorō quō is occisisus est. Chrysogonō nāntiētur. Cic. The death of Roscius was announced to Chrysogonus four days after he was killed (in the course of the four days within which he was killed). See 392.

Hence is ad: ad sex mensēs, six months hence.

C. ABBLATIVE OF THE THING WHEREWITH.

Ablātivus sociātivus. Ablative of Attendance.

1. Ablative of Manner.

401. The Ablative of Manner answers the question How? and is used with the Preposition cum when it has no Adjective; with or without cum when it has an Adjective:

Miltiadēs summā aequitāte rēs constituit Chersonēs. Nēp. Miltiadēs settled the affairs of the Chersonese with the greatest fairness.

Nōn facile est aequā commoda mentē patiō. Ov. It is not easy to bear good fortune with an even temper.

Cum cūrā scribere, to write with care.

Magnā cūrā,

Cum magnā cūrā,  with great care.

Magnā cum cūrā,

Remark.—Several Ablatives are used adverbially without an Adjective or Preposition: ordine, in an orderly manner; silentiō, silently; cāsī, by chance, accidentally; viā et ratiōne, methodically; dolō, fraudē, fraudulently. It is sometimes hard to distinguish between the Manner and the Instrument: viā, violently and by violence; viā et armīs, by force of arms; pedibus, afoot; nāvibus, by ship. Notice, also, the use of per, through, with the Accusative: per vim, by violence; per litterās, by letter.

2. Ablative of Quality.

(Descriptive Ablative.)

402. The Ablative of Quality has no Preposition, and always takes an Adjective or an equivalent:
Ägēsilāus statūrā fuit humilī. NEP. Aegesilāus was (a man) of low stature.

Cato singulāri fuit prudentiā et industriā. NEP. Cato was (a man) of unique foresight and energy.

Ista turpiculū puella nāsō. CAT. That girl of yours with the ugly nose.

Clāvi ferreī digitī pollicīs crassitūdine. CAES. Iron nails of the thickness of your thumb.

REMARKS.—1. External and transient qualities are put by preference in the Ablative; Measure, Number, Time, and Space, are put in the Genitival only; parts of the body in the Ablative only. Otherwise there is often no difference.

2. Of unnatural productions cum may be used: agnu cum suillō capite. Liv. A lamb with a swine’s head.

3. Ablative of Means.

403. The Instrument is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

The Agent or Doer is put in the Ablative with the Preposition ab (ā):

The Person Through Whom is put in the Accusative with per:

Pyrrhus lapide interfectus est, Pyrrhus was killed by a stone.

Pyrrhus ā muliere interfectus est, Pyrrhus was killed by a woman.

Pyrrhus ā muliere lapide interfectus est, Pyrrhus was killed by a woman with a stone.

Xerxes certior factus est,

1. nūntīō, by a message.

Xerxes was informed,

2. ā nūntīō, by a messenger.

3. per nūntium, by means of a messenger.

Nec bene prōmeritis capitur neque tangitur Irā. LUCR. (218, R. 3.)

Ipse docet quid agam: fās est et ab hōs tē docēri. Ov. (210.)

Discite sānārī per quem didicistis amāre. Ov. Learn to be healed by means of (him by) whom you learned to love.

REMARKS.—1. When the Instrument is personified and regarded as an Agent, or the Agent is regarded as an Instrument, the constructions are reversed; when an Adjective is used, the construction may be doubtful, 362, R.

So jacent suis testibus. CIC. They are cast by their own witnesses; or, they are cast, their own men being witnesses.

2. Especially worthy of note under this head are assequor and assequesci: assētus labōre, accustomed to toil, familiar with toil (the Dative is more rare); doctus Graecis litteris, learned in Greek; and the various words for sacrifice:

Quinqueāgintā capris sacrificāvērunt. Liv. They sacrificed fifty she-goats.

Afficere, to treat, with the Ablative, is a favorite term; see the Lexicon.

3. Nitor, I stay myself, is construed with the Ablative, with or without in: Hastillī nixus, leaning on a spear (stayed by a spear).

Notice also stāre, with the Abl.: stāre condicionibus, to abide by the terms.


404. Definite Price is put in the Ablative:

Viginti talentis ūnam ōratōnem Ἰσοράτης vēndidit. PLIN. Isocrates sold one speech for twenty talents.

Ēmit morte immortālitātem. QUINT. He purchased deathlessness with death.

Nimium risūs pretium est sī probitātis impeniō constat. QUINT. The price of a laugh is too high, if it costs the outlay of a man’s uprightness.

Argentum accēpl; dōte imperium vēndidi. PLAUT. The cash I took; (and) for a dowry sold my sway.

Remark.—Mūtāre, to exchange, is sometimes Give, sometimes Get; sometimes Sell, sometimes Buy:

Pāx misera vel bellō bene mūtātur. Tac. A wretched peace is well exchanged even for war.

Dūrus qui potuit lucrō mūtāre puellam. Prop. Hard (is the soul of the) man who could sell his sweetheart for lucre.

Cūr valle permātem Sabinā dīvitēs operāsiōrēs. Hor. Why should I exchange my Sabinian vale for riches sure to breed (me) greater trouble?

5. Ablative with Sundry Verbs.

405. The Deponent Verbs Útor, Abūtor, Fruor, Fungor, Potior, and Vescor, take the Ablative:

Vīctōriā úti nēscīs. LIV. How to make use of victory you know not.

Quōsusque tandem abūtēre patientiā nostrā. Cíc. How long, tell me, will you abuse our patience?

Lūx quā fruēmur ā Deō nōbis datur. Cíc. The light which we enjoy is given to us by God.

Fungor vice cōtis. Hor. I discharge the office of a whetstone.

Tātius esse arbitrābantur sine ullō vulnere vīctōriā potīrī. Caes. They thought it safer to make themselves masters of the victory without any wound.

Numīdae lacte vescēbantur. SALL. The Numidians made their food of milk ( fed on milk).

Remarks.—1. These Ablatives are commonly regarded as Ablatives of the Instrument; but fruōr, I get fruit, and vescor, I feed myself from (ves-ād-scor), and perhaps fungor seem to take the Ablative as a Whence-case. In older Latin they are sometimes combined with the Accusative. Hence they have a Gerundive:

Jūstitia dico tē esse injūstum quum graviter fērās tē quod ūtendum accē-
perīs reddidisse. Circ. Justice will say that you are unjust since you resent having restored what you have received (but) to use.

2. Úti is a favorite word, and has a most varied translation:
Úti aliquō amīcō, to avail oneself of (to enjoy) a man’s friendship (to have a friend in him).
Úti consiliō, to follow advice; Úti bonō pater, to have the advantage of having a good father; Úti lēgibus, to obey the laws. See the Lexicons.

3. Vivō is construed like vescor: aliēna misericordiā vivō, I live on the charity of others.
Potior, I possess myself, sometimes takes the Genitive; always potiūr rērum, to possess the supreme power.

D. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

406. The Ablative of Cause may be referred to so many classes, that it is most convenient to regard it as a class by itself.

407. The Ablative of Cause is used without a preposition, chiefly with Verbs of Emotion:
Castor gaudet equis. Hor. Castor rejoices in horses.
Quidam vitās suis gloriāntur. Sen. Some make a boast of their vices.
Pecūniā fidēns nōn dubitābat. Nep. Trusting in his money, he had no doubts.
In culpā sunt qui officiā dēserunt mollitiā animī. Circ. They are to blame who shirk their duties from effeminacy of temper.
Odērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre. Hor. The good hate to sin from a love of virtue.
So also jussū civium, at the bidding of the citizens; meō rogātū, at my request, and other verbal Ablatives. On causā and grātiā, for the sake of see 372.

Remarks.—1. The moving cause is often expressed by a participle with the Ablative: adductus, led; ardēns, Ared; commōtus, stirred up; incitātus, egged on; incensus, inflamed; impulsus, driven on; irā, by anger; odio, by hate; metū, from fear; metā perterritus, sore frightened; propter metum, on account of, (by reason of) fear.
2. The preventing cause is expressed by prae, for:
Prae gaudīō ubi sim nēscio. Ter. I know not where I am for joy.

E. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

408. The so-called Ablative Absolute is an Ablative combined with a participle, and serves to modify the verbal predicate of a sentence. Instead of the participle, a predicative substantive or adjective can be employed.

Remark.—This Ablative, which may be called the Ablative of Circumstance, springs from the Temporal Use of the Ablative—the Temporal from the Local.
The Ablative Absolute may be translated by the English Objective Absolute, which is a close equivalent: but for purposes of style, it is often well to analyze the thought, to change Passive into Active, to make use of an abstract noun.

**Xerxe regnante ( = Quum Xerxes regnaret), Xerxes reigning.** When Xerxes was reigning. In the reign of Xerxes.

**Xerxe victō ( = Quum Xerxes victus esset), Xerxes being, having been, defeated.** When Xerxes had been defeated. After the defeat of Xerxes.

**Xerxe rēge ( = Quum Xerxes rex esset), Xerxes [being] king.** When Xerxes was king.

**Patre vivō, while father is, was alive (in father's lifetime).**

**Maximās virtūtēs jacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante.** Cic. All the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if (or when) the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.

**Rōmāni veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant libertātem dulcēdine nōndum expressā.** Liv. The old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.

**Urbe expugnātā imperātor rediit:**

**Passive Form :** The city [being] taken (after the city was taken), the general returned.

**Active Form :** Having taken the city (after he had taken the city), the general returned.

**Abstract Form :** After the taking of the city. After taking the city.

**Remarks.—1.** As the Latin language has no Perf. Part. Active, except the Deponent, which is thus used, the Passive construction is far more common than in English:

**Tunc juvenēs veste posita corpora oleō perunxerunt.** Cic. Then the youths, (having) laid aside their clothing, anointed their bodies with oil: or, laid aside their clothing, and anointed their bodies with oil.

2. The Ablative Absolute, though often to be rendered by a co-ordinate sentence, for convenience’ sake, always presents a subordinate conception:

**Lysander suādet Lacedaemoniis ut régiam potestātem dissolvi ex omnibus dux deligatur ad bellum gerendum.** Nep. Lysander advises the Lacedaemonians that the royal power be done away with, and a leader be chosen from all, to conduct the war. Here the one is necessary to the other.

3. As a rule, the Ablative Absolute can stand only when it is not identical with the subject, object, or dependent case of the verbal predicate. Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his necklace, is to be rendered: Manlius caesum Gallum torque solumvit.

The rule is most frequently violated when the dependent case is in the Genitive:

**Jugurtha fratre medic pretiis regnum ejus sceleris sui praedam fecit.** Sall. Jugurtha killed my brother, and (= after killing my brother) made his throne the booty of his crime.

4. On the Ablative of the simple participle, see 438, R. 9.

**Names of Towns and Small Islands.**

410. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put—

In the Accusative of the Place Where.
So also *rōs*, *into the country*, *domum*, *domōs*, *home*.

Lēgātī Athenās missā sunt. Liv. Envoyds were sent to Athens.
Lātōna confugit Dēlum. Cic. Latona took refuge in Delos.
Laelius et Scipio *rōs* evolābant. Cic. Laelius and Scipio used to hurry out into the country.


So verbals: domum rēditus, a return home.

Remarks.—1. Domum, house, with a possessive pronoun, or Genitive, may or may not have in before it: domum meam or in domum meam, to my house; domum Pompejī or in domum Pompejī, to Pompey’s house; also domum ad Pompejum. Otherwise: in magnificent domum venire, to come into a grand house.

2. When urbem, city, or oppidum, town, precedes the name of the city or town, the preposition in or ad is prefixed; if urbem or oppidum follows, in or ad may be omitted: in (ad) oppidum Cirtam, in, in (at) the town (of) Cirta.

Jugurtha Thalam pervēnīt in oppidum magnum et opulentum. Sall. Jugurtha arrived at Thala, a great and wealthy town.

3. Ad means to the neighborhood of, often before, of military operations. Ad Mutinam, to the neighborhood (siege of) Mutina (Modena).

4. Observe that there must be motion, not merely extent, which requires a preposition: A Salōnis ad Ōricum portūs. Cas. The harbors from Salona to Oricus.

5. Motion To a Place embraces all the local designations: Phalara in sinum Mālicium prōcesserant. Liv. They had advanced to Phalara on the Malia Gulf.

Tarentum in Italian inferiorem proficiscīt, to set out for Tarentum in Lower Italy.

411. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put—
In the Ablative of the Place Whence:

Dēmarātus fūgit Tarquiniōs Corinthō. Liv. Demaratus fled to Tarquinius from Corinth.

Dolābella Dolō proficiscitur. Cic. Dolabella sets out from Delos.

So also domō, from home; humō, from the ground; rūre, from the country.

Remarks.—1. The prepositions *ab* (a) and *ex* (e) are sometimes used for the sake of greater exactness. So regularly *ab* with the Place from which distance is measured:

Aesulapītī templum quinque mīlibus passuum *ab urbe* Epidaurō distat. Liv. (400, R. 1.)

When the common nouns urbe, city, and oppidō, town, are employed, the use of the preposition is the rule:

Anulīde, ex oppidō Boeōtiae, from Aulis, a town of Boeotia.
Ex Apollōnīa Ponti urbe, from Apollonia, a city of Pontus.
Ex oppidō Gergoviā, from the town of Gergovia.

2. The Place Whence embraces all the local designations:

Agrigentō ex Aesulapītī fānō, whereas we should say, from the temple of Aesculapius at Agrigentum.

Unde domō! Veru. From what home?

3. Letters are dated from rather than at a place.

4. The poets are free in using the Ablative as a Whence-case.
412. Names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative of the Place Where.

The Locative coincides in the Singular with the Genitive of the Second Declension, with the Dative of the First and Third. In the Plural, Dative, Locative, and Ablative coincide, and the Ablative is blended with the Locative in Syntax and in the Third Declension, often in form. (See 28, R. 1.)

Locative  Pl. 1. Rōmae (Rōmāi) 1. Athēnis
2. Corinthi 2. Delphi

Ut Rōmae consulēs sic Karthāgīnii (Carthāgīne) quotannis bīnī rēgēs creābantur. Nep. As at Rome (two) consuls, so in Carthage two kings, were created yearly.

Artemisia nōhile fēcit Halicarnassī sepulcrum. Circ. Artemisia built a famous sepulchre at Halicarnassus.

Tarquiniius Superbus mortuus est Cūmīs. Liv. Tarquin the Overbearing died at Cumae.


Remarks.—1. Other locative forms are, domī, at home, (Genitive, domūs) humī, on the ground, and also bellī and militiae, in combination with domī:

Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est consilium domī. Circ. Of little value are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.

Humī jācre, to lie on the ground.

Humī prōsternere, to throw flat on the ground.

Domī militiaeque, bellī domique, in peace and in war, in war and in peace, at home and in the field.

Būrtī, in the country, is also generally considered a locative form (but rure meō, on my farm).

On animī, see 374, R. 3.

2. Appositions are put in the Ablative commonly with in:

Militēs Albae constitūrantur in urbe opportūna, the soldiers halted at Alba, a conveniently situated town.

Archīas Antiochiae nātus est celebri quondam urbe, Archias was born at Antioch, once a populous city.

Neāpolī in celeberrīmō oppidō, at Naples, a very populous town—in the populous, celebrated town of Naples.

When urbe, city, oppidō, town, or insula, island, precedes, the preposition is always employed:

In urbe Rōmā, in the city (of) Rome.

In oppidō Neāpolī, in the town of Naples.

In insula Samō, in the island (of) Samos.

3. Domī takes the Possessive Pronoun in the Genitive:

Marcus Drūsus occisus est domī suae, M. Drusus was killed at his own house.

Also domī aliēnæ, in a strange house.

Metuis ut domī meae cōrētur diligenter. Ter. You fear that she will not be carefully nursed in my house; otherwise, in domī castrā, in a pure house.

In domī Pericli, in the house (hold) of Pericles.

In domō, in the house (not, at home).
413. The Prepositions are local adverbs, which serve to define more narrowly the local ideas of the cases. The only cases that convey local ideas are the Accusative and Ablative. The Accusative, as the case of the Direct Object, represents the relation whither? the Ablative represents the relations whence? and where?

Remarks.—1. In Verbs of Motion, the result of the motion is often considered as Rest in a place (where):
   Pónere in locō, to put in a place.
   2. In Verbs of Rest, the Rest is sometimes conceived as the Result of motion (whither):
   Hábere in potentātem, to have (got) in (to) one's power.
   In carcerem asservāre, to keep in jail.
   3. Prepositions derive their name from the fact that they are prefixed in composition. Many of the Latin prepositions are not used in composition, and these may be called improper prepositions. The prefixes amb- (am- an-), diis (di), red- (re-) sede- (sē-) and vē are sometimes called inseparable prepositions.

414. Position of the Preposition. The Preposition generally precedes the case.

Remarks.—1. Versus, -ward, and tenus, as far as, are postpositive, and so is cum, with, in combination with the Personal Pronouns and Relative:
   Mōcum, with me.
   Nec tōcum possium vivere nec sine te. Mart. (381.)
   Sēcum, with oneself.
   Quōcum (also quōcum) with whom (likewise, cum qua).
   Quibuscum, with whom, wherewith (also, cum quibus).
   2. Other prepositions are postponed chiefly after the relative: quem contra, against whom; quōs inter, among whom; quō dē, from whom.
   3. Poets and affected writers are very free in putting the Preposition after its case.

415. The Preposition is often put between the Attribute and the Case:

Magnō cum metū, with great fear.

Whereas the Genitive and other forms of the Attribute and connecting particles are often put between the Preposition and its case:

Post vērō Sullae victōriam, but after Sulla's victory.

Remark.—Especially to be noted is the position of per, through (by), in adjurations; Līdīa dīc per omnēs Tō deōs vērō. Hom. Lydia, tell, by all the gods, I pray thee.
416. Repetition and Omission of the Preposition.—With different words which stand in the same connection, the Preposition is repeated, when the Preposition is emphatic, or the individual words are to be distinguished; so always after et—et, nec—nec: et ex urbe et ex agris, both from (the) city and from (the) country. Otherwise it is omitted; so always with que.

Clodius a Milone candidatō consulātus jugulātus est. Vell. Clodius was killed by Milo, a candidate for the consulship.


Discite sānāri per quem ( = per eum per quem) didicitis amāre. Ov. (403).

Remark.—Several Prepositions, such as contrā, on the other hand, extrā, outside, infrā, below, supra, above, ultrā, beyond, are used also as adverbs without a case: Íliacōs intrā mūrōs peccātur et extrā. Hor. Inside the walls of Ilion sin is wrought, and outside (too).

Otherwise two Prepositions cannot be used with one case: For and against Scipio, Prō Scipio et adversus Scipionem. Before and after the battle, ante pugnam et post eam.

I.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

417. Prepositions construed with the Accusative are:

ante, apud, ad, adversus,
circum, circā, citrā, cis,
ergā, contrā, inter, extrā,
infrā, intrā, juxtā, ob,
penes, pōne, post and praeter,
prope, propter, per, secundum,
supra, versus, ultrā, trans.

Remarks.—1. To these we may add clam, unknown to, hidden from (cēlō, oc-culō), which is commonly used as an adverb secretly and according to some MSS. is construed with the Ablative as well as with the Accusative.

2. The detailed consideration of the Prepositions belongs to the Dictionary.

Ad, at, to (comp. ad-do, I put to), up to—opposed to Ab.

Adversus, [turned to], towards, Adversum, over against, against.

Ante [over against, facing], before (most frequently of time).

Apud (chiefly of persons), at, near, in the presence of (official), with (French, chez), at the house of, in the view of.

Circum, { around, about.
Circā, of.
Circiter, about (seldom of place, sometimes of time, chiefly with numerals).
Cis, this side, short of, correlative
Citrā, of ultrā.
Constrā ( = cum + tra), opposite to, over against, opposed to against.

Ergā, opposite, towards, seldom of
place; generally of friendly relations.

**Extra**, without, outside of, beside, (opposed to intrea).

**Intra**, beneath, lower down, later.

**Inter**, between (reaching from one to the other), among, during.

**Intra**, within.

**Juxtæ**, [adjoining], hard by, near, next to.

**Ob**, (over against, opposite to), right before, with a view to, for.

**Penes**, with = in the hands of.

**Penes eum est potestas**, The power lies with him. [to, by.

**Per**, (along), through, by way of, owing

**Pone**, behind (rare).

**Post**, behind, after.

**Praeter**, on before, past, beyond, besides, contrary to.

**Prope**, near.

**Propter**, near, on account of.

**Secundum**, [following], next to, immediately behind, after, along, according to.

**Supra**, above, higher up (earlier).

**Trans**, on the other side, beyond, across.

**Utraque**, on that side, beyond (opp. to citra).

**Versus**, -ward (always postponed).

**Rorem versus**, Romeward.

II.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ABLATIVE.

418. Prepositions construed with the Ablative are:

**Ad**, ab, and abs, off, of, from, by (opposed to ad).

Before vowels and h, ab; before consonants, â or ab; abs, used chiefly before te, thee.

**Absque**, (off), without (antiquated).

**Ceram**, face to face with, in the presence of (accidental).

**Cum**, with.

**De**, down from, from, of = about.

**Ex**, â, out of, from (opposed to in).

Before vowels and consonants, ex (so chiefly in the model period); before consonants, â.

**Prae**, in front of, side by side with, for (preventive cause).

**Pro**, before, for.

**Sine**, without, opposed to cum.

**Teneus**, (to the extent of), as far as (occasionally with the Genitive).

REMARK.—In poetry and later prose palam, openly, takes the Ablative; procul, afar, follows the analogy of ab; simul, at the same time, that of cum.

III.—PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

419. Prepositions construed with the Accusative and Ablative are:

**In**, in,

**Sub**, under,

**Super**, over,

**Subter**, under,

[ACCUSATIVE.]

into, for (purpose),

about (of time),

over, above,

over and above,

under, beneath,

[ABLATIVE.]

in,

about (of time) [rarely],

about = de,

over [in prose rarely],

under, beneath [rarely].
THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBSTANTIVE.

420. The Infinitive is the substantive form of the verb.

Remark.—The Infinitive differs from a verbal substantive, in that it retains the adverbial attribute, the designations of voice and time, and the regimen of the verb:
Amāre, to love; valēs amāre, to love hugely; amārī, to be loved; amāvisse, to have loved; amāre aliquem, to love a man; nocēre alcin, to hurt a man.

But the great claim of the Infinitive to be considered a verb lies in the involvement of predicate and subject. Like the finite verb, the Infinitive involves predicate and subject; but the subject is indefinite and the predication is dependent.

421. The Infinitive, when it stands alone, involves an indefinite Accusative Subject, and the Predicate of that Subject is, of course, in the Accusative Case.

Rēgēm esse, To be king.
Bonum esse, To be good.

So in the paradigm of the verb:

Amātūrum esse, To be about to love.

Remark.—On the Nominative with the Infinitive by Attraction, see 528.

In consequence of this double nature, the Infinitive may be used as a substantive or as a verb.

422. The Infinitive, as a Noun, is used regularly in two cases only—Nominative and Accusative. In the other cases its place is supplied by the Gerund and the Ablative Supine.

THE INFINITIVE AS A SUBJECT.

423. The Infinitive, as a Subject, is treated as a neuter substantive:

Errēre hūmānum est. To err is human (that man should err is human), incipere multō est quam impetrāre facilius. Plaut. Beginning is much easier (work) than winning.
Nōn tam turpe fuit vincī quam contendisse decōrum est. Ov. (275.) Esse bonam faciē est quam quod vetet esse remōtum est. Ov. Be a good woman—'tis easy when what would prevent it is distant.

THE INFINITIVE AS AN OBJECT.

424. The Infinitive is used as the Object of Verbs of Creation, commonly known as Auxiliary Verbs.

These Verbs help the Infinitive into existence.
Such verbs denote Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Resolve, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites:

Edomi cupio. Ter. I want to die.

Cato esse quam vidēri bonus mālebat. Sall. Cato preferred being (good) to seeming good.

Et precor ut possim tūtius esse miser. Ov. And I pray that I may be more safely wretched.

Vincere scis, Hannibal; victoriā āti nēscis. Liv. How to win victory, you know, Hannibal; how to make use of victory, you know not.

Qui mori didicit, servire dēdidicit. Sen. He who has learned to die has unlearned to be a slave.

Maledictus dēterre nē scribat patrem. Ter. He is preparing (trying) to frighten (him) from writing, by abuse.

So parātus, ready.

Qui mentiri solet, pējerāre consuevit. Cic. He who is wont to lie is accustomed to swear falsely.

Vulnera quae fēcit dēbuit ipse patr. Ov. The wounds he gave he should himself have suffered.

Vereor tē laudāre praesentem. Cic. I feel a delicacy about praising you to your face.

Religionum animum nōdis ex solvere pēgo. Lucr. I go on to loose the spirit from the bonds of superstitious creeds.

Atque ut vivāmus vīvere dēsīnīmus. Mart. And that we may live, we cease to live.

So habeo, I have (it in my power).

Tantum habeo pollicērī mē tibi cumulātē satisfactūrum. Cic. So much I can promise that I will give you abundant satisfaction.

REMARKS.—1. Notice that coepi. I have begun, and dēsīnō, I cease, have Passive Perfects with Passive Infinitives:

Athēniensēs undique premī bellō sunt coepit. Nep. The Athenians began to feel the pressure of war on (from) all sides.

Vēterēs orātiōnēs legi sunt desistae. Cic. The old speeches have ceased to be read When the Passives are really Reflexives or Neuter, the active forms may be used.

2. Verbs of Will and Desire take ut as well as the Inf. So regularly opto, I choose.

3. Verbs which denote Hope and Promise take the Accusative and Future Infinitive (occasionally as in English):

Spēro mē hōc adeptūrum esse, I hope to (that I shall) obtain this.

Prōmittēbat sē ventūrum esse, he kept promising that he would come (to come).

Doceo, I teach. jubeo, I bid, veto, I forbid, sīno, I let, take the Infinitive as a Second Accusative:

Dionysius nē collum tonsōri committeret tōndēre filiās suās docuīt. Cic. Dionysius, to keep from trusting his neck to a barber, taught his daughters to shave (taught them shaving).

Ipse jubebat mortīs tē memīnisse Deus. Mart. (375.)

Vitae summā brevis spem nōs vetat incohāre longam. Hor. Life’s brief sum forbids us open (s) long (account with) hope.
GERUND.

**NEU Mëdœs sinäs equitäre inuitös. Hor. Nor let the Median ride and ride unpunished.**

4. **POETICAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE:** The poets use the Infinitive as an Object with great freedom:

1.) **After many verbs which are not auxiliary in Prose:**
   *Ardebat ruere.* Ov. *He glows (he burns) to rush.*
   *Quid sit futūrum crás fuge quaerere.* Hor. *What will be to-morrow, fly the question.*
   *Parce tuum vātem sceleris damnēre, Cupīdō.* Ov. (377.)

2.) For the Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive, see 429, R. 4.

3.) For the Accusative of the Gerundive:
   *Quem virum aut hērōa lyrā vel sōri tibiō sūmēs celebrēre, Cǐlio?* Hor. *What man or hero will thou undertake to celebrate on harp or shrilly flute, O Cǐlio? (sūmēs celebrandum.)*
   But dare is used with the Inf. even in prose, in familiar phrases: *dare bibere, to give to drink.*

4.) For ut, of purpose; ad with the Gerund, or Gerundive; or Supine:
   *Tunc ego: nōn oculōs sed ventrem pascere vôni.* Mart. *Then I: I'm come to feed my belly, not my eyes.*
   *Semper in Oceanum mittit mē quaerere gemmās.* Prop. *She is always sending me to the ocean to look for pearls.*

5.) For the Supine in -ā, ad with Gerund, or the like:
   *Rōma capi facilis.* Lucan. *Rome is easy to be taken, to take (facile capitur).*

6.) In fine, the Infinitive is often used because the word or phrase is considered an equivalent to a verb of creation. In all these points the Post-republican prose follows poetry more or less closely.

**INFINITIVE AS A PREDICATE.**

425. The Infinitive, as a verbal Substantive, may be used as a Predicate after the copula esse, to be, and the like:

*Doctō homīni et ūrūtō vīvere est cōgitāre.* Cic. *To a learned and cultivated man to live is to think.*

**GERUND AND GERUNDIVE**

426. The other cases of the Infinitive are supplied by the Gerund. With Prepositions, the Gerund, and not the Infinitive, is employed.

**Remark.—Of course the Infinitive may be quoted as an abstract notion:**
   *Multum interest inter "dare" et "accipere."* Sen. *There is a vast difference between "Give" and "Receive."

**Nom.** Legere difficile est, reading (to read) is hard to do.

**Gen.** Ars legendi, the art of reading.
   *Puer studiōsus est legendi, the boy is zealous of reading.*

**Dat.** Puer operam dat legendi, the boy devotes himself to reading.
218  GERUNDIVE.

Acc.  Puer cupit legere, the boy is desirous to read.
Puer prōpensus est ad legendum, the boy has a bent toward reading.

Abl.  Puer discit legendō, the boy learns by reading.

427. As a verbal form, the Gerund, like the Infinitive, takes the same case as the verb.

Studium obtemperandi lēgibus. Zeal for obedience to the laws.

Remarks.—1. The Gerund is the Substantive of the Gerundive. (243, R. 1.) The signification of necessity comes mainly from its use as a predicate. Verbal Nouns are Active or Passive according to the point of view. (Compare 361.) Worthy of note is the fact that the leading form of the Greek Active Infinitive is ultimately a Present Participle Passive.

2. Gerundive and Perfect Participle Passive are often translated alike; but in the one case the action is progressive or prospective, in the other it is completed.

Caesare interficiendō Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertātēm restituere cōnātī sunt. By the murder of Caesar (by murdering Caesar), Brutus and Cassius endeavored to restore their country’s freedom to her.

Caesare interfectō Brūtus et Cassius patriae libertātēm nōn restituērunt. By murdering Caesar, Brutus and Cassius did not restore their country’s freedom to her.

428. Gerundive for Gerund.—Instead of the Gerund, with an Accusative Object, the object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.

Gen.  Plācandī Deī, of appeasing God.
Dat.  Plācandō Deō, for appeasing God.
Abl.  Plācandō Deō, by appeasing God.

In the model period this construction is invariably employed with Prepositions.

Ad plācandōs Deōs, for appeasing the gods.
In plācandīs Deis, in appeasing the gods.

Remarks.—1. It is impossible to make a distinction between the Gerund and the Gerundive Form. They are often used side by side, where there can be no difference. Liv. xxii. 5; xxv. 40; xxviii. 37; xxx. 26. The preference for the Gerundive is of a piece with the use of the Perf. Pass. Participle in preference to an Abstract Noun. (257, R. 2.)

2. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns are not attracted: studium agendī aliquid, desire of doing something; cupidītās plūra habendī, greed for having more. But when the Neuter Adjective has become a substantive (195, R. 2), the Gerundive form may be used: modus investigandī vērī, the method of investigating the truth.

3. The Gerundive can be formed only from Transitive Verbs, the Gerund from any (243, R. 2). Hence the impersonal form must be used with all verbs that do not take the Accusative.

Valētūdīnī parcemum est, the health must be spared.

Exceptions.—Ūtendūs, to be used; fūrēndūs, to be enjoyed; potiendūs, to be possessed; fungendūs, to be discharged; vescendūs, to be eaten (405); which, however, are
used only * in the oblique cases. Further, *medendus, to be healed; paenitendus, to be regretted.

Expetuntur divitiae ad perfruendās voluptātēs. Cíc. Riches are sought for the enjoyment of pleasures. But:

Utendum est ætātē, citō pede lābitur ætātē. Ov. Life's season is to be enjoyed, swift-footed glides that season.

The Imperative Nominative with the Accus. is rare and antiquated:

Aesternās quonium paenās in morte timendum est. Luçr. Since we must fear eternal punishments in death.

GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

429. The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives which require a complement:

Sapiencia ārs vivendi putanda est. Cíc. Philosophy is to be considered the art of living.

Et propter vitam vivendi perdere causās. Juv. And on account of life, to lose the reasons for living.

Raucaque garrulitās studiumque immāne loquendī. Ov. And hoarse chattiness, and a monstrous love of talking.

Triste est ipsum nōmen carentī. Cíc. Dismal is the mere word "carēre" (go without).

Nōn est plācandi spēs mihi nulla Del. Ov. I am not without hope of appeasing God.

Ignōrant cupidī cupīdicendī plās invidiam quam convicium posse. Quint. Those who are eager to abuse know not that envy has more power than billingsgate.

Titus equitandī pertissimus fuit. Suēt. Titus was exceedingly skillful in riding.

Neuter sūf ōrtegendī corporis memor erat. Līv. Neither thought of shielding his own body.

Quī hic mōs obsidendī viās et virōs aliēnōs appellandī? Līv. What sort of way is this of blocking up the streets and calling upon other women's husbands?

Summa šlādendī occāsio est mihi nunc senēs. Ter. I have a tip-top chance to fool the old folks now.

REMARKS.—1. As mel. tūf, sūf, nōstrī, vestrī, are, in their origin, neuter singulars, from meum, my being; tuum, thy being; suum, one's being, etc., the Gerundive is put in the same form: conservandī sūf, of preserving themselves; vestrī adhortandī, of exhorting you.

Cēpia plācandi sit modo parva tūf. Ov. Let (me) only have a slight chance of trying to appease you (feminine).

Similar constructions are also found with other words: exemplōrum īligendi po-testās, power of choosing examples.

* In Cíc. Fin. 1, 1, 3, fruenda (Nom.) is used for the sake of paranda.
Agitur utrum Antōnii facultās détur agrōrum suis latrēnibus condōnandi. Ctc. The question is whether Antony shall be empowered to give away lands to his pet highwaymen.

2. Very common is causā (with the Gen. of Gerund and Gerundive), for the sake of, to express design: dolōrum effugiendiōrum causā, for the sake of escaping sufferings; but sometimes the Genitive alone is used:

Lepidus arma cōpit libertātis subvertendae. Sall. Lepidus look up arms as a matter of (for the purpose of) subverting freedom.

More commonly ad, rarely ob. See 433.

Esse with this Genitive may be translated by serve to.

Omnia discrimina tālia concordiae minuendae sunt. Liv. All such distinctions are matters of (belong to) the diminishing of concord (serve to diminish concord).

Comp. Caes. B. G. v. 8: Nāvēs quās suī quisque commodī fācerat. Ships which each one had (had) made (as a matter) of personal convenience.

3. Tempus est, it is (high) time; consilium est, it is my (your, his) plan; and a few others, may be used with the Infinitive: Tempus abire tibi est. It is time for you to go away.

But when tempus is used in the sense of season ("a time to weep and a time to laugh"), the Gerund, or Gerundive, is retained:

Lysander tempus rei gerendae nōn dimittit. Nkr. Lysander did not let the opportunity of action slip.

4. The poets are very free in the use of the Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund, inasmuch as they construe the Adjective or Substantive like the Cognate Verb.

(At) siccūra quīsē et nāscīa fallēre (= quae nāsciat fallere) vita. Verr. Quiet without a care, and a life that knoweth not how to disappoint (ignorant of disappointment).

**DATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.**

430. The Dative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used chiefly after words which imply capacity and adaptation:

Aqua nitrōsa utīlis est bibendō. Plin. Alkaline water is good for drinking (to drink).

Lignum āridum māteria est īdōnea sēliciendīs ignibus. Sen. Dry wood is a fit substance for striking fire (drawing out sparks).

Referundae ego habeo linguam nātam grātīae. Plaut. I have a tongue that's born for showing thankfulness.

Rarer is the Dative in combination with the Accusative.

Consul plācandīs dis dat operam. Liv. The consul does his endeavor to appease the gods.

Especially to be noticed is the Dative with esse, and in names of Boards:

Solvendō civitātēs nōn erant. Ctc. The communities were not equal to (ready for) payment (were not solvent).

Sapiens virēs suās nōvit, scit sē esse onerī ferendō. Sen. The wise man is acquainted with his own strength; he knows that he is (equal) to bearing the burden.
Decemviri légibus scribundis, Decemvirs for (charged with) drawing up laws.

Remark.—Later writers treat the Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive as if equivalent to ad.

ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

431. The Gerundive is used in the Accusative of the Object to be Effected, after such Verbs as Giving and Taking, Sending and Leaving.

Diviti homini id aurum servandum dedit. Plaut. He gave that gold to a rich man to keep.

Conôn mûrös reficiendös cûrat. Nep. Conon has the walls rebuilt.

Patriam diripidem relinquimus. Cic. We leave our country to be plundered.

Carvilius aedem faciendam locavit. Liv. Carvilius let the (contract of) building the temple.

Of course the Passive form has the Nominative:

Filiius Philippi Dêmêrius ad patrem rediicendus légâtis datum est. Liv. The son of Philip, Demetrius, was given to the envoys to be taken back to his father.

ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

432. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used as the Ablative of Means and Cause, seldom as the Ablative of Manner or Circumstance.

Únus homô nóbis cunctandô restituit rem. Ennius. One man by lingering raised our cause again.

Côde repugnanti, cûdendô victor abibis. Ov. Yield to her when she resists; you'll come off victor by yielding.

Quid digitós opus est graphiô lassâre tenendô? Ov. (390, R.)

Exercendô quotidî milite hostem opponiâbatur. Liv. Drilling the soldiers daily he waited for the enemy.

Occasionally with the Comparative.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

433. The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions ad and inter, seldom ante, circa, in, ob.

Nulla rês tantum ad dicendum prófit quantum scriptio. Cic. Nothing is as profitable for speaking as writing.
Atticus philosophorum praeceptis ad vitam agendam non ad ostentationem utebatur. Nep. Atticus made use of the precepts of philosophers for the conduct of life, not for display.

Inter spoliandum corpus hostis exspiravit. Liv. While in the act of stripping the body of the enemy he gave up the ghost.

434. The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive takes the prepositions _ab_, _de_, _ex_, often _in_, seldom _cum_ and _pro_, and _sine_ never.

Prohibenda maximē est _ira_ in puniendō. Cic. Especially to be forbidden is anger in punishing.

Brutus in liberandā patriā est interfectus. Cic. Brutus was slain in the effort to free his country.

Philosophi in iis ipsis libris quōs scribunt dē contemnendā gloriā sua nōmina inscribunt. Cic. (384, R. 1.)

Ex discendō capimus voluptātem. Cic. We receive pleasure from learning.

435. The Supine is a Verbal Noun, which appears only in the Accusative and Ablative cases.

THE ACCUSATIVE SUPINE.

436. The Accusative Supine (Supine in _-um_ ) is used chiefly after Verbs of Motion:

Galli gallinācei cum sōle sunt cubītum. Plin. Cocks go to roost at sunset.

Spectātūm veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. Ov. They come to see the show, they come to be themselves a show.

Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invitās canēs. Plaut. 'Tis foolishness to take unwilling dogs a-hunting.

Hostis est uxor invita quae ad virum nuptum datur. Plaut. (344, R. 1.)

Remarks.—1. The Accusative Supine may take an object, but the construction is not very common:

Hannibal patriam dēfensum (more usual: ad dēfendendam patriam) revocātus est. Nep. Hannibal was recalled to defend his country.

2. Especially common is the use of the Supine after the verb _ire_, _to go_:

Cur tē is perditum? Ter. Why are you going to ruin yourself?

Turpissimi virī bonōrum praeūmia ūeptum sunt. Sall. The scoundrels are going to take away by force the rewards of the better classes.

The Future Infinitive Passive is actually made up of the Passive Infinitive of _ire_, _to go_, _ire_, and the Supine:
PARTICIPLE.

Dicunt reum damnatum Iri. They say that the defendant will be condemned, (that people are going (Iri from Itur, 199, R. 1), that there is a movement, to condemn the accused). The consciousness of this is lost, as is shown by the Nominative (528).

Reus damnatum Iri vidēbatur, Quint. The accused seemed to be about to be condemned.

THE ABLATIVE SUPINE.

437. The Ablative Supine (Supine in -ā) is used chiefly with Adjectives, as the Ablative of the Point of View From Which:

Mirābile dictū, Wonderful (in the telling) to tell, vidū, to behold.

Hōc dictū quam rē facilius est. Liv. This is easier in the saying than in the fact (easier said than done).

Remarks.—1. The use of the Ablative Supine is confined to a few verbs, chiefly: dictū, to tell; factū, to do; audītū, to hear; visū, to see; cognītū, to know. Authors vary much. The adjectives generally denote Ease or Difficulty, Pleasure or Displeasure, Right or Wrong.

2. Ad, with the Gerundive, is often used instead:
Cibus facilius ad conecoquendum, food (that is) very easy to digest.
The Infinitive, facilius concequērmus, is poetical.

3. The local use of the Ablative Supine is very rare:
Vīlicus prīmus cubītū surgat, postrēmus cubītūm est. Cato. The steward must be the first to get out of bed, the last to go to bed.

4. The Supine in -ā never takes an object.

PARTICIPLE.

438. The Participle may be used as a Substantive, but even then generally retains something of its predicative nature.

Nihil est magnum somniānti. Cic. Nothing is great to a dreamer (to a man, when he is dreaming).

Rēquia, crēde mihi, rēs est succurrēre lapsīs. Ov. It is a kingly thing, believe me (to run to catch those who have slipped), to succor the fallen.

Remarks.—1. The Attribute of the Participle, employed as a Substantive, is generally in the adverbial form: rectē facta, right actions; factē dictūm, a witty remark.

2. Especially to be noted is the Ablative of the Participle without a Substantive: audītō, it having been heard; compertō, it having been found out.

So also an adjective used predicatively: the Substantive is commonly supplied by a sentence. The construction is of limited use.

Alexander audītō Dārīum mōvisse ab Ecbatanis fugientem insequī pergīt. Curt. Alexander, (it) having (been) heard that Darius had decamped from Ecbatana, proceeds to follow him up on his flight.

439. The Participle, as an Adjective, often modifies its verbal nature, so as to be characteristic:

Epaminondās erat temporibus sapienter útēns, Epaminondas was a man who used to use opportunities wisely (is qui úterētur).
NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

Remark.—Especial attention is called to the parallelism of the Participle or Adjective with the Relative and Subjunctive:

Rōs parva dicta, sed quae studiis in magnum certāmen excesserit. Liv. A small thing to mention, but one which, by the excitement of the parties, terminated in a great contest.

Adverb.

440. 1. The Predicate may be qualified by an Adverb.
2. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, and sometimes substantives, when they express or imply verbal or adjective relations:

Male vivit, he lives ill; bene est, it is well; sērē omnēs, almost all; nīmis sæpe, too often; admodum adulescens, a mere youth, quite a youth; lātē rēx (Verg.), wide-ruling; bis consul, twice consul; duo simul bella, two simultaneous wars.

Remark.—The form of the Adverb does not admit of any further inflection, and therefore the Adverb requires no rules of Syntax except as to its position.

441. Position of the Adverb.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends the sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb.

Injūstē facit, he acts unwisely.
Admodum pulcher, handsome to a degree, very handsome.
Valdē diligenter, very carefully.
Exceptions occur chiefly in rhetorical passages, in which great stress is laid on the Adverb, or in poetry:
Īram bene Ennius initium dixit insāniae, Well did Ennius call anger the beginning of madness.
Vixit dūm vixit bene. Ter. He lived while he lived (and lived) well.

One class of Adverbs demands special notice—the Negatives.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

442. There are two original negatives in Latin, Nē and Hand (haut, han). From nē is derived nōn (nē-oinom (ūnum), no-whit, not). Nē is used chiefly in compounds, or with the Imperative and Optative Subjunctive. The old use appears in nē—quidem. Nōn is used with the Indicative and Potential Subjunctive; hand, mainly with Adjectives and Adverbs.
NEGATIVES.

NEGATIVE OF THE INDICATIVE.

443. 1. The regular Negative of the Indicative and of the Potential Subjunctive is non, the absolute not.

Quem amat, amat; quem non amat, non amat, Whom he likes, he likes; whom he does not like, he does not like.

Non ausim, I should not venture.

Remark.—Non as the emphatic, specific negative may negative anything. (See 263,R.)

2. Hand in model prose is used chiefly with Adjectives and Adverbs: hand magnus, not great; hand male, not badly.

Hand scio (Hauscio), in hand scio an, is the chief exception (459, R.)

In antitheses non is used, and not hand:

Non est vivere sed valere vita. Martial. Not living, but being well, is life.

Remark.—Other negative expressions are: handquñquam, nñquñquam, neuntiquam, by no means; nihil, nothing. (“Adam, with such counsel nothing swayed.”) On nullus, see 304, R. 2.

444. Subdivision of the Negative.—A general negative may be subdivided by neque—neque, as well as by aut—aut, or strengthened by ne—quidem, not even:

Nihil unquam neque insolens neque gloriosum ex ore Timoleontis processit. Nep. Nothing insolent or boastful ever came out of the mouth of Timoleon.

Conscientium nemo aut latuit aut fugit. Liv. Of the accomplices no one either hid or fled.

Nunquam Scipionem nē minima quidem rē offendit. Cíc. I never wounded Scipio's feelings, no, not even in the slightest matter.

(“I will give no thousand crowns neither.”—Shakes.)

Remark.—In the same way nego, I say no, is continued by neque—neque (ne—nec):

Negant nec virtūtis nec vitia crescere. Cíc. They deny that either virtues or vices increase.

445. Negative Combinations.—In English, we say either no one ever, or, never any one; nothing ever, or, never anything; in Latin, the former turn is invariably used: nemo unquam, no one ever:

Verrēs nihil unquam fecit sine aliquō quaestū. Cíc. Verres never did anything without some profit or other.

Remark.—No one yet is nondum quisquam.
446. **Nego** (*I say no, I deny*) is commonly used instead of *dico non*, *I say—not*.

Negant quemquam virum bonum esse nisi sapientem. Cic. *They say that no one is a good man except the sage.*

**Remark.**—The positive (*ego, I say*) is sometimes to be supplied for a subsequent clause. Caes. B. G. i. 19. The same thing happens with the other negatives.

**Position of the Negative.**

447. The Negative naturally belongs to the Predicate, and usually stands immediately before it, but may be placed before any emphatic word or combination of words:

- **Potes non reverti.** Sen. *Possibly you may not return.*
- **Non potes reverti.** You cannot possibly return.
- **Saepe viri fallunt; tenerae non saepe puellae.** Ov. *Often do men deceive; soft-hearted maidens not often.*
- **Non omnis aetas, Lūde, lūdō convenit.** Plaut. (346.)

**Remarks.**—1. As the Copula *esse*, *to be*, is, strictly speaking, a Predicate, the Negative generally precedes it, contrary to the English idiom, except in contrasts. The difference in position can often be brought out only by stress of voice: *fēlix non erat, he wasn't happy; non fēlix erat, he was not happy, he was far from happy.*

2. **Nē—quidem** bestrides the emphatic word or emphatic group (444).

448. Two negatives in the same sentence destroy one another, and make an affirmative:

- **Non nego, I do not deny (I admit).**

**Remarks.**—1. **Non POSSUM non**, *I cannot but, (I must).*

- **Quī mortem in mālis pōnit non potest eam non timēre.** Cic. *He who classed death among misfortunes cannot but (must) fear it.*

2. The double Negative is often stronger than the opposite Positive:

- **Non indoctus, a highly-educated man; non sum nescius, I am well aware.**
- **Non indicērō pulvere sordid.** Hor. *Sware (soiled) with (no dice) honorable dust.*
- **Non ignāra mali miseris succurrēre discē.** Verg. *Not unacquainted (= but too well acquainted) with misfortune, I learn to succor the wretched.*

This figure, which has a very wide application, is called *Lōtōs* (*Lītōrēs*), or *Understatement.*

3. It follows from R. 2. that *neque* non is not simply equivalent to et *and*: *neque* belongs to the sentence, *non* to the particular word:

- **Nec hoc Zēno non vidit.** Cic. *Nor did Zenofail to see this.*

4. Of especial importance is the position of the Negative in the following combinations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indefinite Affirmative</th>
<th>General Affirmative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōni nihil, <em>somewhat</em></td>
<td>nihil nōn, <em>every thing</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn nāmo, <em>some one, some</em></td>
<td>nēmo nōn, <em>everybody</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn nāli, <em>some people</em></td>
<td>nulli nōn, <em>all</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn nāqua, <em>sometimes</em></td>
<td>nāqua nōn, <em>always</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn nāquam, <em>somewhere</em></td>
<td>nāquam nōn, <em>everywhere</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

In ipsæ curiæ nonnäm hostis est. Cic. In the senate-house itself there are enemies (nämno nän hostis est, everybody is an enemy).

Non est placandī spēs mihi nūlla Dēf. Ov. I have some hope of appeasing God (nulla spēs nōn est, I have every hope).

Nōmo nōn didicisse māvult quam discere. Quint. Everybody prefers having learned to learning.

NEGATIVE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

449. Nē is the Negative of the Imperative and of the Optative Subjunctive:

Nē cēde mali. Verg. Yield not thou to misfortunes.
Nē transieris Hibērum. Liv. Do not cross the Ebro.
Nē vivam, May I cease to live.

REMARK.—The Negative nōn is sometimes used instead of nē, when contrast is emphasized:

Aut nōn tentāris aut perficē. Ov. Either attempt not, or achieve.

450. Nē is continued by nēve or neu:

Nē illam vēndās neu mē perdās hominem amantem. Plaut. Don't sell her, and don't ruin me, a fellow in love.

INCOMPLETE SENTENCE.

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

451. An interrogative sentence is necessarily incomplete. The answer is the complement.

452. A question may relate:

I. To the existence or non-existence of the Predicate: Predicate Question:

Vivitne pater? Is my father alive?

II. To some undetermined integrant of the sentence, such as Subject, Object, Adjective, Adverbial modifier: Nominal Question:


For a list of Interrogative Pronouns see 104.

REMARKS.—1. The second class requires no rules except as to mood (464).
2. The form of the question is often used to imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker.
Quid interest inter perjūrum et mendācem? Cio. What is the difference between a perjured man and a liar?
All questions of this kind are called Rhetorical.

453. Interrogative sentences are divided into simple and compound (disjunctive). Am I? (simple); Am I, or am I not? (disjunctive).

Remark. Strictly speaking, only the simple interrogative sentence belongs to this section; but for the sake of completeness, the whole subject will be treated here.

454. Interrogative sentences are further divided into direct and indirect, or independent and dependent. Am I? (direct); He asks whether I am (indirect).

DIRECT SIMPLE QUESTIONS.

455. Direct simple questions sometimes have no interrogative sign. Such questions are chiefly passionate in their character, and serve to express Astonishment, Blame, Disgust.

Infelix est Fabricius quod rūs suum fodit? Sen. Fabricius is unhappy because he digs his own field? (Impossible!)

Heus, inquit, linguam vis meam praecūdere? Phaedr. Ho! ho! quoth he, you wish to shut my mouth, you do. (You shall not.)

Quod dicas tě non fācisse, ego fāci? Quint. Because you say you did not do it, I did! (Absurd!)

Remark. When several questions follow in immediate succession, only the first generally takes the Interrogative Pronoun, or -ne. Repeated questioning is passionate.

456. Interrogative Particles.—-Ne (enclitic) is always appended to the emphatic word, and generally serves to denote a question, without indicating the expectation of the speaker:

Omnisne pecūnia solūta est? Cic. Is all the money paid?
Estne omnis pecūnia solūta? Is all the money paid?

Remarks. 1. -Ne is originally a negative. Questioning a negative leans to the affirmative; and -ne is not always strictly impartial.
2. -Ne sometimes cuts off a preceding -e, and shortens the long vowel of the same, and often drops its own e. Viden? Sesset? Tūn? You?

457. Nōnne expects the answer Yes:

Nōnne meminisisti? Cic. Do you not remember?
Nōnne is generōssissimus qui optimus? Quint. Is he not the truest gentleman who is the best man?

So the other negatives with -ne: nēmōne, nihilne, and the like.
458. **Num** expects the answer *No*:

Num quis hic alius praeter me atque tē? Nēmo est. Plaut. *Is any body here besides you and me? No.*

Num tibi quum faucēs ūrit sitis, aurea quaeris pōcula? Hor. *When thirst burns your throat for you, do you ask for golden cups? [No.]*

459. **An** (or) belongs to the second part of a disjunctive question.

Sometimes, however, the first part of the disjunctive question is suppressed, or rather involved. The second alternative with *an* serves to urge the acceptance of the positive or negative proposition involved in the preceding statement. This abrupt form of question (*or, then*) is of frequent use in Remonstrance, Expostulation, Surprise, and Irony.

Nōn manum abstinēs? An tibi jam māvis cerebrum dispergam hic? Ter. *Are you not going to keep your hands off? Or would you rather have me scatter your brains over the place now?*

(Vir custōdit absens.) (My husband keeps guard, though absent.)

(Is it not so?) An nēscio longās rēgibus esse manūs? Ov. *Or perhaps you do not know (you do not know, then) that kings have long hands (arms).*

**Remark.**—Especially to be noted, in connection with *an*, are the phrases, *nēscio an*, *hand scio an*, *I do not know but; dubito an*, *I doubt, I doubt but = I am inclined to think*; which give a modest affirmation. Negative particles, added to these expressions, give a mild negation:

**Hand scio an ita sit.** Cic. *I do not know but it is so.*

**Hand scio an nulla senectūs beātior esse possit.** Cic. *I do not know but it is impossible for any old age to be happier.*

**Dubitō an Thrasybulum primum omnium pōnam.** Nep. *I doubt but I should (=I am inclined to think I should) put Thrasybulus first of all.*

So *Forsitan, perhaps,* regularly with the Potential Subjunctive:

**Forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requirās.** Verg. *Perhaps you may ask what was the fate of Priam, too.*

In later Latin *an* is used as a simple interrogative, and *nēscio an = nēscio num.*

**DIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.**

460. Direct Disjunctive Questions have the following forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Clause</th>
<th>Second and Subsequent Clauses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utrum, whether,</td>
<td>an, (anne), or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utrumne,</td>
<td>an,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ne,</td>
<td>an,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an (anne),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ne (chiefly in indirect questions).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

Utrum nescis quam alté ascenderis, a n id prō nihilō habēs? CIC. Are you not aware how high you have mounted, or do you count that as nothing?

Vosne Lūciun Domitium an vōs Lūcius Domitius déseruit? CAES. Have you deserted Lucius Domitius, or has Lucius Domitius deserted you?

Eloquar an sileam? VERG. Shall I speak, or hold my peace?

Utrum hóc tū parum meministi, a n ego nōn satis intellexi, a n mūtāsti sententiam? CIC. Do you not remember this, or did I misunderstand you, or have you changed your view?

Sunt haec tua verba necne? CIC. Are these your words, or no?

REMARK.—Aut (or), in questions, is not to be confounded with an. Aut gives another part of the same question, or another form of it (or in other words).

Vosuptās melioremne efficit aut laudābiliōrem virum? CIC. Does pleasure make a better or more praiseworthy man? (Answer: neither.)

Tibi ego an tū mihi servus es? PLAUT. Am I slave to you or you to me—which? (The MS. reading aut would expect the answer: neither).

461. In direct questions, or not is annōn, rarely necne; in indirect, necne, rarely annōn:

Is nē est quem quaero, a n nōn? Is that the man I am looking for, or not?

Sitque memor nōstrā necne, referte mihi. OV. (195, R. 7.)

REMARK.—Utrum is sometimes used with the suppression of the second clause for whether or no?

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

462. Indirect questions have the same particles as the direct, with the following modifications:

1. Num loses its negative force, and becomes simply whether:

Speculāri justi sunt num sollicitāti animā sociōrum essent. LIV. They were ordered to spy out whether the allies had been tampered with.

2. Si, if, is used for whether, chiefly after verbs and sentences, implying trial:

Tentāta rēs est si primō impetū capi Ardea posset. LIV. An attempt was made (in case, in hopes that, to see), if Ardea could be taken by a dash (coup-de-main). Compare Ō si (254).

3. An is sometimes used for num and ne, but never in model prose.
Consuluit deinde Alexander an totius orbis imperium sibi destinaret pater. Curt. Alexander then asked the oracle whether his father destined for him the empire of the whole world.

4. The form —— ne is found chiefly in the indirect question:

Tarquinius Priscī Tarquiniī rēgis filius nepōsne fuerit parum liquet. Liv. Whether Tarquin was the son or grandson of king Tarquin the Elder, does not appear.

Remark.—The form ne—ne is poetical.

SUMMARY OF DIRECT AND INDIRECT DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS.

463. Direct:

Is the last syllable short or long?

Postrēma syllaba u trum brevis est a n longa?

brevi s nē est a n longa?

Indirect:

In a verse it makes no difference whether the last syllable be short or long:

\[
\text{u trum postrēma syllaba brevis sit a n longa.}
\]

In versū nihil rēfert

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{postrēma syllaba brevis nē sit a n longa.} \\
\text{postrēma syllaba brevis a n longa sit. Cio.} \\
\text{postrēma syllaba brevis sit longa nē.}
\end{align*}
\]

Moods in Interrogative Sentences.

I. IN DIRECT QUESTIONS.

464. The Mood of the question is the Mood of the expected or anticipated answer.

465. Indicative questions expect an Indicative answer, when the question is genuine.

A. Quis homo est? B. Ego sum. Ter. Who is that? It is I.

A. Vīvitne [pater?] B. Vīvum liquimus. Plaut. Is father alive? We left him alive.

466. Indicative questions anticipate an Indicative answer with the negative when the question is rhetorical.
INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

Quis paupertātem nōn extimescit? Cīc. Who does not dread poverty?

Remark.—Nōnē and nōm in the direct question are really rhetorical. With nōnē a negative answer is anticipated to a negative, hence the affirmative character. Compare further, 452, R. 2.

467. Subjunctive questions expect Imperative or anticipate Potential answers. Subjunctive questions expect Imperative answers, chiefly in the First Person.


Remark.—So in the representative of the First Person in dependent discourse. (258.)

468. The Subjunctive is used in rhetorical questions, which imply a negative opinion on the part of the speaker:

Quis hōc crēdāt? Who would believe this? [No one.] Quid faceret alīud? What else was he to do? [Nothing.]

Quis tulerit Cracchōs de sēdiōne querenēs? Juv. (251.)

Remark.—On the Exclamatory Question see 584, 560.

II. IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

469. The Dependent Interrogative is always in the Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive may represent the Indicative:

Considerābimus quid fēcerit (Ind. fēcit), quid fāciat (Ind. faciit), quid fāctūrus sit (Ind. fāciēt or fāctūrūs est). Cīc. We will consider what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).

Epaminōndās quaesivit salvsus esse cīpelum. Cīc. Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe. (Salvsus esse?)

The Subjunctive may be original:

Ipse docet quid agam (210); fās est et ab hoste docēri. Ov. (Quid agam, what I am to do; not, what I am doing). See 258.

Remarks.—1. When the leading verb is disconnected from the interrogative, the Indicative form is employed:

So often with dic, say, vidē, see, quaere, ask. Dic, quid est? Tell me, what is it?
(Dic quid sit, Tell me what it is.)
Quin tū īnō verbō dic: quid est quod mē vellis? Ter. Won't you tell me in one word: What is it you want of me?

Dic mīhi quid fēl nisi nōn sapienter amāvi. Ov. Tell me what have I done, save that I have loved unwise.

The early poets go even further than this.

2. Nēscio quis, nēscio quid, nēscio quīn, nēscio quod, I know not who, what, which, are used exactly as indefinite pronouns, and have no effect on the construction.
INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

So also, nescio quōmodo, I know not how = strangely; and mirum quantum, it (is) marvellous how much = wonderfully, are used as adverbs:

Mirum quantum prófuit ad concordiam. Liv. It served wonderfully to promote harmony.

Nescio quid majus nőcitur Íliade. Prop. Something, I know not what, is rising greater than the Íliad.

Nescio quō pactō vel magis hominēs juvat glória īcta quam magna. Plin. Ep. Somehow or other, people are even more charmed to have a wide-spread reputation than a grand one.

The position excludes a conscious ellipsis of the Subjunctive.

3. The Relative has the same form as the Interrogative quis? except in the Nom. Sing.; hence the importance of distinguishing between them in dependent sentences. The interrogative depends on the leading verb, the relative belongs to the antecedent. (613, R. 2.)

Interrogative: dic quid rogēm. Tell me what it is I am asking.
Relative: dic quod rogo. Ten. Tell me that which I am asking (the answer to my question).

The relative is not unfrequently used where we should expect the interrogative, especially when the facts of the case are to be emphasized:

Dicam quod sentio. I will tell you my real opinion.

Incorporated relatives are not to be confounded with interogatives:

Quaerēmus ubi (=ībi ubi) maleficiōn inveniō potest. Cic. Let us look for the mischief in the place where it can be found.

PECULIARITIES OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

470. The subject of the dependent clause is often treated as the object of the leading clause (Prolēpsis):

Nōstī Marcellum quam tardus sit. Cic. You know Marcellus, what a slow creature he is.

471. Contrary to our idiom, the interrogative is often used in participial clauses. In English, the participle and verb change places, and a causal sentence becomes consecutive:

Quam utilitātem petentēs scire cupimus illa quae occultā nōbis sunt? Cic. What advantage do we seek when we desire to know those things which are hidden from us?

Solōn Pisistratō tyrannō quaerentī quā tandem spē frētus sibi tam audāciter resisteret respondisse dicitur, senectūte. Sen. Solon, to Pisistratus the usurper, asking him (= when Pisistratus the usurper asked him) on what earthly hope relying (= on what hope he relied that) he resisted him so boldly, is said to have answered “old age.”

472. Final sentences (sentences of Design) are used in questions more freely than in English:
Sessum it praetor. Quid ut júdicáetur? Cíc. The judge is going to take his seat. What is to be adjudged? (To adjudge what?)

Remark.—The Latin language goes further than the English in combining interrogative words in the same clause.

YES AND NO.

473. Yes is represented:

1. By sánē, (literally) soundly, sánē quidem, yes indeed, etiam, even (so), vērō, of a truth, ita, so, omnínō, by all means, certē, surely, certō, for certain, admodum, to a degree.

2. By immo or imo, which conveys a correction, and either removes a doubt or heightens a previous statement—yes indeed, nay rather.


Causa igitur nōn bona est? Immo optima. Cíc. The cause, then, is a bad one? Nay, it is an excellent one.

3. By cēnsecō, I think so.

4. By repeating the emphatic word either with or without confirmatory particles:

Estisne? Sumus. Are you? We are.


No is represented:

1. By nōn, nōn vērō, nōn ita, minimē, by no means, nihil, nothing, minimē vērō, nihil sānē, nihil minus.

2. By repeating the emphatic word with the negative:

Nōn frāta es? Nōn sum frāta, You are not angry? I am not.

Remark.—Yes, for, and no, for, are often expressed simply by nam and enim:

Tum Antōnius: Heri enim, inquit, hoc nihí prōposueram. Cíc. Then quoth Antony: Yes, for I had proposed this to myself yesterday.

SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

474. 1. A compound sentence is one in which the necessary parts of the sentence occur more than once, one which consists of two or more clauses.

2. Coördination is that arrangement of the sentence according to which the different clauses are merely placed side by side.

3. Subordination is that arrangement of the sentence according to which one clause depends on the other.
SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

He became poor and we became rich, is a coordinate sentence. He became poor that we might be rich, is a subordinate sentence.

4. The sentence which is modified is called the Principal Clause, that which modifies is called the Subordinate Clause. "He became poor" is the Principal Clause, "that we might be rich" is the Subordinate Clause.

Remark.—Logical dependence and grammatical dependence are not to be confounded. In the conditional sentence, vivam si vivet, let me live if she lives, my living depends on her living; yet "vivam" is the principal, "si vivet" the subordinate clause. It is the dependence of the introductory particle that determines the grammatical relation.

COORDINATION.

475. Coordinate sentences are divided into various classes, according to the particles by which the separate clauses are bound together.

Remark.—Co-ordinate sentences often dispense with conjunctions (Asyndeton). Then the connection must determine the character.

COPULATIVE SENTENCES.

476. The following particles are called Copulative Conjunctions: et, -que, atque (ac), etiam, quoque.

477. Et is simply and, the most common and general particle of connection, and combines likes and unlikes:

Pānem et aquam nātūra désiderat. Sen. Bread and water (is what) nature calls for.


478. -Que (enclitic) unites things that belong closely to one another. The second member serves to complete or extend the first:

Senātus populus quē Rōmānum, The Senate and people of Rome.
Ibi mortuus sepultusque Alexander. Liv. There Alexander died and was buried.

Combinations: et — et;
-que — et;
et — que (only for two words);
-que — que, chiefly in poetry (also Liv. and Sall.)

Et dominō satis et nimium fūrique lupōque. Tert. Enough for owner, and too much for thief and wolf.
479. *Atque* (compounded of *ad* and *-que*) adds a more important to a less important member. But the second member often owes its importance to the necessity of having the complement (*-que*). *Ac* (a shorter form, which does not stand before a vowel) is fainter than *atque*, and almost equivalent to *et*:

Intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs. SALL. Within the walls, ay, and in the heart of the city, are the enemies.

A. Ego servōs? (29.) B. Atque meus. PLAUT. I—a slave? And mine to boot.

*Atque* or *ac* is often used to connect the parts of a clause in which *et* has been already employed:

Et potentēs sequitur invidēa et humilēs abjectōsque contemptus et turpēs ac nocentēs odium. QUINT. The powerful are followed by envy; the low and grovelling, by contempt; the base and hurtful, by hatred.

**Remarks.**—1. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take *atque or ac*. See 645.

2. On the Latin proneness to subordination by means of the participle, see 469, R. 2, and 667, R. 1.

480. *Etiam*, *even* (*now*), *yet*, *still*, exaggerates (*heightens*) and generally precedes the word to which it belongs:

Nōbis rēs familiāris etiam ad necessāria deest, We lack means even for necessities of life.

Ad Apuli Claudiī senectūtem accēdebat etiam ut caecus esset. Cic. (558.)

Of time:

Nōn satis perrōsti mē etiam quālis sim. TEB. You still do not know well enough (= little know) what manner of person I am.

**Remark.**—*Et* is sometimes used for *etiam*, but sparingly. So *et ipse*, and kindred expressions.

481. *Quoque*, *so also*, complements (*compare -que*) and always follows the words to which it belongs:

Quum patru Timothē populus statuam posuisset, filiō quoque dedit. NEP. The people, having erected a statue in honor of the father of Timothēus, gave one to the son also (likewise).

**Remark.**—The difference between *etiam* and *quoque* is not to be insisted on too rigidly:

Grande et conspicuum nostōr quoque tempore monstrum. JUV. A huge and conspicuous prodigy, even in our day.
482. Copulation by means of the Negative.—Instead of et and the negative, neque (nec) and the positive is the rule in Latin:

Opiniōne vulgat rapimur in errōrem nec vēra cernimus. Cic. By the prejudice of the rabble we are hurried into error, and do not distinguish the truth.

Caesar substitit neque hostem laccēxīvit. Caes. Caesar halted and did not harass the enemy (without harassing the enemy).

Remarks.—1. Et—nōn, and .... not, is used when the negation is confined to a single word, or is otherwise emphatic:

Et militāvi nōn sine glōriā. Hor. And I have been a soldier not without glory.
On nec nōn, the opposite of et nōn, see 448, R. 3.

2. Combinations: Neque—neque; nec—nec, neque—nec.

neque—que. (nec—neque.)
et—neque.

3. Paradigms: And no one, neque quisquam, nor any one.
And no— neque ullus, nor any.
And nothing, neque quidquam, nor any thing.
And never, neque unquam, nor ever.

Neque amēt quemquam nec amōtur ab ulla. Juv. May he love no one, and be loved by none.

4. Nec is often nearly equivalent to nec tamen, and yet not:

Extra invidiam nec extra gloriām erat, Tac. He was beyond the reach of envy, and yet not beyond the reach of glory.

483. 1. Insertion and Omission of Copulatives.—When multus, much, many, is followed by another attribute, the two are often combined by copulative particles: many renowned deeds, multa et praeclāra facinora; many good qualities, multae bonae-que artēs.

2. Several subjects or objects, standing in the same relations, either take et throughout or omit it throughout. The omission of it is common in emphatic enumeration:

Phrygēs et Pisidae et Cilicēs; or, Phrygēs, Pisidae, Cilicēs, Phrygians, Pisidians, and Cilicians.

3. Et is further omitted in climaxes, in antitheses, in phrases, and in formulae:

Virī nōn est dēbilitāri dolōre, frangit, succumbere. Cic. It is unmanly to allow oneself to be disabled (unnerved) by grief, to be broken-spirited, to succumb.
OTHER PARTICLES EMPLOYED.

484. Other particles are sometimes employed instead of the copulative in the same general sense.

1. Temporal: Tum — tum, then — then; nunc — nunc, modo — modo, now — now; simul — simul, at the same time. Tum Graecē — tum Latinē, partly in Greek, partly in Latin.

Horatius Cocles nunc singulōs prōvocābat, nunc increpābat omnes. Liv. Horatius Cocles now challenged them singly, now taunted them all.

Modo huc, modo illuc, now hither, now thither (hither and thither).

Simul spēreōn, simul metuēbant, they despised and feared at the same time (they at once despised and feared).

On Quum — tum, see 589.

2. Comparative: ut — ita, as — so:

Dolabella ut Tarsensēs ita Lāodicēnī ultrō arcessiērunt, As the people of Tarsus so the people of Laodicea (= Both the people of Tarsus and those of Laodicea) sent for Dolabella of their own accord.

Often, however, there is an adversative idea:

Haeo omnia ut invítis ita nōn adversantibus patriciūs trānsacta. Liv. All this was done, the patricians, though unwilling, yet not opposing (= against the wishes, but without any opposition on the part of the patricians).

3. Adversative: Nōn modo, nōn sōlum, nōn tantum, not only: sed etiam, vērum etiam, but even, but also (sometimes simply sed):

Urbēs maritimae nōn sōlum multīs periculis oppositae sunt sed etiam caecis. Cíc. Cities on the seaboard are liable not only to many dangers, but even (also) to hidden (ones).

Nōn docērī tantum sed etiam dēlectārī volunt. Quint. They wish not merely to be taught but to be tickled to boot.

In the negative form, nōn modo nōn, not only not; sed nē ... quidem, but not even; sed vix, but hardly.

Ego nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor sed nē reprehendo quidem factum tuum. Cíc. I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even find fault with your action.

Remarks. — 1. Instead of nōn modo (sōlum) nōn—sed nē—quidem, the latter nē is generally omitted, when the two negative clauses have a verb in common, the negative of the first clause being supplied by the second:
ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES.

485. The adversative particles are: autem, sed, verum, verò, at, atqui, tamen, ceterum. Of these only sed and tamen are really adversative.

486. Autem (postpositive) is the weakest form of but, and indicates a difference from the foregoing, a contrast rather than a contradiction. It serves as a particle of transition and explanation (= moreover, furthermore, now), and of resumption (= to come back), and is often used in syllogisms:

Rūmōribus mēcum pugnās, ego autem ā tē ratiōnēs requiro. Cic. You fight me with rumors, whereas I ask of you reasons.

Quod est bonum, omne laudābile est; quod autem laudābile est, omne est honestum; bonum igitur quod est, honestum est. Cic. Everything that is good is praiseworthy; but everything that is praiseworthy is virtuous; therefore, what is good is virtuous.

Remark.—Autem commonly follows the first word in the sentence or clause; but when an unemphatic est or sunt occupies the second place, it is put in the third. So igitur and enim.

487. Sed (set) is used partly in a stronger sense, to denote contradiction, partly in a weaker sense, to introduce a new thought, or to revive an old one:

Nōn est vīvere s ed valēre vita. Mart. (443.)

Domitius nullā ille quidem arte sed Latinē tamen dicēbat. Cic. Domitius spoke with no art it is true, but for all that, in good Latin.

488. Verum, it is true, true, always takes the first place in a sentence, and is practically equivalent to sed in its stronger sense:

Si certum est facere, faciās; vērūm nē post conferās culpam in mē. Ter. If you are determined to do it, you may do it; but you must not afterward lay the blame on me.
489. *Verò, of a truth,* is generally put in the second place, asserts with conviction, and is used to heighten the statement:

Platōnem Dion adeò admirātus est ut sē tōtum ei trāderet. Neque vērō minus Plato dēlectātus est Diōne. *Neq.* Dion admired Plato to such a degree that he gave himself wholly up to him; and indeed Plato was no less delighted with Dion.

490. *At* (another form of *ad = in addition to*) introduces startling transitions, lively objections, remonstrances, questions, wishes, often by way of quotation:

Si gravis dolor, brevīs. *At* Philoctēta jam decimum annum in spē-luncā jacet. *Cic.* If pain is sharp, it is short. But Philoctetes has been lying in his cave going on ten years.

"At multis mals affectus?" Quis negat? *Cic.* "But he has suffered much?" Who denies it?

Si scelestus est at mi īnfidēls nōn est. *Ter.* If he is a scamp, yet (at least) he is not unfaithful to me.

A t vīdēte hominis intollerābilem audāciam! *Cic.* Well, but see the fellow’s insufferable audacity!

A t vēbīs male sīt! *Cat.* And ill luck to you!

REMARK.—*Ast = at + set (sed)* is antiquated and poetic.

491. *Atqui (But how? = But what of that?)* is still stronger than *at,* and is used chiefly in argument:

Atqui perspicuum est hominem ē corpore animōque constāre. *Cic.* But it is clear that man consists of body and soul; igitur, therefore.

492. *Tamen (literally, even thus), nevertheless,* is often combined with *at,* vērum, sed.

It is commonly prepositional, unless a particular word is to be made emphatic:

Nātūram expellās furcā, tamen usque recurret. *Hor.* You may drive out Dame Nature with a pitchfork, for all that she will ever be returning.

Domitian nullā quidem arte sed Latinē tamen dīoṣbat (487).

493. Cēterum, *for the rest,* is used by the historians as an adversative particle.

REMARK.—In lively discourse, the adversative particles are often omitted.

DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES.

494. The disjunctive particles are *aut,* vel, -ve, sīve (seu).
495. **Aut,** or, denotes absolute exclusion or substitution:

*Vincéròs aut vincís.* Prop. *You are conquered or conquering.*

**Aut** is often = or at least (**aut saltem**):

*Cüncti aut magna pars fidem mútāvissent.* Sall. *All, or at least a great part, would have changed their allegiance.*

*Duo aut summum trés juvenēs.* Liv. *Two, or at most three, youths.*

**Aut—aut,** either—or:

*Quaedam terrae partēs aut frigore rigent aut ùruntur calōre.* Cic. *Some parts of the earth are either frozen with cold or burnt with heat.*

*Aut dic aut accipe calcem.* Juv. *Either speak or take a kick.*

496. **Vel** (literally, you may choose) gives a choice, often with *etiam,* even, *potius,* rather:

*Ego vel Clulvìnuus.* Juv. *I, or, if you choose, Cluvius.*

*Per mé vel stértās licet, nón modo quàescās.* Cic. *For all I care, you may (even) snore, if you choose, not merely sleep.*

*Satis vel etiam minimum multa.* Cic. *Enough, or even too much.*

*Epicūrus homo minimē malus vel potius vir optimus.* Epicurus (was) a person by no means bad, or, rather, a man of excellent character.

**Vel—vel,** either—or (whether—or):

*Miltiadēs dixit ponte rescissō rēgēm vel hostium ferrō vel inopīā paucīs diēbus interitūrūm.* Nep. *Miltiades said that if the bridge were cut the king would perish in a few days, whether by the sword of the enemy, or for want of provisions.*

497. **-Ve** (enclitic) is a weaker form of *vel* (with numerals, *et most*):

*Cùr time? jubitem vel locum défendere?* Juv. *Why should I fear or hesitate to maintain my position?*

*Bis tērve, twice or at most thrice (bis terque, twice and indeed as much as thrice, if not more).*

498. **Sive,** (sequ), if you choose, gives a choice between two designations of the same object:

*Urbem mātrī sequo novōrcae reliquit.* Liv. *He left the city to his mother, or (if it seems more likely) to his step-mother.*

499. **Sive—sive** (sequ—sequ) whether—or (indifference):
CAUSAL AND ILLATIVE SENTENCES.

500. A. The causal particles are nam, enim, namque, and etenim, for.

Sensus mirifico collocati sunt. Nam oculti tanquam speculatores altissimum locum obtinent. Cic. The senses are admirably situated. For eyes, like the watchmen, occupy the highest post.

Themistocles murros Atheniensium restituit suō periculō. Namque Lacedaemonii prohibere conāti sunt. Nep. Themistocles restored the walls of Athens with risk to himself. For the Lacedaemonians endeavored to prevent it.

Piscēs óva relinquunt, facile enim illa aquā sustinentur. Cic. Fish leave their eggs, for they are easily kept alive by the water.

REMARKS.—1. Nam is always put at the beginning of a sentence; enim is always postpositive (486, R.); namque and etenim are commonly put in the first place:

For what can you do? Nam quid agas? Quid enim agas? Namque quid agas? Etenim quid agas?

2. These particles are originally asseverative, and are often used not only to furnish a reason, but also to give an explanation or illustration (as for instance). Quid enim agas? What, for instance, can you do? This is especially true of enim, but a broad difference between nam and enim (which is derived from nam) cannot be proved. Etenim is often used to carry on the argument, and gives an additional ground. Nempe (from nam) namely, to wit, that is, of course, is often used ironically.


3. In etenim, sed enim, vērum enim, enim vērō, vērum evenim vērō, as in etenim, enim gives a ground or an illustration of the leading particle, but translation by an ellipsis would be too heavy, and enim is best left untranslated:

A. Audi quid dicam. B. At enim tae al jam audi re esdem milliēs. Ten. A. Hear what I say. B. But (I won't, for) I am tired of hearing the same things a thousand times already.

501. B. Illative particles are itaque, igitur, ergō, ideō, idcirco, proinde.

502. Itaque (literally, and so), therefore, is put at the beginning of the sentence by the best writers, and is used of facts that follow from the preceding statement:

Nēmo ausus est liber Phōcionem sepelire. Itaque a servis sepultus
503. *Igitur,* therefore, is generally postpositive, and is used of opinions which have their natural ground in the preceding statement:

**Mibi non satisfacit. Sed quot hominés tot sententiae; fallit igitur possimus.** Cic. *Me it does not satisfy. But many men many minds. I may therefore be mistaken.*

**Remark.**—In historical writers, *igitur* is used both in position and signification as *itaque.* When emphatic, *igitur* is found even in the best authors at the head of the sentence.

504. *Ergō* denotes necessary consequence, and is used especially in arguments, with somewhat more emphasis than *igitur.* *Idēō,* *idcirco,* means on that account; *proinde,* accordingly, is employed in exhortations, appeals, and the like:

**Negat haec filiam meā suam esse; non ergō haec māter mea est.** Plaut. *She says that I am not her daughter, therefore she is not my mother.*

**Quod praecptum (nōsce tē ipsum) quia mājus erat quam ut ab homine vidērētur idcirco addignātum est deō.** Cic. *This precept (know thyself), because it was too great to seem to be of man, was, on that account, attributed to a god.*

**Proinde aut exeant aut quiēscant.** Cic. *Let them then either depart or be quiet.*

**Subordination.**

505. Subordinate sentences are only extended forms of the simple sentence, and are divided into Adjective and Substantive sentences, according as they represent adjective and substantive relations.

506. Adjective sentences express an attribute of the subject in an expanded form:

**Uxor quae bona est (625) = uxor bona.**

507. Substantive sentences are introduced by particles, which correspond in their origin and use to the Oblique Cases, Accusative and Ablative.

These two cases furnish the mass of adverbial relations, and hence we make a subdivision for the organization of the subordinate sentence appears as follows:
508. A. Substantive sentences.
   I. Object sentences.
   II. Adverbial sentences:
   1. Of Cause. (Causal.)
   2. Of Design and Tendency. (Final and consecutive.)
   3. Of Time. (Temporal.)
   4. Of Condition and Concession. (Conditional and concessive.)
   B. Adjective sentences (Relative).

509. 1. Final and Consecutive Clauses always take the Subjunctive. Others vary according to their conception. Especially important are the changes produced by Ὄρατιο Ὠμβίκτα.

2. Ὄρατιο Ὠμβίκτα, or Indirect Discourse, is opposed to Ὄρατιο Ῥεκτά, or Direct Discourse, and gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words. Ὄρατιο Ὠμβίκτα, proper, depends on some Verb of Saying or Thinking expressed or implied, the Principal Clauses being put in the Infinitive, the Dependent in the Subjunctive.

Socratēs dicere solēbat:
ō. R. Omnēs in ē quod scīunt satis sunt eloquentēs.
ō. R. Socrates used to say: "All men are eloquent enough in what they understand."
ō. O. Omnēs in ē quod scīrent satis esse eloquentēs.
ō. O. Socrates used to say that all men were eloquent enough in what they understood.

3. The oblique relation may be confined to a dependent clause and not extend to the whole sentence. This may be called Partial Obliquity:
ō. R. Nova nupta dicit: Fleo quod ire necesse est. The bride says: I weep because I must needs go.
ō. O. Nova nupta dicit sē flēre quod ire necesse sit. The bride says that she weeps because she must needs go.
ō. R. Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse est. Cat.
The bride weeps because she must go.
P. O. Nova nupta flet quod ire necesse sit. The bride is weeping because "she must go" (quoth she).
4. Akin to ō. ō. is the so-called Attraction of Mood by which clauses originally Indicative are put in the Subjunctive because they depend on Infinitives or Subjunctives. (666.)

Non dubito quin nova nupta fieat quod ire necesse sit. I do not doubt that the bride is weeping because she must go.

Remark.—The full discussion of ō. ō. must, of course, be reserved for a later period, See 650.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

510. In those dependent sentences which require the subjunctive, the choice of the tenses of the dependent clause is determined by the form of the principal clause. Principal Tenses are followed by Principal; Historical, by Historical.

All forms that relate to the Present and Future (Principal Tenses) are followed by

\[ \text{the Present Subjunctive (for continued action)} \]
\[ \text{the Perfect Subjunctive (for completed action)} \]

All forms that relate to the Past (Historical Tenses) are followed by

\[ \text{the Imperfect Subjunctive (for continued action)} \]
\[ \text{the Pluperfect Subjunctive (for completed action)} \]

Remark.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: I have been doing, I had been doing. Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (I was doing) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect and Pluperfect, when the action is completed as to the leading verb.

511. PREM. cognōscō,
PREP P., cognōscī,
FUTURE, cognōscam,
FUT. PERF., cognōsce(ri),
IMPERF., cognōscēbam,
PLUPERF., cognōscīram,

I am finding out,
I have found out (I know),
I shall (try to) find out,
I shall have found out (shall know),
I was finding out,
I had found out (I knew),

\[ \text{quid faciās}, \]
\[ \text{what you are doing}; \]
\[ \text{quid feceris}, \]
\[ \text{what you have done}; \]
\[ \text{quid fecessēs}, \]
\[ \text{what you had done}; \]
\[ \text{quid faceres}, \]
\[ \text{what you were doing}; \]
\[ \text{quid fecissēs}, \]
\[ \text{what you had been doing}; \]
\[ \text{quid facerēs}, \]
\[ \text{what you were doing (before)}; \]
\[ \text{quid fecerēs}, \]
\[ \text{what you had been doing (before)}; \]
\[ \text{quid fecerēs}, \]
\[ \text{what you were doing (before)}; \]
\[ \text{quid fecerēs}, \]
\[ \text{what you had been doing (before)}; \]
SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

**Historical Tenses.**

Epaminondas quaeavit salutane esset clipeus. CIC. (489.)
Noctu ambulabat in foro Themistocles quod somnum capere non posset. CIC. (541.)
Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accedebat etiam ut caecus esset. (558.)

Tanta opibus Etruria erat ut jam non terras solum sed mare etiam fama nominis sui implisset. LIV. So great in means (= so powerful) was Etruria that she had already filled not only the land but even the sea with the reputation of her name.

Quum primi ordinés hostium coindissent, tamen acerrimē reliqui resistēbant. CAES. (587.)

Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermæ dējicerentur. NEP. (513, R. 2.)
Ägēsiaus quum ex Aegyptō reverteretur dēcessit. NEP. (586.)
Delēta est Ausonum gēns perinde a csi internecivō bellō certāsset. LIV. (608.)

Hannibal omnia prīusquam exce deret pugnā erat expertus. LIV. (579.)

**Remarks.**—1. The Historical Present is treated according to its Tense, or according to its Sense. Final sentences more commonly follow the Sense.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES. 247

Caesar cognoscit quid hostes { 1. faciant, facerint, is doing, has done, etc.
Caesar finds out (found out) what the enemy { 2. facerent, fecissent, was doing, had done, etc.

Tense: Ubi Caesarum erant ut sibi parabant. Caes. The Ubi beg Caesar to spare them.
Sense: Atheniensés creant decem praetóres qui exercitui praessent. Nsr. The Athenians make ten generals to command their army.
Sense and Tense: Agunt grátias quod sibi peperissent; quod arma cum hominibus consanguineis contulerint queruntur. Caes. They return thanks to them for having spared them, and complain that they had crossed swords with kinsmen.
So of authors:
Chrysippus disputat aethera esse cum quem hominés Jovem appellarent. Cic. Chrysippus maintains that to be aether which men call Jove.
2. The Pure Perfect is often treated as an Historical Perfect in the matter of sequence:
Hodié expertus sum quam cædáca felicitas esset. Curt. This day have I found out how perishable happiness is.

512. Sequence of Tenses in Sentences of Design.—Sentences of Design have, as a rule, only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. The Roman keeps the purpose and the process, rather than the attainment, in view.

Present, edunt, they are eating,
Pure Perf., edérent, they have eaten,
Future, edent, they will eat,
Fut. Perf., ederint, they will have eaten,
Imperfect, edérent, they were eating,
Pluperfect, edérent, they had eaten,
Hist. Perf., edérent, they ate,

Principal Tenses.
Atque ut vivamus viver e désinim us. Mart. (424)
Et precor ut possim tuitius esse miser. Ov. (424)
Gal·linae pennis sovent pullós nē frígore laedantur. Cic. (545)
Légem brevem esse oportet, quō faci·lius ab imperitis teneatūr. Sen. (545)
Mē praemísit domum haec ut nuntiém uxorí suae. Plaut. He has sent me home ahead of him, to take the news to his wife.
Oculós effodiam tibi nē observáre possis. Plaut. I will gouge out your eyes for you, to make it impossible for you to watch me.

Historical Tenses.
Laelius veniēbat ad cēnam ut satiāret désideria nātūrae. Cic. Laelius used to go to table, to satisfy the cravings of nature.
Phaethón ut in currum patris tollerētur optāvit. Cic. (546)
Remark.—The Perf. and Pluperf. Subj. are sometimes found in sentences of Design, chiefly in earlier and later Latin, when stress is laid on completion, or when an element of Hope or Fear comes in: *Ut sic dixerim, if I may be allowed to use the expression.*

Id agendum est ut satis viserimus. Sen. _We must aim at having tried enough._

Affirmare audite me omni ope adinserum ne frustra vos habe spem de me conceperitis. Liv. _I dare assure you that I will strain every nerve to keep you from having conceived this hope of me in vain._ (After a past tense, _nec concepissestis._)

513. Exceptional Sequence of Tenses:—Sentences of Result (Consecutive Sentences). In Sentences of Result, the Present Subjunctive is used after Past Tenses to denote the continuance into the Present, the Perfect Subjunctive to imply final result. This Perfect Subjunctive may represent either the Pure Perfect or the Aorist, the latter especially with the negative: the action happened once for all or not at all.

Present Tense:

Sicilliam Verres per triennium ita vexavit ut ea restitut in antiquum statum nullo modo posset. Cic. Verres so harried Sicily for three years as to make it utterly impossible for it to be restored to its original condition.

Perfect Tense (Pure):

Murena Asiae sic obiit ut in ea neque avariae neque luxuriae vestigium relinquisset. Cic. Murena so administered Asia as not to have (that he has not) left in it a trace either of greed or debauchery. (There is no trace there).

Perfect Tense (Aorist):

Equites hostium acrierit cum equitatu nostro confixerunt tamen ut nostri eis in silvis collegae compulerint. Caes. _The cavalry of the enemy engaged the cavalry on our side briskly, and yet (the upshot was that) our men forced them into the woods and hills._

Neque vero tam remissis ac languidis animis quisquam omnium fuisset quae nocte consueverit. Caes. _And indeed there was no one at all of so slack and indifferent a temper as to take (a wink of) sleep that night._

Remarks.—1. Authors vary much in the use of this Perfect. Cicero uses it very rarely; some abuse it.

2. After accidit, contigit, and other Verbs of Happening, the Imperfect is always used, the result being already emphasized in the Indicative form. Accidit ut una nocte omnès Hermæ disconnectorit. Nep. _It happened that in one night all the Hermæ were thrown down._

Representation of the Subjunctive in the Future and Future Perfect Tenses.

514. The Subjunctive has no Future or Future Perfect, which
are represented either by the other Subjunctives, or in the Active by the Subjunctive of the Periphrastic Conjugation.

Rule I.—After a Future or Future Perfect Tense, the Future relation is represented by the Present Subjunctive, the Future Perfect by the Perfect Subjunctive, according to the rule.

| Cognōscam,                         | quid faciās, what you are doing (will be doing). |
| I shall (try to) find out,         | quid fāceris, what you have done (will have done). |
| Cognōvero,                        |                                                |
| I shall have found out (shall know),|                                                |

But whenever the dependent future is subsequent to the leading future, the Periphrastic Tense must be employed.

| Cognōscam,                         | quid factūrus sis, what you are going to do (what you will do). |
| I shall (try to) find out,         |                                                |
| Cognōvero,                        |                                                |
| I shall have found out (shall know),|                                                |

[Considerābimus], [we shall consider].

A. Quid fācerit aut quid ipsī accidērit aut quid dixerit, What he has done, or what has happened to him, or what he has said.

B. Aut quid faciat, quid ipsī accidat, quid dicat, Or, what he is doing, what is happening to him, what he is saying.

C. Aut quid factūrus sit, quid ipsī cāsūrum sit, quā sit fūsūrus orātūne. Cic. Or what he is going to do (will do), what is going to (will) happen to him, what plea he is going to employ (will employ).

Tū quid sis auctūrus si ad mē scripserīs pergrātum erit. Cic. It will be a great favor if you will write to me what you are going to do.

Remark.—In some of these forms, ambiguity is unavoidable. So A may represent a real perfect, B a real present.

515. Rule II.—After the other tenses, the future relation is expressed by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, Present or Imperfect.

| Cognōsco,                          | quid factūrus sis, (what you are going to do), what you will do. |
| I am finding out,                  |                                                |
| Cognōvit,                         |                                                |
| I have found out (know),           |                                                |
| Cognōsēbam,                       | quid factūrus essēs, (what you were going to do), what you would do. |
| I was trying to find out,          |                                                |
| Cognōveram,                       |                                                |
| I had found out,                   |                                                |

Incertum est quam longa cūjusque nōstrum vita futūra sit. Cic. It is uncertain how long the life of each one of us is going to be (will be).
Antea dubitabam ventūrae essent legiōnēs. Cic. Before, I was doubtful whether the legions would come (or no).

Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quin ventūrae nōn sint. Cic. Now I have no doubt that they will not come.

Remarks.—1. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Periphrastic are used only to represent the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional Sentence.

Cognōscō, Cognōvi, quid factūrus fuérisset, (what you have been I am finding out, I have found out (know), what you would have done. going to do),

Cognōsecīam, Cognōveram, [quid factūrus fuisset, (what you had been I was trying to find out, I had found out, what you would have done, going to do), rare].

2. There is no Periphrastic for the Future Perfect Active, no Periphrastic for Passive and Supineless Verbs. The Grammars make up a periphrastic for all these from futūrum sit, esset ut, as:

ut redierit, I do not doubt that he will have returned.

Nōn dubito quin futūrum sit; ut maecenas, that he will grieve.

ut necērur, that he will be killed.


Nōn dubito quin confecta jam rēs futūra sit, I do not doubt but the matter will have been settled by this time.

In the absence of the Periphrastic forms, use the proper tenses of posse. (340, R. 3.)

3. When the preceding verb has a future character (Fear, Hope, Power, Will, and the like), the simple subjunctive is sufficient:

Gallī nisi perfrēgerint mūntiōnēs dē omni salūte dēspōrant; Rōmānī si rem obtinuerint finem omnium labōrum expectant. CAES. The Gauls despair of all safety unless they break through (shall have broken through) the fortifications; the Romans look forward to an end of all their toils, if they hold their own (shall have held).

Vēnērunt querentēs spem nullam esse resistendi nisi præsidium Rōmānus misisset. LIV. They came with the complaint that there was no hope of resistance unless the Roman sent a force to protect them.

Of course the Deliberative Subjunctive is future: Examples, 283.

516. Sequence of Tenses in Órātio Obliqua: In Órātio Obliqua and kindred constructions, the attraction of tenses applies also to the representatives of the Future and Future Perfect Subjunctive.

In [scytalā] erat scriptum nisi domum reverērētur sē capitis eum damnātūrōs. It was written in the scytale that if he did not return home, they would condemn him to death. NēP. (Órātio Recta: Nisi domum reverēritis sē capitis damnābimus, unless you (shall) return home, we will condemn you to death.)

Pỳthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem sibi imperātōrem sūmerent; id sī fēcissent incepta prōspera futūra. NēP. The Pythia instructed them to take Miltiades for their general; that if they did that, their undertakings would be successful. (Órātio Recta: sī id fēceritis, incepta prōspera erunt.

Lacedaemonii, Philippō minitante per litterās sē omnia quae cōnā-
rentur (Œ. R., cōnābimint) prohibitūrum, quæslērunt num sō esset etiam mori prohibitūrus (Œ. R., prohibitēbis). Cic. The Lacedaemonians, when Philip threatened them by letter, that he would prevent everything they undertake (should undertake), asked whether he was going to (would) prevent them from dying too.

517. Sequence of Tenses after the other Moods.—The Imperative and the Present and Perfect Subjunctive have the Sequences of the Principal Tenses; the Imperfect and Pluperfect have the Sequences of the Historical Tenses.

[Nē] compōne cómās quia sī ventūrus ad illam. Ov. Do not arrange (your) locks because (forsooth) you are going to see her.

Excellentibus ingenīis citius désuerit ars quā civem regant quam quā hostem supérrent. Liv. Great geniuses would be more likely to lack the skill to control the citizen than the skill to overcome the enemy.

Quid mē prohibitēret Epicūrēum esse, si probārem quae ille diceret? Cic. What would prevent me from being an Epicurean if I approved what he said (says)?

Tum ego tē primus hortārer diū pensātāres quem potissimum ēligēres. Plin. Ep. In that case I should be the first to exhort you to weigh long whom you should choose above all others.

Quae vita Priamō fuisse, si ab adolescentiā sōisset quōs ōventūs senectūtis esset habitūrus? Cic. What sort of life would Priam have led if he had known, from early manhood, what were to be the closing scenes of his old age?

Remarks.—1. Of course when the Perf. Subj. represents the Historical Perf. it takes the historical Sequence:

Magna culpā Pelopis qui nōn docuerit filium quāstenus esset quidque cūrandum. Cic. Greatly to blame is Pelops for not having taught his son how far each thing was to be cared for.

So also in the conditional proposition, when the action is past. For varying conception, see Cic. Off. iii. 24.

2. The Imperfect Subjunctive, being used in opposition to the Present, might be treated as a Principal Tense, but the construction is less usual:

Verērēr nē immodicam orātiōnem putārēs nisi esset generis ējus ut saepe incipere saepe désinere videātur. Plin. Ep. I should be afraid of your thinking the speech of immoderate length, if it were not of such kind as to produce the effect of often beginning often ending.

518. Sequence of Tenses after an Infinitive or Participle.—When a subordinate clause depends on an Infinitive or Participle, Gerund or Supine, the tense of that clause follows the tenses of the Finite verb.
Cupid scire, 
_I am desirous of knowing_,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{quid agās,} & \quad \text{what you are doing.} \\
\text{quid āgeris,} & \quad \text{what you have done.} \\
\text{quid āctūrūs sīs,} & \quad \text{what you are going to do (will do).} \\
\text{quid agerēs,} & \quad \text{what you were doing.} \\
\text{quid ēgisēs,} & \quad \text{what you had done.} \\
\text{quid āctūrūs essēs,} & \quad \text{what you were going to do (would do).}
\end{align*}
\]

Cupiēbam scire, 
_I was desirous of knowing_,

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{quid agat,} & \quad \text{what he is doing,} \\
\text{quid ēgerit,} & \quad \text{what he has done,} \\
\text{quid āctūrūs sit,} & \quad \text{what he is going to do (will do),} \\
\text{quid āgeret,} & \quad \text{what he was doing,} \\
\text{quid ēgisēt,} & \quad \text{what he had done,} \\
\text{quid āctūrūs essēt,} & \quad \text{what he was going to do,}
\end{align*}
\]

Mihi interrogantī, 
_When I ask him_,
(literally: to me asking),

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{nōn respondet,} & \quad \text{no answer.} \\
\text{he gives to do (will do),} \\
\text{nōn respondit,} & \quad \text{no answer.} \\
\text{he gave}
\end{align*}
\]

Mihi interrogantī, 
_When I asked him_,
(literally: to me asking).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{quid āctūrūs essēt,} & \quad \text{what he was going to do,}
\end{align*}
\]

Apellēs pictōrēs ēōs pecōāre diēōbat qui nōn sentīrent quid esset satis. _Cic._ Apelles used to say that those painters blundered who did not perceive what was (is) enough.

Athēnīēnēs Cyrrilum quandam suādentem ut in urbe manērent lapidibus coōperuērunt. _Cic._ (546.)

Cupidō incessit animōs juvenum scīsciat an dī ad quem eōrum regnum Rōmānum esset ventūrum. _Livy._ The minds of the young men were seized by the desire of inquiring to which of them the kingdom of Rome would come.

Misērunt Delphōs consultum quid facerent. _Nep._ They sent to Delphi to ask the oracle what they should do.

Exception.—A Perfect Infinitive or Participle, dependent on a Present Tense, commonly takes the sequence of the Past Tenses:

Satis mihi multa verba fēcisse videor quārē esset hōc bel·lum necessārium. _Cic._ I think I have said enough (to show) why this war is necessary.

519. The Potential of the Past.—The Potential of the Past may depend on a Present Tense:

Videō causās esse permultās quae Titum Rosciolum impel·lērent. _Cic._ I see that there are very many causes which might have impelled Titus Roscius.

Quaerō ātē cūr Gājum Cornēlium nōn dēfendērem. _Cic._ I ask you why I was not to defend Gajus Cornelius.

Remark.—The Sequence of Tenses is not unfrequently deranged by the attraction of parenthetic clauses, or the shifting of the conception.
USE OF THE REFLEXIVE IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

520. In subordinate clauses, the Reflexive is used with reference either to the subject of the principal, or to the subject of the subordinate, clause; and sometimes first to the one and then to the other.

521. The Reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject; hence, in Infinitive Sentences, in Indirect Questions, in Sentences of Design, and Sentences which partake of the Oblique Relation:

Animus sentit sē vi sūā, nōn aliēnā movērt. Cic. *The mind feels that it moves by its own force, (and) not by that of another.*

Quaeavērunt num sē esset etiam mori prohibērunt. Cic. (516.)
Pompēius ā mē petīvit ut sēcum et apud sē esset quotidie. Cic. *Pompey asked me to be with him, and at his house, daily.*

Pautus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suūs reliquisset mihi dōnavit. Cic. *Pautus presented to me all the books (as he said) that his brother had left (quōs frāter ējus reliquerat, would be the statement of the narrator).*

Remarks.—1. Sentences of Tendency and Result have is:

Tarquinius sic Servium diligēbat ut ējus vulgē habērētur filius. Cic. *Tarquin loved Servius so that he was commonly considered his son.*

2. The Reflexive may refer to the real agent, and not to the grammatical subject of the principal clause:

Ā Caesāre invītōr sibi ut sīm légātus. Cic. *I am invited by Caesar (= Caesar invites me) to be lieutenant to him.*

Especially to be noted is the freer use of suus (395, R. 1). The other forms are employed chiefly in reflexive formulae:

Sui colligendī hostibus facultatem nōn relinquunt. Caes. *They do not leave the enemy a chance to rally.*

So sē recipere, to withdraw.

3. The Reflexive is used in general sentences, as one, oneself, etc.:

Déforme est sē prāedicāre. Cic. *It is loathsome to be bragging about oneself.*

With the Infinitive this follows naturally from 420.

4. In Indicative Relative Sentences, which are mere circumlocutions (506), is is the rule:

Socrāte in honestam sibi crēditīm orātiōnem quam et Lysīa sē compositum emit. Quint. *Socrates believed the speech which Lysias had composed for him when he was arraigned, dishonoring to him.*

Sometimes, however, the Reflexive is put contrary to the rule:

Metellus in its urbibus quae ad sē défecerant præsidia impōnēt. Sall. *Metellus put garrisons in those towns which had gone over to him; regularly, ad eum.*

Ille habet quod sibi dēbēbatūr. He has his due; regularly, et.

5. Sometimes the Demonstrative is used instead of the Reflexive, because the narrator presents his point of view:

Solōn, quō tētior vita ējus esset, furere sē simulāvit. Cic. *Solon feigned madness, that his life might be the safer.* (The notion of Result intrudes.)
6. Examples of Reflexives pointing both ways:

Römēnī légētās misērunt quī & Prūsīā peteriaēt nē inimicēssimus suum (= Rōmānōrum) apud sē [Prūsiam] habērēt. Nēρ. The Romans sent ambassadors to ask Prūsias not to keep their bitterest enemy at his court.


Hopeless ambiguity:

Hērōs meus damnās estō dare illa omnia sua. Qūnt. My heir is to give him all that is his.

7. For the sake of clearness, the subject of the leading sentence is not infrequently referred to in the form of the Demonstrative instead of the Reflexive:

Hēlvētīī Allobrogībus sēsē persuāsīrōs existimābant vel vi coactūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs īre patērentur. Cārs. The Helvētians thought that they would persuade or force the Allobroges to let them [the Helvētians] go through their territory.

8. Ipse is always used in its proper distinctive sense: so when it represents the speaker in ō. 0.

Ejus and Sui.

522. Alexander mortiēns ānulum suum dedērat Perdiccās, Alexander, [when] dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Perdiccās accēperat ejus ānulum, Perdiccas had received his ring.

Quārē Alexander déclārāverat sē regnum eī commendāssē, There-

by, Alexander had declared that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Ex quō Perdiccās conjēcerat eum regnum sībi commendāssē, From this, Perdiccas had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Ex quō omēs conjēcerant eum regnum eī commendāssē, From this, all had gathered that he had committed the kingdom to him.

Perdiccās postulāvit ut sē rēgem habērent quum Alexander ān-

ulum sībi dedisset, Perdiccas demanded that they should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him.

Amīci postulāvērunt ut omnēs eum rēgem habērent quum Alexan-

der ānulum eī dedisset, (His) friends demanded that all should have him to king, as Alexander had given the ring to him. (Lattmann and Müller.)

Ita sē gesserat Perdiccās ut eī regnum ab Alexandrō commendārē-

tur, Perdiccas had so behaved himself that the kingdom was intrusted to him by Alexander.

Object Sentences.

523. Verbs of Doing, Perceiving, Conceiving, of Thinking and Saying, often take their object in the form of a sentence.

Remark.—These sentences are regarded, grammatically, as neuter substantives. The accusative of neuter substantives is employed as a Nominative. Hence, a Passive or Intransitive Verb may take an object sentence as a subject.
I. OBJECT SENTENCES INTRODUCED BY QUOD.

524. Clauses which serve merely as periphrases (circumlocutions) of elements in the leading sentence are introduced by quod, that.

Remarks.—1. The leading sentence often contains a demonstrative, such as hōc, this; illud, id, that; and then the whole structure may be considered as a relative.

As these sentences present difficulties to the beginner, it may be well to postpone the consideration to the Relative.

2. In some of the combinations, quod may be considered an adverbial accusative of extent. (Inner Object.) Quod, in that (= because).

525. Quod is used to introduce explanatory clauses chiefly after a Demonstrative, after verbs of Doing and Happening with an adverb, and after verbs of Adding and Dropping:

Here quod means "the fact that," "the circumstance that."

Hōc sēlō propior quod amīcōs conjugis dēdit. Juv. In this alone (is the wife) nearer (than a mere neighbor), that she hates the friends of her husband.

Nil habet infelīx paupertās dārius in sē quam quod (id quod) ridiculōs hominēs facit. Juv. Unhappy poverty hath in itself nothing harder (to bear) than that it makes people ridiculous.

Magnum benefīciūm est nāturāe quod necesse est mori. Sen. (195.)
Quod spīro et placeō, si placeō, tuum est. Hor. That I do breathe and please, if that I please, is thine.

Bene facis quod me adjuvās. Cic. You do well (in) that you help me.

Bene mihi ἐσευνίτ quod mittor ad mortem. Cic. It is fortunate for me that I am sent to death (execution).

Add quod ingenuās didiscisse fidēlīter artēs ēmmollit mōrēs nec sinit esse ferōs. Ov. Add (the fact) that to have acquired faithfully the accomplishments (education) of a gentleman, softens the character, and does not let it be savage.

On nisi quod, see 592, R. 3.

The reigning mood is the Indicative. The Subjunctive is only used as in Óratīo Obliqua.

Quum Castam accūsārem nihil magis pressit quam quod accusātor ējus praevāricātiōnis crīmine corruiisset. Plin. Ep. When I accused Casta, there was no point that I laid more stress on than the fact (that I stated) "that her accuser had been crushed under a charge of collusion."
II. OBJECT SENTENCES, WITH ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

526. Preliminary Observation.—On the simple infinitive as an object, see 424.

The Infinitive as a verbal predicate, has its subject in the Accusative. (421.)

Remark.—The Accusative is the most general form of the noun; the Infinitive (or rather the Indefinite), the most general form of the verb. The two together give the outline, and not the details, of the thought—present an idea, and not a fact, as such. Compare 340.

527. Active verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing and Perceiving (Verba sentiendi et declarandi*), and similar expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive:

Thalēs Milēsius a quam dixit esse initium rērum, Thales of Miletus said that water was the first principle of things.

Solōn fure re sē simulāvit. Cic. Solon pretended to be mad.

* Verba sentiendi are: video, audiō, sentio, animadverto, scio, nōscio, intellego, perspicio, comperio, disco, meminī, crēdo, arbitrō, puto, suspicor, jūdico, cēnsō, dēco, concītō, spēro, dēspēro. Similar expressions are: spēs est, opinō est.

Verba declarandi are: sēdō, affirmō, nego, fateor, narrō, trādo, scrībo, nāntio, ostendo, dēmonstrō, persuādeo (546, R. 2.) significo, pollicicor, prōmitio, minō, simulō, dissimulō, etc. Similar expressions are: fāma est, auctor sum, testim sum, certōrem alicuem facio, etc.
ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

Medici causā morbi inventā curātiōnem esse inventam putant. Cic. Physicians think that, (when) the cause of disease (is) discovered, the method of treatment is discovered.

Volucrēs vidēmus fingere et construere nīdōs. Cic. We see that birds fashion and build nests.

Audiet civēs acuisset ferrum. Hor. [The youth] shall hear that citizens gave edge to steel.

Timagenēs auctor est omnium in litterās studiorum antiquissimam mūsicōn exstitisse. Qunt. Timagenes is the authority (for the statement) that of all intellectual pursuits music was the most ancient.

The sentence very often passes over into the Acc. and Inf. (ō. O.) without any formal notice.

REMARKS.—1. Verbs of Perception and Representation take the Participle to express the actual condition of the object of Perception or Representation (586). As there is no Present Participle Passive the Infinitive must be used, and thus the difference between intellectual and actual perception is effaced, sometimes even in the Active.

Audio civēs acuissent ferrum, I hear citizens sharpening the steel.

Audio & civibus acuī ferrum, I hear that the steel is sharpened by citizens; or, the steel as it is sharpened by citizens.

Octāvium dolōre confici vidi. Cic. I have seen Octavius (when he was) wearing out with anguish.

Vidi histriōnēs sēntēs ēgredi. Quint. I have seen actors leave the stage weeping.

Notice facio. I make out, represent, suppose:

Plato & Deo aedificārī mundum facit. Cic. Plato makes out that the universe is built by God.

Isocratem Plato laudārī fecit & Socrate. Cic. Plato has represented Isocrates as praised by Socrates.

Fac, quaeo. Quo ego sum esse tu. Cic. Suppose, I pray, yourself to be me.

2. When the subject of the Infinitive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, that subject is sometimes omitted—chiefly with Future Infinitive—and then esse also is dropped:

Refractūrōs carcerem minābantur. Liv. They threatened to break open the jail.

3. The simple Infinitive is often used in English, where the Latin takes Acc. and Inf. See 424, R. 3.

The (Greek) attraction of the predicate of the Inf. into the Nominative after the Verb of Saying or Thinking, is poetical:

Phasēlus ille, quem vidētis, hospitēs, alt fuisset nāvium celerrimus. Cat. That pinace yonder, which you see, my stranger guests, declares she used to be the fastest craft afloat.

4. When the Accusative with the Infinitive is followed by a dependent accusative, ambiguity may arise:

Ājo tē, Aesacidē, Rōmāns vincere posse, in which tē may be subject or object.

Real ambiguity is to be avoided by giving the sentence a passive turn:

Ājo & tē, Aesacidē, Rōmānus vincere posse. I affirm that the Romans can be conquered by thee, son of Aeacus.

Ājo tē, Aesacidē, & Rōmānīs vincel posse, I affirm that thou, son of Aeacus, canst be conquered by the Romans.

When the context shows which is the real subject, formal ambiguity is of no importance. But see Quint. vii. 9, 10.
NOMINATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

528. Passive verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, prefer the personal construction, in which the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive appears as the Nominative Subject of the leading verb.

Active:

Trädunt Homērum caecum fuisse, they say that Homer was blind.

Passive:

Träditur Homērus caecus fuisse, Homer is said to have been blind.

[Träditur Homērum caecum fuisse], it is said that Homer was blind.

But when the leading verb is a form compounded with esse, to be, the impersonal construction is preferred:

Träditum est Homērum caecum fuisse. Cic. There is a tradition that Homer was blind.

Aristaeus inventor olei fuisse dicitur. Cic. Aristaeus is said to have been the inventor of oil.

Terentii (20, R. 1.) fabulae propter elegantiam sermōnis putabantur a Laeliiō scribi. Cic. Terence’s plays, on account of the elegance of the language, were thought to be written by Laelius.

Si Vējōs migrāvimus ā misisse patriam vidēbimur. Liv. If we remove to Veji, we shall seem to have lost our country.

Reus damnātum iri vidēbātur. QUINT. (436, R. 2.)

But:

Venerem Adōnīdī nūpsisse prōditum est. Cic. It is recorded that Venus married Adonis.

Orāvit Pythagorae auditōrem fuisse Numam. Cic. It is believed that Numa was a hearer of Pythagoras.

Remark.—In Verbs of Saying, except dīco, the personal construction is confined to the third person. The poets are free in treating verbs under this head.

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AFTER VERBA SENTIENDI ET DECLARANDI

529. The Infinitive denotes only the stage of the action, and determines only the relation to the time of the leading verb (274).
530. After verbs of Saying, Showing, Believing, and Perceiving, and the like,

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;
The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;
The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

Remark.—The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: I have been studying, I had been studying. Hence, the Imperfect Indicative (I was studying) is represented in this dependent form by the Perfect Infinitive, because it is prior to the leading verb.

In this table the Present is taken as the type of the Principal, the Imperfect as the type of the Historical, Tenses.


P. T. Dicit: tē errāre, tē décipi,
    He says, that you are going wrong,
    that you are deceived (217, R.).

H. T. Dicēbat: tē errāre, tē décipi,
    He was saying, that you were going wrong,
    that you were deceived,

Prior Action.

P. T. Dicit: tē errāsse, tē déceptum esse,
    He says, that you have gone wrong,
    that you went wrong,
    that you have been going wrong,
    that you have been (are) deceived,
    that you were deceived (Aor.),
    (that people have been deceiving you).

H. T. Dicēbat: tē errāsse,
    He was saying, that you had gone wrong,
    that you went wrong,
    that you had been going wrong,
    that you had been deceived.
    that you were deceived (Aor.),
    (that people had been deceiving you).

Subsequent Action.

P. T. Dicit: tē errātūrum esse, tē déceptum irti,
    He says, that you (are about to go wrong), will (be) going (ing) wrong,
    that you (are going to) will be deceived.

H. T. Dicēbat: tē errātūrum esse, tē déceptum irti,
    He was saying, that you were about to (would) go wrong,
    that you were going to (would) be deceived.

Periphrastic Future.

The following form (the Periphrastic Future) is necessary when the Verb has no Suffix or Future Participle. It is often used from other verbs to intimate an interval, which cannot be expressed by other forms, and is more common in the Passive than the Future Passive Inf. of the paradigms.
ACTIVE.  

**Periphrastic Future.**  

P. T. Dicit: fore (futūrum esse) ut errēs (metuās), fore (futūrum esse) ut errāveris* (rare),  

H. T. Dīcēbat: fore ut errārēs (metuerēs), errāssēs (rare),  

FORE UT DECIPILĀRIS (METUĀRIS),  

FORE UT DECEPTUS SIS (RARE), USUALLY. DECEPTUM FURE (NOT FUTūRUM ESSE).  

FORE UT DÉCIPERĒRIS (METUERĒRIS), DECEPTUM FURE (RARELY: FORE UT DECEPTUS ESSE).  

**Passive.**  

REMARKS.—1. For examples of the Periphrastic, see 240.  

Carthāginiensēs débellātum mox fore rēbantur. Liv. The Carthaginians thought that the war would soon be brought to an end. From débellātum erit, it will be (have been) brought to an end. So in the deponent aďęptum fore.  

2. Posse, velle, etc., do not require the Periphrastic, and seldom take it. (240, R. 3.)  

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF WILL AND DESIRE.  

532. Verbs of Will and Desire take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive:  

The relation is that of an Object to be Effected:  

Si vis mē fiāre, dolendum est primum ipsam tibi. Hor. If you wish me to weep, you must first feel the pang yourself.  

Utrum Milōnis corporis an Pythagorae tibi māllis virēs ingenii dārī? Cīc. Which (whether) would you rather have given to you, Milo’s strength of body or Pythagoras’ strength of mind?  

Ipse jubeat mortis nōs meminisse Deus. Mart. (375, 3.)  

Vitae summā brevis spem nōs vetat incohāre longam. Hor. (424, R. 3.)  

Nēmo ire quenquam pūblica prohibet viā. Plaut. (387.)  

Germānī vīnum ad sē omnino impōrtārī nōn sīnunt. Caes. The Germans do not permit wine to be imported into their country at all.  

REMARKS.—1. On the construction of this class of verbs with ut (nē, quōminus), see 546. Impero, I command, in ordinary prose takes only the Passive Infinitive:  

Hannibal imperāvit quam plātrīmās venānītās serpentēs vītās colligī. Nāp. Hannibal ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be caught alive.  

Permitto seldom takes the Infinitive. Jubeo, I bid; sino, I let; veteo, I forbid; prohibeo, I prohibit, always have the Infinitive of Passive Verbs. These verbs may themselves be turned into the Passive: jubeor, sinor, vetor, prohibor.  

---  

* Heavy periphrastics are of rare occurrence. So Fēsīās dēsērērunt utrum eōrum fœcisset rectē factūrum (Liv. xxxi. 8); not fore ut fœcisset, although the O. R. requires utrum fœceris, rectē fœceris. (223, R. 4.) See Weissenborn’s note.
2. After *jubeo*, *I bid*, and *veteo*, *I forbid*, the Infinitive Active can be used without an imaginary or indefinite subject:

*Jubet reddere*, he bids return (orders the returning).

*Vetat adhibère medicinam*, he forbids the administration of medicine.

*Infandum, régina, jubés renováre dolórem*, *Verg.* *Not meet for speech, O queen, the anguish which you bid (me, us) revive.*

3. When the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the leading verb, the subject of the Infinitive is not necessarily expressed:

*Ní párère velis, perseundum erit ante lucernás. Juv.* *Unless you resolve to obey, you will have to perish before candle-light.*

*Et jam málfit equós nunquam tétigisse paternós. Ov.* *And now he could have wished rather never to have touched his father’s horses.*

But the subject may be expressed, and commonly is expressed, when the action of the Infinitive is not within the power of the subject:

*Timoleón máluit sē diliģit quam metul.* *Nep.* *Timoleon preferred that he should be loved rather than that he should be feared.*

*Et fugit ad salicés et sē cupit ante vidérī.* *Verg.* *And flees to the willows, and desires that she should first be seen.*

4. The poets go much further in using verbs and phrases as expressions of Will and Desire. See 424, R. 4.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.

533. Verbs of Emotion take a dependent Accusative and Infinitive, inasmuch as these verbs may be considered as verbs of Saying and Thinking:

*Salmum tē advénisse gandeō*, *I rejoice that you should have arrived safe (to think that you have arrived safe, at your arriving safe).*

*Quod salvus a dvēnīstī, that you have arrived safe.*

*Quod salvus a dvēnerīs, that (as you say) you have arrived safe.*

*Glòriātur Epicūrus sē nōn tōtō asse pascē.* *Sen.* *Epicurus brags of dining for not quite one copper.* See 541.

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

534. The Accusative with the Infinitive is used in Exclamations and Exclamatory Questions as the object of an unexpressed thought or feeling:

*Hem, mea lūx, tē nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexāri.* *Cic.* *341.*

*Hominemne Rōmānum tam Graecē loqui? Plin. Ep.* *A Roman speak such good Greek? (To think that a Roman should speak such good Greek).*

*Mēne inceptō dēsīstere—? Verg.* *I—desist from my undertaking?*

*Hinc abīre mātrem? Ter.* *Mother go away from here?*

REMARKS.—1. Different is *quod*, which gives the ground:

*Hei mihi quod nullis amor est medicābilis herbis.* *Ov.* *Woe's me that (in that, because) love is not to be cured by any herbs.*

2. On *ut*, with the subjunctive, in a similar sense, see 560. Both forms object.
THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE AS A SUBJECT.

535. The Accusative with the Infinitive may be the Subject of a sentence. The Predicate is a substantive or neuter adjective, an impersonal verb or abstract phrase.

Inúsitátum est régem capitis reum esse. Cic. *It is an extraordinary thing that a king should (for a king to) be tried for his life.*

Facinus est vincirí cívem Rómanum. Cic. *It is an outrage that a Roman citizen should be put in chains.*

Necesse est facere súmpturn quí quaerit (= eum quí quaerit) lucrum. Plaut. *Need is that he make outlay who an income seeks.*

Légem brevem esse oportet, quó fácilius ab imperitiis teneátor. Sen. *It is proper that a law should be brief (a law ought to be brief), that it may the more easily be grasped by the uneducated.*

Quid Milónis intererat interfícii Clóti. Cic. (382.)

Opus est tē animó valēre. Cic. (390, R.)

REMARKS.—1. *Oportet, ut behovet, and necesse est, must needs,* are often used with the Subjunctive. So also many other phrases with ut. (See 559.)

Necesse also takes the Dative of the Person:

Hominí necesse est mori. *Man must needs die.*

Ut culpént alii, tibi mē laudáre necesse. Ov. *Let others blame, but you must give me praise.*

2. When the indirect object of the leading verb is the same as the subject of the Infinitive, the predicate of the subject is put in the case of the object: in standard prose chiefly with licet. *it is left (free); in poetry and later prose with necesse,* with satius est, *it is better, contingit, it happens, vacat, there is room:*

Mihi negligentí esse nón licet, *I am not free to be negligent.*

The Accusative may also be used:

Mihi negligentem esse nón licet.

The Accusative is regularly used when the Dative is not expressed:

N, negligentem esse nón licet, *One is not free to be negligent.*

In poetry, the Dative is allowable even then:

N, negligentí esse licet.

Sólus ero quoniam nón licet esse tū. Prop. *I shall be alone, since I may not be thine.* On licet with the Subjunctive, see 608.

OBJECT SENTENCES REPRESENTED BY THE PARTICIPLE.

536. The Participle is used after verbs of Perception and Representation, to express the actual condition of the object of perception or representation:

Catónem vidi in bibliothécá sedentem multis Stoícorum circumfusum libris. Cic. *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of Stoic books about him.*
Prōdīga nōn sentit perseverentem fēmina cōnsum. Juv. *The lavish woman does not perceive (how) the income (is) dwindling.*

Saepe illam audīvit furtīvā vōce loquentem. Cat. *I have often heard her talking in a stealthy tone.*

Gaudē quod spectānt occultē mīlle loquentem. Hor. (542.)

Polyphemum Ὅμερος cum ariete colloquentem facit. Cic. Homer represents Polyphemus (as) talking with the ram.

RemarK.—On the Infinitive, see 527. R. 1. The Greek participle agreeing with the leading Nominative after verbs of Perception and Emotion, is rare and poetical:

Sensit medīōs dēlapse in hostēs. Verg. *He perceived (it) having fallen (that he had fallen) midst the enemy.*


537. The Perfect Participle Passive is used after verbs of Causation and Desire, to denote impatience of anything except entire fulfillment:

Caligula Lolliam missam fēcit. Suet. *Caligula turned Lollias off (for good and all).*

Prūdentī mandās il quid recte cūrātum velīs. Ter. *You must intrust to a sensible man whatever you want properly attended to.*

RemarK.—After verbs of Will and Desire, the Infinitive esse is occasionally found with these Particles, and hence they may be considered as Perfect Infinitives (375). Compare, however, Perfect Participle Passive with opus est, tēsus est. (390.)

Causal Sentences.

538. Causal sentences are introduced:

1. By Quia, because, quod, (in that) because.
2. By Quoniam (quom iam), now that, quando, quandō quidem, since (rarely in this sense).
3. By Quum, as. (Inference.)
4. By the Relative Pronoun, partly alone, partly with ut, utpote, quippe, etc. (See 628, 634.)

RemarKs.—Quia and quod differ chiefly in that quod is used, and not quia, when the causal sentence is at the same time an object sentence. Quod is the Acc. Neut. Sing., quia the Acc. Nent. Pl. of qui, and often have a correlative demonstrative, such as, eō, idēō, idcirco, therefore, propterēō, on that account.

Quoniam and quando (quandōquidem) are used of evident, present reasons; but quando (quandōquidem) is rare in any other than a temporal sense. Temporal conjunctions are often used causally.

Causal Sentences with Quia, Quod, and Quoniam.

539. Causal sentences with quia, quod, and quoniam are put in the Indicative, except in oblique relation (Partial or Total).
Causal sentences with quia, quod, and quoniam take the Indicative in Direct Discourse:

540. Causal sentences with quia, quod, and quoniam take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

REMARK.—The other person of the oblique clause may be imaginary, and the writer or speaker may quote from himself indirectly:

Laetatus sum quod mihi liceret recta defendere. Cic. I was glad that I was free to champion the right.

541. Causal sentences with quia, quod, and quoniam take the Subjunctive in Oblique Discourse (Partial or Total).

Noctuambulabat in foro Themistocles quod somnum capere non posset. Cic. Themistocles used to walk about the market-place at night because (as he said) he could not get to sleep.

Quae quia non licet non facit, illa facit. Ov. She who does it not because (she thinks, forsooth) she may not (do it), does it.

Elsewhere: quae quia non licuit non facit, illa facit.

[Ne] compone comas quia sis venturus ad illam. Ov. (517.)

Quoniam ipse præ sé dicere non posset, verba fecit frater ejus Stesagoras. Nep. “As [Miltiades] could not speak for himself,” his brother, Stesagoras, made a speech. (Indirect quotation from the speech of Stesagoras.)

REMARKS.—1. Non quod, non quia, are used with the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the general rule. The Indicative denies absolutely,* the Subjunctive rejects

* That the Indicative is used only of excluded facts is not borne out by the usage of the language from Lucr. ii. 2, to Tac. Ann. xiii. 1.
an imaginary suggestion (as if from an ideal second person). The real ground often follows with sed quia, sed quod.

The Subjunctive is more common than the Indicative with non quod, non quia. Non quia = non quod, and non quin = non quo non, are found with the Subjunctive only.

Subjunctive:

Pugiles in jactandis caestibus ingemiscunt. Non quod doleant, sed quia profundenter voce omne corpus intenditur venitque plaga vehementior. Cic. Boxers in plying the caestus have groans, not that (as you might suppose) they are in pain, but because in giving full vent to the voice all the body is put to the stretch, and the blow comes with a greater rush.

Majores nostri in dominum de servis quaerit noluerunt; non quin posset verum inventur, sed quia videtur indignum esse. Cic. Our ancestors would not allow a slave to be questioned by torture against his master, not because (not as though, they thought,) the truth could not be got at, but because such a course seemed degrading.

A Lacedemoniorum exulibus praetor vim arcuerat, non quia salvos velit sed quia perire causa indicta noluerat. Liv. The praetor had warned off violence from the Lacedaemonian exiles, not (as you might have supposed) because he wished them to escape, but because he did not wish them to perish with their case not pleaded (unheard).

The same principle applies to magis quod (qua), quia . . . . sed quod, quia, with the moods in inverse order.

Libertatis originem inde, magis quia annuum imperium consulare factum est quam quod deminutum quidquam sit ex regis potestate, enumeres. Liv. You may begin to count the origin of liberty from that point, rather because the consul government was limited to a year, than because aught was taken away from the royal power.

Indicative:

Sum non dicam miser, sed certe exercitus, non quia multis debeo sed quia saepe concurrunt. Cic. I am, I will not say, wretched, but certainly worried, not because I am in debt to many, but because they (their claims) often conflict.

2. Verbs of Saying and Thinking are put in the subjunctive with quod by a kind of attraction:

Impetrare non potui, quod religione sese impedi factur. Cic. I could not obtain permission, because they said they were embarrassed (prevented) by a religious scruple (= quod impedimentur, because (as they said) they were prevented).

3. Causal sentences may be represented by a Participle. (672.)

**QUOD WITH VERBS OF EMOTION.**

542. Quod is used to give the ground of Emotions and Expressions of Emotion, such as Verbs of Joy and Sorrow, Satisfaction and Anger, Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint.

The rule for the Mood has been given already.

Indicative:

Gaudē quod spectant ocult te mille loquentem. Hor. Rejoice that a thousand eyes are gazing at you (while you are) speaking.

Dolet mihi quod tū nunc stomachāris. Cic. It pains me that you are angry now.
Quintum paenitet quod animum tuum offendit. Cic. (376, R.)
Juvat mē quod vigent studia. Plin. Ep. I am charmed that studies are flourishing.
Tristis es? indignor quod sum tibi causa dolōris. Ov. Are you sad? I am provoked (with myself) that I am a cause of pain to you.
Tibi grātīās ago, quod mē omni molestiā liberās. Cic. I thank you, that you free me from all annoyance.
Subjunctive:
Gaudet miles quod vicērit hostem. Ov. The soldier rejoices at having conquered the enemy.
Nunquam mihi in mentem veniet paenitēre quod ā mē ipse non dēsciverim. Cic. It will never occur to me to be sorry for not having been untrue to myself.
Laudat Panasēcius Afrīcānum quod fuerit abstīnens. Cic. Panasēcius praises (Scipio) Africanus for having been abstinent.
Nēmo orātōrem admirātus est quod Latinē loquerētur. Cic. No one (ever) admired an orator for speaking (good) Latin.
Sōcratēs accusātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem. Quint. Socrates was accused of corrupting youth.
Memini glōriāri solītum esse Quintum Hortensium quod nunquam bellō civili interferīisset. Cic. I remember that Quintus Hortensius used to boast of never having engaged in civil war.
Agunt grātīās quod sibi pepercissent. Caes. (511, R. 1.)

**Remark.**—All these verbs may be construed with the Accusative and Infinitive: salvum tē advēnisse gaudeo. (533.) But in Expressions of Praise and Blame, Thanks and Complaint, quod is more common.
Amō tē et nōn neglexisse habeo grātiam. Ter. I love you (= much obliged), and I am thankful to you for not having neglected (it).
Grātīārum ingenium nōn latuisset tuum. Ov. I congratulate (you) that your genius has not lain perdu.
Isocrates queritur plus honoris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus darī. Quint. Isocrates complains that more honor is paid to the virtues of the body than to those of the mind.
On cum, see 566.

**Sentences of Design and Tendency.**

543. 1. Sentences of Design are commonly called Final Sentences. Sentences of Tendency are commonly called Consecutive Sentences. Both contemplate the end—the one, as an aim; the other, as a consequence.
2. They are alike in having the Subjunctive and the particle ut (how, that), a relative conjunction.
3. They differ in the Tenses employed. The Final Sentence,
as a rule, takes only the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Consecutive Sentences may take also Perfect and Pluperfect.

4. They differ in the kind of Subjunctive employed. The Final Sentence takes the Optative. The Consecutive Sentence takes the Potential. Hence the difference in the Negative:

**Final:** nē (ut nē),
nē quis,
nē ullus,
nē unquam, (nē quando,)
nē usquam, (nēcubi,)
nē aut—aut, (ut nēve—nēve,)

**Consecutive:** ut nōn, that not.

ut nēmo, that no one.

ut nullus, that no.

ut nunquam, that never.

ut nusquam, that nowhere.

ut neque—neque, that neither—nor.

**Remarks.—1.** Verbs of *Effecting* have the Final Sequence.

2. Verbs of *Hindering* have the sequences of the Final Sentence, but often the signification of the Consecutive.

3. Verbs of *Fearing* belong to the Final Sentence only so far as they have the Optative.

---

**FINAL SENTENCES.**

544. Final Sentences are divided into two classes:

I. Final Sentences in which the Design is expressed by the particle: Sentences of Design.

ēsse oportet ut vivās, nōn vivere ut edās. [Cic.] *You must eat in order to live, not live in order to eat.*

This form may be translated by, *in order to;* sometimes by, *that may, might, that with the subj.,* and the like.


vōlo ut mihi respondeās. Cic. *I wish you to answer me.*

This form is often rendered by *to, never by in order to,* sometimes by *that and the subjunctive,* or some equivalent.

Partly Final and partly Consecutive are:

III. Verbs of Hindering.

Peculiar in their sequence are:

IV. Verbs of Fearing.

**Remarks.—1.** Temporal Particles are often used in a final sense. So *dum, dōne, quod (574), antequam, prōsquam (579).*
2. The general sense of a Final Sentence may be expressed:
1.) By the Genitive of Gerund or Gerundive, with (seldom without) causâ or grâtias.
(429, R. 2.)
2.) By ad with Gerund and Gerundive. (483.)
3.) By the Accusative Supine after Verbs of Motion. (486.)
4.) By the Future Participle Active (later Latin):
Maroboduus misit légâtós ad Tiberium grâtis auxilia, Marobod sent commis-

I. Sentences of Design.

545. Sentences of Design are introduced by:
1. Ut (utti) (how) that, and other Relative Pronouns and Ad-

verbs (631).

Ut is often preceded by a demonstrative expression, such as: idcirco,
therefore; eò, on that account; eò consiliò, with the design.

2. Quô = ut eò, that thereby; with comparatives, that
the . . . — . . .:

3. Nê, that not, lest, continued by néve, neu. (450.)

 Remark.—Other particles are of limited use. So ut nê cannot follow verbs of nega-
tive signification; quôminus is used with Verbs of Hindering; quin requires a preceding
negative besides.

Esse oportet ut vivâs, non vivere ut edâs. [Cic.] You must eat to live,
not live to eat.

Inventa sunt specula, ut homo sê ipse nôsceret. Sen. Mirrors were
invented, to make man acquainted with himself.

Ut amôris, amâbilis estô. Ov. That you may be loved (to make yourself
loved, in order to be loved), be lovable.

Lêgem brevem esse oportet, quô facilius ab imperâtis teneâtur Sen.
A law ought to be brief, that it may the more easily be grasped by the unedu-
cated.

Senex serit arborës, quae alteri sèculô prôsint. Cic. The old man sets
out trees, to do good to the next generation.

Semper habë Pyladôn, qui consôlêtur Orestôn. Ov. Always have a
Pylades, to console Orestes.

Artaxerxês Themistoclî Magnêsiam urbem dônâverat, quae et pânem
praebëret. Nêp. Artaxerxes had given Themistocles the city of Magnesia,
to furnish him with bread.

Gallinae pennis fovent pullôs, nê frigore laedantur. Cic. Hens keep
(their) chickens warm with (their) wings, that they may not be (to keep them
from being) hurt by the cold.

Dionysius nê collum tonsôrî committeret tondâre filiâs suâs docuit.
Cic. (424, R. 8.)
FINAL SENTENCES.

Remark.—Ut non is used when a particular word is negativèd:

Confer tē ad Malliun, ut non ējectus ad aliēnōs sed invitātus ad tuōs esse videāris. Cic. Betake yourself to Mallius, that you may seem not thrust out to strangers, but invited to your own (friends).

II. Complementary Final Sentences.

546. Complementary Final Sentences follow Verbs of Willing and Wishing, of Warning and Beseeching, of Urging and Demanding, of Resolving and Endea
ing, of Forcing and Permitting (Verba studii et voluntātis).*

Positive: Ut.

Volo ut mihi respondeās. Cic. I wish you to answer me.

Phaethōn ut in currum patris tollerētur optāvit. Cic. Phaethon de
desired to be lifted up into his father's chariot.

Admoneo ut quotidiē meditēre resistendum esse Irācundiae. Cic. I admonish you to reflect daily that resistance must be made to hot-headedness.

Et precor ut possim tētius esse miser. Ov. (424.)

Exigis ut Priamus nātōrum funere lūdat. Ov. You exact that Priam's sport at (his) sons' funeral.

Athēniensēs quum statuerent ut nāvēs conscenderent, Cyrsilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent lapidibus coopernērunt. Cic. The Athenians, resolving to embark on board their ships, covered with stones (= stoned) one Cyrsilus, who tried to persuade them to remain in the city.

Publīum Lentulum ut sē abdicāret praeṭūrā coēgisti. Cic. You forced Publius Lentulus to resign the praetorship.

Illud nātūra non patitur, ut alīōrum spoliā nōstrās cōpiās augeāmus. Cic. Nature does not allow us to increase our wealth by the spoils of others.

So also any verb or phrase used as a verb of Willing or Deman
ding:

Pythia respondit ut moenibus lignēis sē mūnīrent. NeP. The Pythia
answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.

So eā lēge, eā condicioē ut (né), on condition that (that not).

Negative: Nē, ut nē.

* Such verbs and phrases are: ōro, rogo, peto, precor, obsecro, flāgito, postulo, — eōro, video, prōvidō, prōspicio. — suādeo, persuādeo, cēnaseo, hortor, adhortor, moneo, admoineo, pernooveo, adīcto, incito, impello, cōgo, — impero, mando, praeceptio, ēdeo diēco, scribo, mittō. — conceādo, permittō (sino). — statuo, constituo and dēcerno, — vōlo nōlo, málo, optō, studeo, nītor, contendo. ślabōro, pugno, — id ago, operam do, lēgeā. fero, lex est, auctor sum, consilium dō.
Caesar sui imperavit ne quod omnino telum in hostes relictur. Caes. Caesar gave orders to his (men) not to throw back any missile at all at the enemy.

Themistocles colligis sui praedixit ut ne prius Lacedaemoniorum legato dimitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Nep. Themistocles told his colleagues beforehand not to dismiss the Lacedaemonian envoys before he were sent back.

Ut nē is not used after verbs of negative signification, such as impedio, I hinder, recūso, I refuse. (548.)

Pompeius sui praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sed locō moverent. Caes. Pompey had told his men beforehand to receive Caesar's charge and not to move from their position.

Neque is sometimes used after ut:

Monitor tuus suādēbit tibi ut hinc discēdās neque mihi ullam verbum respondeās. Cic. Your adviser will counsel you to depart hence and answer me never a word.

**Remarks.**—1. Instead of ut with the Subjunctive, the Infinitive is frequently used with this class of verbs. So, generally, with jubeo, I order, 532. Authors vary. The use of the Infinitive is wider in poetry and silver prose.

2. When verbs of Willing and Wishing are used as verbs of Saying and Thinking, Knowing and Showing, the Infinitive must be used. The English translation is that, and the Indicative: volo, I will have it (maintain), moneo, I remark, persuādeo, I convince, dēcernō, I decide, cōgo, I conclude.

Moneo artem sine assiduitāte dicendi nōn multum juvāre. Cic. I remark that art without constant practice in speaking is of little avail.

Vix cuiquam persuādébatur Graeci omnī cesserōs Rōmānōs. Liv. Socrate any one could be persuaded that the Romans would retire from all Greece.

Nōn sunt istī audīendi qui virtūtem dāram et quasi ferreàm quandam esse volunt. Cic. (800.)

Est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem pluribus rēbus excellere. Cic. It is the way of the world not to allow that the same man excels in more things (than one).

3. When the idea of Wishing is emphatic, the simple Subjunctive, without ut, is employed, and the restriction of sequence to Present and Imperfect is removed:

Exsūstām velim nēminem cuiquam cāriōrem unquam fuisse quam tē mihi, Cic. I wish you to think that no one was ever dearer to anyone than you to me.

Mālo tē sapientes hostis metuat quam stulti civēs laudent. Liv. I had rather a wise enemy should fear you than foolish citizens should praise you.

Exsūstām habēas mē rogo, cēno domī. Mart. (280.)

Hōo ades, insānt fierant sine littōra fluctūs. Verg. Come hither (and) let the mad waves lash the shores.

Tam fālix essēs quam formōsissima vellem. Ov. (316.)

Nōllem dīxissem. Cīc. (254, R. 2.)

Occidit occideritque sinās cum nōmine Trōjām. Verg. 'Tis fallen, and let Troy be fallen name and all.

So jubeo in poetry and later prose. Compare also potius quam, 579, R.
III. Verbs of Hinderling.

547. The dependencies of Verbs of Hinderling may be regarded as partly Final, partly Consecutive. Nē and quōminus are originally final, but the final sense is often effaced, especially in quōminus. Quīn is a consecutive particle. The sequence of Verbs of Hinderling is that of the Final Sentence. The negative often disappears in the English translation.

548. Verbs signifying to Prevent, to Forbid, to Refuse, and to Beware, take nē with the Subjunctive:

Impedior nē plūra dicam. Cic. I am hindered from saying more (I am hindered that I should say no more).

Compare: "Who did hinder you that ye should not obey the truth?" Gal. v. 7.

Servitūs mea mihi interdixit nē quid mīrer meum malum. Plaut. My slavery has forbidden me to marvel at (329, R. 1.) ill of mine.

Histiaeus obstitit nē rēs conficerētur. Nep. Histiaeus opposed the thing being done.

Rēgulus nē sententiam diceret recūsāvit. Cic. Regulus refused to pronounce an opinion.

Maledictis dēterrēre nē scribat parat. Ter. (424.)

Tantum quum fingēs nē sīs manifesta cavētō. Ov. (264.)

Tantum nē noceās dum vīs prōdesse vidētō. Ov. Only see (to it) that you do not do harm while you wish to do good.

Remarks.—1. Verbs of Preventing also take quōminus (549), and some of them the Infinitive (562, R. 1). So regularly prohibēre:

Nēmō ire quenquam pūblicē prohibet vīs. Plaut. (387.)

Impedire, to hinder, dēterrēre, to frighten off, recūsāre, to refuse, sometimes have the Infinitive.

2. Verbs signifying to Beware belong to Verbs of Hinderling only so far as action is contemplated.

After caveo, I beware, nē is often omitted:

Cavē crēdās, Beware of believing.
(Cavē ut crēdās, Be sure to believe.)

Quōs vīceris tibi amīcōs esse cavē crēdās. Curt. Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are friends to you.

549. Quōminus (= ut eō minus), that thereby the less, is used with verbs of Preventing:

Such as: impedire, to hinder; prohibēre, to keep from; tenēre, to hold; dēterrēre, to frighten off; obstāre, to be in the way; recūsāre, to refuse; and the like:
Aestas non impedit quominus agrit colendi studia teneamus. Cic. Age does not hinder our retaining interest in agriculture.

Non deterrret sapientem mors quominus ref publicae (347) consulat. Cic. Death does not deter the sage from consulting the interest of the State.

Quid obstat quominus Deus sit beatus? Cic. What is in the way of God's being happy?

Caesar cognovit per Afranium stare quominus proelii dimicaretur. Caesar found that it was Afranius's fault that there was no decisive fight (stat, there is a stand still).

550. Quin is used like quominus, with Verbs of Preventing, but only when they are negativated or questioned.

Remarks.—1. Quin is compounded of qui + nō, how (in which way), + not, and answers to ut sō nōn or quō nōn. For nōn quin (= nōn quō nōn), see 541, n. 1.

2. Quin is used only after Negative Sentences, or Questions which expect a negative answer.

3. When quin is used as a Consecutive or Relative particle, ut nōn or qui nōn, it has all the sequences of the Consecutive or Relative. See 556.

4. When quin is used after Negative expressions of Doubt it has the sequences of the Interrogative.

5. When quin is used with Verbs of Preventing it has the sequences of the Final Sentence.

551. Quin is used when Verbs and Phrases of Preventing, Omitting, Refraining, Refusing, and Delaying, Doubt and Uncertainty, are negativated or questioned:

1. Verbs of Preventing and the like (Sequence of the Final Sentence):

Vix nunc obsistitur illis (208) quin lanient mundum. Ov. They are now hardly to be kept (that they should not rend) from rending the universe.

Antiochus non sō tenuit quin contrā suum doctōrem librum ēderet? Cic. Antiochus did not refrain from publishing a book against his teacher.

Nullum adhuc intermiat diem quin aliquid ad tē litterārum darem. Cic. I have thus far not allowed a day to pass but I dropped you (without dropping you) something of a letter (a line or two).

Facere non possum quin quotidie ad tē mittam litterās. Cic. I cannot do without (I cannot help) sending a letter to you daily.

(Nullō modō facere possum ut nōn sim populāris. Cic. I cannot help being a man of the people.)

Nōn possum quin exclāmem. Plaut. I cannot but (I must) cry out.

Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus. Cic. There is nothing wanting that I should be (= to make me) perfectly miserable.

Fieri nullō modō poterat quin Cleomenē (208) parcerētur. Cic. It
could in no wise happen but that Cleomenes should be spared (= Cleomenes had to be spared).

Paulum àult quin Fabius Vārum interficeret. CAES. There was little lacking but Fabius (had) killed Varus (= Fabius came near killing Varus).

2. Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty (Sequence of the Interrogative sentence):

Nōn dubium est quin uxōrem nōlit filius. TER. There is no doubt that (my) son does not want a wife.

Quis dubitet (= nēmo dubitet) quin in virtūte dīvitiae sint? CIC. (251.)

Nōn dubitāri dēbet quin fuerint ante Homērūm poētae. CIC. It is not to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.

Nunc mihi nōn est dubium quin ventūrae nōn sint legionēs. CIC. (515.)

Occasionally Verbs of Saying and Thinking are found with the same construction, because they are near equivalents.

Nēgāri nōn potest quin rectius sit etiam ad pācātōs barbarōs exercitum mitti. LIV. It cannot be denied (doubted) that it is better for an army to be sent to the barbarians even though they be quiet.

Nōn abest suspicio (Litotēs for dubitāri nōn potest) quin Orgetorix ipse sibi mortem conscīverit. CAES. There is no lack of ground to suspect (= there is no doubt that, 448, R. 2) Orgetorix killed himself.

REMARKS.—1. In Future relations nōn dubito quīn (according to 515, R. 3) may have the Simple Subjunctive instead of the Periphrastic:

Nōn dubitāre quin de omnibus obсидibus supplicium sūmat Arīostus. CAES. “He did not doubt that Arīostus would put all the hostages to death.” Comp. CAT. cviii.

So when there is an original Subjunctive notion:

Nōn dubito quīn ad tō statim veniam. CIC. I do not doubt that I ought to come to you forthwith. (Veniam! Shall I come?)

2. Of course dubito and nōn dubito may have the ordinary interrogative constructions. On dubito an, see 459, R.

3. Nōn dubito, with the Infinitive, usually means I do not hesitate to:

Nōn dubitēme dicere omnēs sapientēs semper bestiō esse. CIC. I should not hesitate to say that all wise men are always happy.

Et dubitāmus adūnum virtūte extendere virēs? VERE. And do we still hesitate to extend (our) power by (our) prowess? Compare tīmeo, vereor, I fear, hesitate to.

So occasionally nōn dubito quīn. See R. 1.

Rōmāni arbitrābantur nōn dubitāturūm fortēm vīrum quīn cēderet sequē animō lēgibus. CIC. The Romans thought that a brave man would not hesitate to yield with equanimity to the laws.

4. Nōn dubito with the Inf. for nōn dubito quīn occurs chiefly in NEPΩ, LIVY and later writers.

Sunt multī qui quae turpiæ esse dubitāre nōn possunt utilitātēs speciē ductī probent. QUINT. There are many who, led on by the appearance of profit, approve what they cannot doubt to be base.
IV. Verbs of Fearing.

552. Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Present and Perfect, Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Present Subjunctive represents the Present and Future Indicative.

The Perfect Subjunctive regularly represents the Perfect Indicative.

Present and Perfect Subjunctive become Imperfect and Pluperfect after a Past Tense.

With Verbs of Fearing, ne, lest, shows that the negative is wished and the positive feared; ut (ne non) shows that the positive is wished and the negative feared: ne non is used regularly after the negative.

Timeo ne hostis veniat, I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come.
(I wish he may not come.)

Timeo ne hostis venerit, I fear lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come.

Timeo ut amicus veniat, I fear lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.
(I wish he may come.)

Timeo ut amicus venerit, I fear lest my friend have not come, that he has not come.

Nön timeo ne amicus non veniat, I do not fear that my friend is not coming, will not come.

Nön timeo ne amicus venerit, I do not fear that my friend has not come.

Vereor ne dum minuere velim laborem augeam. Cic. I fear lest, while I wish to lessen the toil, I increase it (that I am increasing it).

Verēmur ne parum hic liber mellis et absinthii multum habēre videātur. Quint. I am afraid that this book will seem to have too little honey and (too) much wormwood.

Timeo ut sustineās labōrēs. Cic. I fear that you will not hold out under your toils.

Nön vereor ne tua virtūs opinīōni hominum nön respondēat. Cic. I do not fear that your virtue will not answer to (come up to) public expectation.

Metuo ne id consiliī cēperim quod nön facile explicāre possim. Cic. I fear that I have formed a plan that I cannot readily explain.
CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

553. Consecutive Sentences are those sentences which show the Consequence or Tendency of Actions. In Latin, Result is a mere inference from Tendency, though often an irresistible inference. In other words, the Latin language uses so as throughout, and not so that, although so that is often a convenient translation. The result is only implied, not stated.

554. Consecutive Sentences, or Sentences of Tendency and Result, have the Subjunctive mood.

Consecutive Subjunctives are put in the Present or Perfect, Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense according to the rules for sequence.

The introductory particle is ut.

In the leading clause, demonstratives are often employed in correlation with ut, which is a relative.

The Relative is sometimes used, parallel with ut (633).

The Negative is ut non, sometimes after negatives quin. When the notion of Design or Condition enters, ne is also found.

555. Consecutive Sentences are used after
1. Demonstratives,
2. Transitive and
3. Intransitive Verbs, and
4. Phrases,
all implying the creation or existence of conditions that tend to a result.

556. 1. Consecutive Sentences are largely used after Demonstratives expressed or implied.

Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam in hoste etiam diligamus. Cic. So great is the virtue of uprightness, that we love it even in an enemy.
Nemo tam timidus est ut malit semper pendere quam semel cadere. Sen. No one is so timid as to prefer to hanging always than to fall once (for all).

Neque me vixisse paenitet quoniam ita vixi ut non frustra me natum existimem. CIC. (S_O.)

Non is es ut te pudor unquam a turpitudine revocari. CIC. You are not the man for shame ever to have recalled you (=ever to have been recalled by shame) from baseness.

Nemo adeo ferus est ut non mitescere possit. Hor. No one is so savage that he cannot (be made to) soften.

After a negative quin = ut non:

Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendo investigari possit (possit). Ter. Naught is so hard but it can (= that it cannot) be tracked out by search.

Nunquam tam male est Siculiis quinquaginta facete et commodem dicant. CIC. The Sicilians are never so badly off as not to (have) something or other cleverer and pat (to) say.

Remarks.—1. Notice especially tantum abest (Impers.) . . . ut . . . ut. The origin of the phrase is shown by

Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear ne homini sit nihil bonum alium. CIC. So far is it from death (= so far is death from) being an evil that I fear man has no other blessing.

Tantum abest ut nostra miremur ut usque eo difficiles sumus ut nobis non satisfaciat ipse Démóstenès. CIC. So far are we from admiring our own (compositions) that we are so hard to please that Demosthenes himself fails to satisfy us.

The personal construction can be used when an abstract follows.

2. Dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy, aptus, idoneus, fit, take a consecutive sentence, but usually with qui, seldom with ut:

Digna fuit illa náttura quae meliora vellet. QUINT. That nature was worthy of willing better things (= of better aims).

3. A consecutive sentence follows quam ut (CIC.) or quam qui:

Májor sum quam ut mancipium sit meli corporis. Sen. (313.)

Májor sum quam cui possit Fortuná nocére. Ov. (313.)

On the omission of with ut with potius quam (priusquam), see 579, R.

4. Né, lest, is sometimes irregularly used instead of ut non, especially when the idea of design or wish intrudes:

Ita mà gesse né tibi pudóri essem. Liv. I behaved myself so as not to be a disgrace to you.

5. Ita — ut (sometimes ut alone), so that, often serves to restrict and condition. The negative is often nē (comp. 554).

Ita probanda est mensutüdo ut adhibeátur reipúblicae causè sevérítæs. CIC. Mildness is to be approved, so that (provided that) strictness be used for the sake of the commonwealth.

Ita frui volun volunt voluntárìbus ut nullí propter èas dolóres consequantur. CIC. They wish to enjoy pleasures without having any pain to ensue on account of them.

Pythagoræ et Plato mortem ita laudant ut fugere vitam vetent. CIC. Pythagoras and Plato so praise death that they, while they praise death, forbid fleeing from life.

Ita tú istaec tua miscétæ nó mé admisceòs. Tzu. Mix up your mixings so you mix me not withal.
CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

6. Ut nōn is often = without and the English verbal in -ing:
Octāviānus nuncquām filiōs suōs populō commendavit ut nōn adliceret: Si merēbuntur. Suet. Octavius (Augustus) never recommended his sons to the people in such a way as not to add (= without adding): If they are worthy.

Quī nōn vērē virtūtī studet certē mālet existimāri bonus vir ut nōn sit quam esse ut nōn putētur. Cic. He who is not a true lover of virtue will certainly prefer being thought a good man without being such, to being (a good man) without being believed (to be such).

After negatives quīn = ut nōn. (550, R. 3.)

557. 2. Verbs of Effecting belong partly to the Consecutive, partly to the Final Sentence. The negative is nōn or nē; the sequence, final.

Such verbs are facio, efficio, perficio, I make, effect, achieve; assequor, consequor, I attain, accomplish, and other verbs of Causation. Facere ut is often little more than a periphrasis.

Fortūna vestra facit ut irae meae temperem. Liv. Your fortune causes that I (makes me) restrain my anger (put metes to my anger).

Invitus (324, R. 6) facio ut recorder ruinās respūublicae. Cic. (It is) against my will that I (am doing so as to) recall the ruined condition of the commonwealth.

Negatives:

Rērum obscūritās nōn verbōrum facit ut nōn intelligātur ōrātio. Cic. It is the obscurity of the subject, not of the words, that causes the language not to be understood.

Potēstis efficere ut male moriar, nē moriar nōn potestis. Plin. Ep. You may make me die a hard death, keep me from dying you cannot.

558. 3. Consecutive Sentences follow many Impersonal Verbs of Happening and Following, of Accident and Consequent:

Such verbs are fit, accidit, contingit, it happens, ēsū venit, it occurs, accedit, there is added, sequitur, it follows. So also est, it is the case.

Ferō potest ut fallār. Cic. (It) may be (that) I am mistaken.

Potest fieri ut is unde tē audisse dicis trātus dixeritis. Cic. (It) may be (that) he from whom you say you heard (it) said it in anger.

Permaepē ēvenīt ut utilītās cum honestāte certet. Cic. It very often (so) happens that profit is at variance with honor.

Ad Applan Claudīi senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset. Cic. To the old age of Appius Claudius was further added his being blind.

REMARK.—Very common is the periphrasis fore (futūrum) ut, which gives the common form of the Fut. Inf. See 240.

559. 4. Many abstract phrases are followed by consecutive sentences.
TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

Such are: mōs, consuetūdō est, it is the way, the wont, opus, ūsus est; there is need, and the like. More rarely after adjectives such as aequum, justum, fair, just, and the like. So with the Genitive after esse.

The leading sentence is often a negative one to show the imaginary character of the result.

In all these relations the Accusative with the Inf. is more common.

Est mōs hominem ut nōlint eundem pluribus rēbus excellere. Cic. (546, R. 2.)

An cuīquam est ūsus homini sē ut cruciēt? Ter. (390, R.)

Dionysiō nē integrum quidem erat ut ad jūstītiam remigrāret. Cic. Dionysius was not free even (if he had wished it) to return to justice.

Est miserōrum ut malevolentēs sint atque invidēant bonīs. Plaut. The wretched have a way of being ill-natured and envying the well-to-do.

Rārum (= rārō accidit) ut sit idōneus suae rei quisque dēensor. Quint. It is rare for a man to be a good defender of his own case.

Remark.—Necessē est, it is necessary, generally, and oportet, it behooves, always, omit ut:

Leuctrica pugna immortālis sit necessē est. Nep. The battle of Leuctra must needs be immortal.

Sed nōn effugīēs; mēcum moriāris oportet. Prop. But you shall not escape; you must die with me.

Exclamatory Questions.

560. Ut with the Subjunctive is used in Exclamatory Questions.

Egone ut tē interpellem? Cic. I interrupt you?

Tū ut unquam tē corrigās? Cic. You—ever reform yourself?

Remark.—The expression is closely parallel with the Accusative and Infinitive. The one objects to the idea; the other, to any state of things that could produce the result. In neither case is there any definite or conscious ellipsis.

TEMPORAL SENTENCES.

561. The action of the Temporal or Dependent clause may stand to the action of the Principal clause in one of three relations:

I. It may be antecedent:

CONJUNCTIONS: Postquam (Postea quam), after that, after; ut, as; ubi, when (literally, where); simulac, as soon as; ut primum, cum primum, the first moment that.

II. It may be contemporaneous:
CONJUNCTIONS: Düm, döneC, while, until; quoad, up to (the time) that; quamdiú, as long as; cum, when.

III. It may be subsequent:

CONJUNCTIONS: Antequam, priusquam, before that, before.

A special chapter is required by

IV. Cum, when.

Moods in Temporal Sentences.

562. 1. The mood of Temporal clauses is regularly the Indicative.

2. The Subjunctive is used only—

1.) In Oratio Obliqua (509), Total or Partial. So also in the Ideal Second Person.

2.) When the idea of Design or Condition is introduced.

I. ANTECEDENT ACTION.

563. In historical narrative, Temporal Clauses with postquam, ubi, ut, simulac, ut primum, and cum primum commonly take the Historical Perfect or the Historical Present Indicative:

The English translation is not unfrequently the Pluperfect.

Postquam Caesar pervénit, obaidēs poposcit. CAES. After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.

Quae ubi nünItantur Rōmam, senātus extemplō dictātōrem dicī jussit. LIV. When these tidings were carried to Rome, the senate forthwith ordered a dictator to be appointed.

Pompeiōs ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, aciē excessit. CAES. As Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the line of battle.

Pelopidās nōn dubitāvit, simulac conspēxit hostem, confīgere (551, R. 8.). Nep. As soon as he (had) caught sight of the enemy, Pelopidas did not hesitate to engage (him).

Subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua:

Ariovistum, ut semel Gallōrum copiās vicerit (ō. R. vicit), superbē imperāre. CAES. *That Ariovistus, as soon as he had once beaten the forces of the Gauls, exercised his rule arrogantly."

Remark.—Postquam is rarely found with the Subjunctive outside of 5, 0.

564. The Imperfect is used to express an action continued into the time of the principal clause (overlapping).
The translation often indicates the spectator (224, R. 1).

Postquam nemo prœcèdere audēbat, intrat. Curt. After (he found that) no one had the courage to come forth, he entered.

Ubi nemo obvius fībat, ad castra hostium tendunt. Liv. When (they saw that) no one was coming to meet them, they proceeded to the camp of the enemy.

Subjunctive in Œrātio Obliqua:

Scriptisti eum, postquam nōn audēret (C. R. nōn audēbat) reprehendere, laudāre coepisse. Cīc. You wrote that, after he could not get up the courage to blame, he began to praise.

565. 1. The Pluperfect is used to express an action completed before the time of the principal clause; often of the Resulting Condition.

Albinus postquam dēcrēverat nōn ēgredī prōvinciā, militēs stativis castrīs habēbat. Sall. After Albinus had fully determined not to depart from the province, he kept his soldiers in cantonments.

Postēquam multitūdinem collegērat emblēmatum, instituit officinam. Cīc. After he had got together a great number of figures, he set up shop.

566. 2. The Pluperfect is used with postquam when a definite interval is mentioned.

Post and quam are often separated. With an Ablative of Measure, post may be omitted.

Aristidēs dēcessit ferē post ānum quartum quam Themistoclēs Athēnīs erat expulsus. Nēp. Aristides died about four years after Themistocles had been (was) banished from Athens.

Hamilcar nōnō ānnō postquam in Hispanicam vēnerat occīsus est. Nēp. Hamilcar was killed nine years after he came to Spain.

Aristidēs sextō ferē ānnōquam erat expulsus in patrīam restitūtus est. Nēp. Aristides was restored to his country about six years after he was exiled.

Subjunctive in Œrātio Obliqua:

Scriptum ā Posidōnīō est trīgintā annīs vixisse Panætium posteaquam librōs dē officīs ōdīdisset. Cīc. It is recorded by Posidonius that Panætius lived thirty years after he put forth his books on Duties. The attraction is sometimes neglected.

Remark.—The Historical Perfect is also in frequent use:

Nero nātus est Antīl post novem mensēs quam Tiberius excedisset. Suet. Nero was born at Antium nine months after Tiberius departed (this life).

On the Iterative Pluperfect, see below, 568.
567. Postquam and the like, with the Present and Perfect Indicative, assume a causative signification (compare quoniam, now that = since):

Cūria minor mihi vidētur posteōquam est māior. Cic. The senate-house seems to me smaller now that it is (really) greater.

Tremo horreōque post quam aspexi hanc. Ter. I quiver and shiver since I have seen her.

So cum sometimes:

Grātulor tibi cum tantum valēs. Cic. I wish you joy now that you have so much influence.

Iterative Action.

568. Rule I.—When two actions are repeated contemporaneously, both are put in tenses of continuance:

Humilēs labōrant ubi potentes dissident. Phaedr. The lowly suffer when the powerful disagree.

Populus mē stbilat; at mihi plaudo ipse domī simulac nummōs contemptor in arcā. Hor. The people kiss me; but I clap myself at home as soon as I goat o'er my cash in the strong box.

Ut quīque maximē labōrabat locus aut ipse occurrēbat aut aliquōs mittēbat. Liv. As each point was hard pressed, he would either hasten to help himself or send some persons.

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person:

Bonus segniōr fit ubi negligēs. Sall. A good man becomes more sluggish when you neglect him.

569. Rule II.—When one action is repeated before another, the antecedent action is put in the Perfect, Pluperfect, or Future Perfect; the subsequent action, in the Present, Imperfect, or Future, according to the relation.

As this use runs through all sentences involving antecedent action, all the classes are represented in the following examples:

Remark.—Observe the greater exactness of the Latin expression. Comp. 286, R. 2.

Quotiēs cecidit, surgit, As often as he falls, he rises.
Quotiēs ceciderat, surgēbat, As often as he fell, he rose.
Quotiēs ceciderit, surgēt, As often as he falls, he will rise.

Simul inflāvit tālēn tā pertō carmen agnōsitur. Cic. As soon as the flower blows, the song is recognized by the connoisseur.

Alcibiadēs simulac sé remiserat, luxuriōsus reperīsēbatūr. Nep. As soon as Alcibiades relaxed, he was found a debaucheec.
Dociliora sunt ingenia prius quam obductare. Quint. Minds are more teachable before they (have) become hardened.

Ager quum multos annos requiesvit, uberiorores offerre frugis solet. Cic. When a field has rested (rests) many years, it usually produces a more abundant crop.

Quam palam ejus annuit ad palmam convertatur Gyges, qui nullo vidit-batur. Cic. When (ever) Gyges turned the bezel of the ring toward the palm (of his hand), he was to be seen by no one.

Si pess condoluit, si dens, ferre non possimus. Cic. If a foot, if a tooth ache(s), we cannot endure it.

Stomachabatur senex, si quid asperius dixeram. Cic. The old man used to be fretted, if I said anything (that was) rather harsh.

Quod non dedit fortuna non eripit. Sen. What fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.

Haerebant in memoriam quaecumque audierat et viderat [Themistocles]. Nep. Whatever Themistocles had heard and seen (= heard and saw) remained fixed in his memory.

Qui timere desierint, odiare incipient. Tac. Those who cease to fear will begin to hate.

The Subjunctive with the Ideal Second Person:

Ubi consuleris, maturae factae opus est. Sall. When you have deliberated, you want speedy action.

The Subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua:

Cato mirari sse ajebat quod non ridet haruspex haruspicem cum vidisset. Cic. Cato said that he wondered that an haruspex did not laugh when he saw (another) haruspex. (Non ridet cum vidit.)

The Subjunctive by Attraction:

Rete texunt araneolae ut si quid inhaeserit conficiatur. Cic. (Si quid inhaesit, conficiunt.)

Quare fiessat, ut omnium oculos, quotiescunque in publicum prodissent, ad se converteretur. Nep. (Quotiescunque prodierat, convertebat.) (666.)

Remark.—The Subjunctive (Imperf. and Pluperf.) is sometimes found in Iterative Sentences—chiefly after the Imperf. Ind. or some combination which shows Will, Habit, Expectation. The construction is best explained by Partial Obliquity (509, 3). It is found chiefly in later historians and in Nepos. The passages in Caesar are not numerous, and some are uncertain.

Incurrere ea gens in Macedoniam solita erat ubi regem occupatum externis bellis sensisset. Liv. That tribe was wont to make a raid in Macedonia whenever they perceived the king engaged in foreign war.
CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

Qui annum aëus ordinis offendisset omnes adversos habebat. Liv. Whose had offended one of that order was sure to have all against him.

Modum adhibendum ubi res poseret priores erant. Liv. By the use of moderation, when the case demanded it, they were his superiors.


II. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION.

570. Conjunctions used of Contemporaneous Action are:

Dum, dōnec, while, so long as, until; quoad, up to (the time) that; quamdiū, as long as; cum, when.

An action may be contemporaneous in Extent—so long as, while.

An action may be contemporaneous in Limit—until.

Remark.—Dum (while) yet, denotes duration, which may be coextensive, so long as, or not. It is often causal. Dōnec (old form dōnicum, of uncertain composition), parallel with dum in the sense, so long as, until. Cicero uses it only as until. Quam (cum) demands a separate treatment.

I. Contemporaneous in Extent.

(So long as, while.)

571. Dum, dōnec, quoad, quamdiū, so long as, while, take the Indicative of all the tenses.

Dum vitant stulti vitia in contrāria currunt. Hor. Fools, while they avoid (one set of) faults, run into the opposite.

Sibi vērō hanc laudem relinquent, “Vixit, dum vixit, bene.” Ter. They leave indeed this praise for themselves, “He lived well while he lived” (all the time).

Tiberius Gracchus tamdiū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit. Cic. Tiberius Gracchus shall be praised so long as the memory of Roman history remains (shall remain).

Fuit haec gens fortis dum Lycūrgi lēgēs vigēbant. Cic. This nation was brave so long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force.

Dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persārum vigē rēge beatior. Hor. While I was acceptable in your sight, I throve more blessed than Persia’s king.

Quoad potuit, restitit. Cic. As long as he could, he withstood.

Subjunctive in Õratio Obliqua:

[Rēgulus dixit] quamdiū fūrērōrandō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem. Cic. [Regulus said] that as long as he was bound by his oath to the enemy he was not a Senator. (Quamdiū teneor nōn sum senātōr.)

Dum often resists the change. (658, R. 3.)
Subjunctive by Attraction:

Vereor nē, dum minuere velim, labōrem augeam. Cic. (552.) (Dum minuere volo, augeo.)

Remark.—When the actions are coextensive, the tenses are generally the same in both members, but not always. Dum with the Pluperf. Ind. is used of the Resulting condition. Liv. xxxii. 24.

572. Dum, while, while yet, commonly takes the Present Indicative after all Tenses: so especially in narrative.

Cape hunc equum, dum tibi virium alliquid superest. Liv. *Take this horse, while you have yet some little strength left.*

Dum haeō Rōmae aguntur, consulēs ambo in Ligurībus gerēbant bellum. Liv. *While these things were going on at Rome, both consuls were carrying on war in Liguria.*

Prætermissa ējus rei occāsio est, dum in castellōs recipiendōs tempus teritur. Liv. *The opportunity was allowed to slip by, while time was wasted in recovering miserable forts.*

Remark.—The relation is often causal, and the construction is parallel with the Present Participle, the lack of which in the Passive it supplies. Here the Present Ind. is simply a tense of continuance rather than an Hist. Present.

II. Contemporaneous in Limit.

(Until.)

573. Dum, dōnēc, quoad, up to (the time) that, until, have the Present and Perfect and Future Perfect Indicative:

The Present is either an Historical Present, or looks forward to the Future.

Tityrō, dum redeō, brevis est via, pasce capellās. Verg. *Titurus, while I am returning (= till I return)—the way is short—feed my kids.*

Epaminōndās ferrum in corpore usque eō retinuist, quoad renuntiātum est vicīsse Bōeōtiōs. Nep. *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body, until word was brought back that the Boeotians had conquered.*

Dōnēc rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit. Liv. *Until Marcellus returned, there was silence.*

Haud dēsinam dōnēc perfēcer. Ter. *I will not cease until I have (shall have) accomplished (it).*

Exspectābo dum venit. Ter. *I will wait until he comes.*

Subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua:

Scipio̧n̈ Silāņquo dōnēc revocātī ab senātū forent prōrogātūm imperium est. Liv. *Scipio and Silanus had their command extended until “they should have been recalled by the senate.”*
DUM WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

574. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until, take the Subjunctive when Suspense and Design are involved:

Verginius dum collegam consulseret moratus est. Liv. Verginius delayed until he could (long enough to) consult his colleague.

At tibi sit tanti non indulgere theatris, dum bene dē vacuo pectore cedat amor. Ov. But let it be worth the cost to you (= deem it worth the cost) not to indulge in play-going, until love be fairly gone from (your) untenant bosom.

Often with exspecto, I wait:

Rūsticus exspectat dum dēfluat annis. Hor. The clown waits for the river to run off (dry).

Also: exspectāre ut, at (never Infinitive), 482, 2.

REMARK.—The Subjunctive is sometimes used in narrative with dum, while, and dōnec, while, until, to express subordination (like cum, 585). The principle is that of Partial Obliguity. There is often a Causal or Iterative sense.

Dum intentus in eum se rēx tōtus āverteret, alter, slātam secūrim in caput dūjōcit. Liv. While the king fixed upon him was quite turned away, the other raised his axe and planted it in his skull. (Āverteret from the point of view of alter = dum videt āverterem.)

575. Dum, with the Subjunctive, is used in Conditional Wishes: Negative, dum nē = nē interim.

Ōderint dum metuant. Attius. Let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear).

Dum nē ob malefacta peream parvi [id] aemtimo. Plaut. (379.)

So also dummodo, modo, provided only, only:

Dummodo mōrāta rectē veniat, dōtāta est satis. Plaut. Provided only she come with a good character, she is endowed (her dowry is) enough.

Multa [in eō] admiranda sunt: eligere modo ērae sit. Quint. Many things in him are to be admired; only you must be careful to choose.

Cōpia plācendi sit mode parva tui. Ov. (429, R. 1.)

III. SUBSEQUENT ACTION.

Antequam and Priusquam with the Indicative.

576. Antequam and priusquam, before, take the Present, Perfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, when the limit is stated as a fact.

REMARK.—The present is used in anticipation of the future. The elements ante, anteq, prius—quam, are often separated.
577. The Present Indicative is used after Positive Sentences:

Antequam ad sententiam redeo, dé me paucá dícám. Cíc. Before I return to the subject, I will say a few things of myself.

Omnia experíri certum est priusquam pereó. Ter. I am determined to try everything before I perish. (Priusquam peream = sooner than perish, to keep from perishing.)

Remark.—The Pure Perfect Indicative is used of Iterative Action. (569.)

Docilíóra sunt ingenia priusquam obdámnáverunt. Quint. The Present Subjunctive is more common in general statements.

578. The Perfect (Aorist) and Future Perfect Indicative are used, especially after Negative Sentences. After Positive Sentences there is no necessary connection.

Lógátis nón ante profectú quam impositós in návés milités víderunt. Liv. The envoys did not set out until they saw the soldiers on board.

Neque dēfatigábor antequam illórum viás ratiónesque percépero, et pró omnibus et contrá omnia disputandí. Cíc. I will not let myself grow weary before (until) I learn (shall have learned) their methods of disputing for and against everything.

Subjunctive in Úrátio Obliqua:

Themístoclés collégit suís praédixit, ut nǽ prius Lacedaemoniórum lógátós dimittérent quam ipse esset remissus. Nep. (548.) (Nólite dimittere priusquam ego ero remissus.)

Antequam and Priusquam with the Subjunctive.

579. Antequam and priusquam are used with the Subjunctive when an ideal limit is given; when the action is expected, contingent, designed, or subordinate.

An ideal limit involves necessary antecedence, but not necessary consequence. After Positive sentences, the Subjunctive is the rule, especially in Generic sentences and in narrative. (Compare cum, 585.) The Subjunctive is absolutely necessary when the action does not, or is not to, take place.

The translation is often before, and the verbal in -ing.

Ante vídēmus fulgurátióne quam sonum audiémus. Sen. We see the flash of lightning before hearing the sound (we may never hear it).

In omnibus négotiís priusquam aggregáre adhibénda est praeparátió diligens. Cic. In all affairs, before addressing yourself (to them), you must make use of careful preparation. (Ideal Second Person.)
CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM.

Collem celeriter priusquam ab adversāriis sentiātur communīt. Caes. He speedily fortified the hill before he was perceived by the enemy (too soon to be perceived by the enemy). (Prius quam = prius quam ut.)

Hannibal omnia priusquam excēderet pugnā erat expertus. Liv. Hannibal had tried everything before withdrawing from the fight (= to avoid withdrawing from the fight).

Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis prius quam re públicae prōdesse potuisset extincta fuit. Cic. Often hath great native worth been extinguished before it could be of service to the State.

Ducentīs ānnis antequam urbem Rōmam caperent in Italiam Gallī dēscendērunt. Liv. (It was) two hundred years before their taking Rome (that) the Gauls came down into Italy.

Here the Subjunctive gives the natural point of reference.

After the Negative:
Inde nōn prius āgressus est quam (nōn priusquam = dōnec) rēx eum in fidem recipere. Nep. He did not go away until the king took him under his protection. (He stayed to make the king take him under his protection.)

Remark.—When the will is involved, potius quam is used in the same way as prius quam.

Dēpugnā potius quam servīrās. Cic. Fight it out rather than be a slave.

IV. CONSTRUCTIONS OF CUM (QUUM).

580. Cum is a relative conjunction, and stands nearer to the Ablative than to the Accusative in signification, perhaps also in form (quō(f)im). Cum is the classic spelling, as well as the classic pronunciation.

581. There are three great uses of cum:
I. Temporal cum (when—then) takes the Indicative;
II. Historical cum, as, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive;
III. 1. Causal cum, as, since; and
2. Concessive cum, whereas, although, takes the Subjunctive.

I. Cum vēr appetit, militēs ex hibernis movent, When spring approaches, soldiers move out of winter-quarters.

II. Cum vēr appeteret, Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit, As spring was approaching (spring approaching), Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.

III. 1. Cum vēr appetat, ex hibernis movendum est, As (since) spring is approaching, we must move out of winter-quarters.
III. 2. Cum vēr appeteret, tamen hostēs ex hibernis nōn mōverunt, Whereas (although) spring was approaching, nevertheless the enemy did not move out of winter-quarters.

REMARK.—So called cum inversum (cum in the apodosis) is as natural in English as in Latin:

Jam vēr appetēbat, cum Hannibal ex hibernis mōvit. Liv. Spring was (already) approaching, when Hannibal moved out of winter-quarters.

According to S81, 1., it is, of course, put in the Indicative.

I. Temporal Cum.

S82. Cum, when, is used with all the tenses of the Indicative, to designate merely temporal relations.

In the Principal clause, a temporal adverb or temporal expression is frequently employed, such as tum, tunc, then; nunc, now; diēs, day; tempus, time; jam, already; vix, scarcely; and the like.

Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret. Cic. The soul is not visible, either when it is present, or when it departs.

Sex librōs tunc dē Rēpublicā scripsimus cum gubernācula reipūblicae tenēbāmus. Cic. I wrote the six books about the State at the time when I held the helm of the State.

Recordāre tempus illud cum pater Cūrio maerens jacēbat in lectō. Cic. Remember the time when Curio the father lay adead from grief.

Longum illud tempus cum nōn ero magis mē movet quam hōc exiguum. Cic. That long time (to come), when I shall not exist, has more effect on me than this scant (present time).

Jam dilūcescēbat cum signum consol dedit. Liv. By this time day was beginning to dawn, when the consul gave the signal. (See S80, R.)

Ideal Second Person with the Subjunctive:

Pater, hominum immortālis est infāmía. Etiam tum vivit cum esse crēdās mortuam. Plaut. Father, immortal is the ill-fame of the world. It lives on even when you think that it is dead.

REMARKS.—1. Fuit cum commonly follows the analogy of other characteristic relatives (S83), and takes the Subjunctive:

Fuit tempus cum (=fuit cum) rūra coerent hominēs. Varro. There was a time when mankind lived in the country.

The Indicative is rare.

2. Memini cum. I remember the time when, takes the Indicative; but audire cum takes the Subjunctive parallel with the Participle:

Audīvi Mētrodōrum cum dē his ipsis disputāret. Cic. I have heard Metrodorus discussing these very matters.

3. Peculiar is the use of cum with Lapses of Time. Lapses of Time are treated as Designations of Time in Accusative or Ablative:

Multī annī sunt cum (= multīs annōs) in aere mēō est. (It is) many years (that) he has been (S21) in my debt.
Multī annī sunt cum (= multīs annīs) in aere mēō nōn fuit. It is many years that he has not been (since he was) in my debt.

Nōndum centum et decem annī sunt cum (= ex quō = abhinc annīs) de pecūnīa repetundis lāta lōx ēst. Cic. It is not yet 110 years since the law concerning extortion was proposed.

583. Coincident Action.—When the actions of the two clauses are coincident, cum is almost equivalent to its kindred relative quod, in that:

Cum tacent, clāvānt. Cic. When (= in that) they are silent, they cry aloud.

Dixi omnia cum hominem nōmināvi. Plin. Ep. I have said everything, in naming the man.

584. Conditional use of Cum.—Cum with the Future, Future Perfect, or Universal Present, is often almost equivalent to si, if, with which it is sometimes interchanged:

Cum poscis, posce Latinē. Juv. When (If) you ask (for anything), ask in Latin.

Cum veniet contrā, digitō compesce labellum. Juv. When (If) he meets you, padlock your lip with your finger.

585. Iterative use of Cum.—Cum in the sense of quoties, as often as, takes the Tenses of Iterative Action:

Solēt cum sē purgat in mē conferre omnem culpam. Cic. He is accustomed, when he clears himself, to put off all the blame on me.

Ager cum multōs annōs requīēvit āuerīōrēs esserre frūgēs solet. Cic. Cum plām ējus ānūli ad palmam conuerserat Gyōgēs ā nullō vīdēbātur. Cic. (569.)

REMARK.—The Subjunctive is also found (569, R.):

Cum in īā dīcit dēbītōrem vidīssent, undique convolābant. Liv. Whenever they saw a debtor taken to court, they made it a rule to hurry together from all quarters.

II. Historical Cum.

586. Cum, when (as), is used in narrative with the Imperfect Subjunctive of contemporaneous action, with the Pluperfect Subjunctive of antecedent action.

REMARK.—The subordinate clause generally precedes, and often indicates Causal as well as Temporal relation. The Subjunctive in some cases seems to be due to the Latin tendency to express inner connection (evolution) by the Subjunctive. In the absence of participles, cum with the Subjunctive is a parallel construction.
Causal and Concessive Cum.

587. Cum, when, whereas, since, seeing that, with the Subjunctive, is used to denote the reason, and occasionally the motive, of an action:

Quae cum ita sint, effectum est nihil esse malum quod turpe non sit. CIC. Since these things are so, it is made out (proved) that nothing is bad that is not dishonest.

Cum Athenas tanquam ad mercatum bonarum artium sis profectus, inanem redire turpissimum est. CIC. As (Since) you set out for Athens as if to market for good qualities, it would be utterly disgraceful to return empty (handed).

Dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis. NEP. He had to fight by stratagem, as he (seeing that he) was not a match in arms.

Remark.—The Subjunctive is used because the relation is a mere conception (characteristic); that it is a mere conception is emphasized by quippe and utpote, as in the relative sentence.

On the occasional use of cum with the Ind. in a causal sense, see 567. Oftener in earlier Latin.

588. Causal cum, whereas, becomes Concessive cum, whereas, although, when the cause is not sufficient: the relation is often adversative.

Nihil me adjuvit cum posset. CIC. He gave me no assistance, although (at a time when) he had it in his power.

Cum primi ordinés hostium concidissent, tamen ãcerrimé reliquò re-
nistiōbant. Caes. Although the first ranks of the enemy had fallen (been cut to pieces), nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously.

Perfere artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum dēsinat ars esse, si appāret.

Quint. We think that (our) art is lost unless it shows, whereas it ceases to be art if it shows.

589. Cum—tum.—When cum, when, tum, then (both—and especially), have the same verb, the verb is put in the Indicative:

Pausanīas consilia cum patriae tum sibi inimīca capiēbat. Nep. Pausanias conceived plans that were hurtful both to his country and especially to himself.

When they have different verbs, the verb with cum may be in the Subjunctive, which often has a concessive force:

Sisenna histōria cum facile omnēs superiōrēs vincat, tum indicat tamen quantum absit ā summō. Cic. Although the history of Sisenna easily surpasses all former histories, yet it shows how far it is from the highest (mark).

Conditional Sentences.

590. In Conditional sentences the clause which contains the condition (supposed cause) is called the Prōtasis, that which contains the consequence is called the Apōdosis.

Logically, Protasis is Premiss; and Apodosis, Conclusion.

Grammatically, the Apodosis is the Principal, the Protasis the Dependent, clause.

591. Sign of the Conditional.—The common conditional particle is sī, if.

Remarks.—1. Sī is a locative case, literally so, in those circumstances (comp. si·c, so). So in English: "I would by combat make her good, so were I a man."—Shakesp.

Hence, Conditional clauses with sī may be regarded as adverbs in the Ablative case, and are often actually represented by the Ablative Absolute.

2. The connection with the Causal Sentence is shown by sī quidem, which in later Latin is almost = quoniam.

3. The temporal particles cum and quando, when, and the locative ubi, are also used to indicate conditional relations in which the idea of Time or Space is involved.

592. Negative of sī.—The negative of sī is either sī nōn or nisi.

Sī nōn negatives a particular word, if not; nisi, unless, negatives the whole idea—restricts, excepts.

Sī nōn is the rule—
1. When the positive of the same verb precedes:

*Si feceris, magnam habebō gratiam; si non feceris, ignoscam.* Cic.
If you do it, I will be very grateful to you; if you do not, I will forgive (you).

2. When the Condition is concessive:

*Si mihi bona republica frui non licuerit, at carēbo malā.* Cic. If *I shall not be allowed to enjoy good government, I shall at least be rid of bad.*

**Nisi** is in favorite use after negatives:

**Parvi (= nihil)** sunt foris arma nisi est consilium domi. Cic. *Of little (value) are arms abroad unless there is wisdom at home.*

*Nōn possem vivere nisi in litteris viverem.* Cic. *I could not live unless I lived in study.*

**Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās.** Cic. *Memory wanes unless (except) you exercise it.* (**Si non exerceās, in case you fail to exercise it.*)
So nisi si, except in case:

*Miserōs illūdi nōlunt hominēs nisi sē forte jactant.* Cic. *Men do not like to have the unfortunate mocked unless (except in case) they happen to swagger.*

**Remarks.** — 1. Sometimes the difference is unessential:

**Nisi Curio fuisset, hodiē tē museae comēdissent.** Quint. *If it had not been for Curio, the flies would have eaten you up this day.* **Si non fuisset** would be equally correct.

2. **Nisi** and **nisi si** are often used after negative sentences or equivalents in the significance of *but, except, besides, only;*

**Inspice quid portem; nihil hic nisi triste visēbis.** Ov. *Examine what I am bringing; you will see nothing here except (what is) sad.*

**Falsus honor juvat et mendāx insēmis terret, quem nisi mendācem et mendōsum?** Hor. *False honor charms and lying slander scares, whom but the false and faulty?*—Brougham.

3. **Nisi quod** introduces an actual limitation—with the exception, that:

**Nihil acciderat [Polycratī] quod nōllet nisi quod sēlum quo délectātur in marī abjēcerat.** Cic. *Nothing had happened to Polycrates that he could not have wished, except that he had thrown into the sea a ring in which he took delight (= a favorite ring).*

So praeterquam quod.

**Nihil peccat nisi quod nihil peccat.** Plin. Ep. *He makes no blunder except—that he makes no blunder* (*“faulty faultless”*).

4. **Nisi forte, unless perhaps. nisi vērō, unless indeed,** with the Indicative, either limits a previous statement, or makes an ironical concession:

**Nemo fūri saltat sōbrius nisi forte insanīt.** Cic. *There is scarce any one that dances (when) sober, unless perhaps he is cracked.*

**Licet honestā morte dēfungi, nisi forte satius est victūris exspectāre arbitrium.** Curt. *We are free to die an honorable death, unless perhaps it is better to await the pleasure of the conqueror.*

5. **Mi** is antiquated or poetical, and is equivalent to **si nōn**:

**Mi pārēre velis, percūndum erit ante lucernās.** Juv. (582, R. 3.)

So in oaths, promises, and the like:

**Peream nisi piscem putāvi esse.** Varro. *May I die if I did not think it was a fish.*
593. *Two Conditions excluding each the other.*—When two conditions exclude each the other, *si* is used for the first; *sin, if not* (but if), for the second.

*Sin* is further strengthened by *autem, but; minus, less (not); secus, otherwise; aliter, else:*

Mercātūra, *si tenuis est,* sordida putanda est; *sin magna et cōpiōsa,* nōn est admodum vituperanda. *Cic.* Mercantile business, *if it is petty,* is to be considered dirty (work); *if (it is) not (petty, but) great and abundant (= conducted on a large scale), it is not to be found fault with much.*

**Remark.—If the Verb or Predicate is to be supplied from the context, *si minus, if less (not), sin minus, sin aliter, if otherwise, are commonly used, rarely *si nōn:***

Ēdic tācum omnēs tuās; *si minus, quam plūrimōs.* *Cic.* *Take out with you all your (followers): if not, as many as possible.*

Ōdero *si poterit; si nōn, invitus amābo.* *Ov.* (234, R. 2.)

594. *Other Forms of the Protasis.*—1. The Protasis may be expressed by a Relative:

*Qui vidēret urbem captam diceret.* *Cic.* *Whoso had seen it, had said that the city was taken.*

Mīrārētur qui tum cerneret. *Liv.* (252.)

2. The Protasis may be contained in a Participle:

*Sī latet ars, prōdest; affert dēprensa pudōrem.* *Ov.* *If art is concealed, it does good; (if) detected, it brings shame.*

Maximās virtūtēs jacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante. *Cic.* *All the greatest virtues must necessarily lie prostrate, if the pleasure (of the senses) is mistress.*

Nihil potest ēvenire nisi causā antecēdente. *Cic.* *Nothing can happen, unless a cause precede.*

3. The Protasis may be involved in a modifier:

Fēcērunt servī Milōnis quod suōs quisque servōs in tālī rē facere voluisset. *Cic.* *The servants of Milo did what each man would have wished his servants to do in such case (si quid tāle accidisset).*

*At bene nōn poterat sine pūrō pectore vivī.* *Lucr.* *But there could be no good living without a clean heart ( nisi pūrum pectus esset).*

4. The Protasis may be expressed by an Interrogative, or, what is more common, by an Imperative:

Tristis es? indignor quod sum tībi causa dolōris. *Ov.* (542.)
Cōdit amor rēbus: rēs age, tūtus eris. Ov. *Love yields to business; do business* (if you plunge into business), *you will be safe.*

*Immutā verbōrum collocātiōnem, perierit tōta rēs.* Cic. (236, R. 4.)

595. Correlatives of *Si.*—The correlatives of *Si* are: *Siō, so; ita, thus;* but they are commonly not expressed. Occasionally *tum, then;* and *ea condicioe, on those terms,* are employed.

*De frumentō responsum est ita üārum eō populum Rōmānum, si pre- tiōm acciperent.* Liv. *In the matter of the corn, answer was made that the Roman people would avail themselves of it, on condition that they accepted the value.*

CLASSIFICATION OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

596. Conditional sentences may be divided into three classes, according to the character of the Protasis:* 

I. Logical Conditional Sentences: *Si,* with the Indicative.
II. Ideal Conditional Sentences: *Si,* with Present and Perfect Subjunctive.
III. Unreal Conditional Sentences: *Si,* with Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

1. LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

597. The Logical Conditional Sentence simply states the elements in question, according to the formula:

*If this is so, then that is so; if this is not so, then that is not so.*

It may be compared with the Indicative Question.

The Protasis is in the Indicative; the Apodosis is generally in the Indicative; but in future relations any equivalent of the Future (Subjunctive, Imperative) may be used.

---

* In some grammars of Greek and Latin, conditional sentences, and sentences involving conditional relations, have been divided into *particular* and *general.* Whether a condition be particular or general depends simply on the character of the Apodosis. *Any form of the Conditional Sentence may be general, if it implies a rule of action. The forms for Iterative action have been given.* (588, 589.)
LOGICAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

PROTASIS.
Sì id crēdis,
If you believe that,
Sì id crēdēbās,
If you believed that,
Sì id crēdīdi,
If you (have) believed that,
Sì id crēdēs,
If you (shall) believe that,
Sì id crēdideris,
If you (shall have) believed(d) that,
Sì quid crēdīdi,
If you have believed anything
(= when you believed anything),
Sì quid crēdiderās,
If you had believed anything
(= when you believed anything),

APODOSIS.
erās,
you are going wrong.
erābās,
you were going wrong.
erāstī,
you have gone (you went) wrong.
erābis,
you will (be) go(ing) wrong; (234, R. S).
erāveris,
you will have gone (will go) wrong.
erās,
you go wrong. Comp. 569.
erābās,
you went wrong.

Sì spiritum dūcit, vivit. Cic. If he is drawing (his) breath (breathing) he is living.

Parvi sunt forōs arma nisi est consilium domī. Cic. (412, R. 1.)
Sì occidi, rectē fēcit; sed nōn occidi. Quint. If I killed him, I did right; but I did not kill him.

Nātūram sī sequēmur, ducem, nunquam aberrābimus. Cic. If we (shall) follow nature (as our) guide, we shall never go astray.

Improbōs sī meus consulātus sustuleri, multa saecula propāgārit ref publicae. Cic. If my consulship shall have done away with the destructive, it will have added many ages to the life of the State.

Sì pēs condoluit, sī dens, ferre nōn possimus. Cic. (569.)
Stomachābātur senex, sī quid asperius dixeram. Cic. (569.)

Vivam, sī vivet; sī cadet illa, cadam. Prop. Let me live, if she lives; if she falls, let me fall.

Nunc sī forte potes, sed nōn potes, optima conjux, finitis gaudē tot mihi morte malis. Ov. Now, if haply you can, but you cannot, noble wife, rejoice that so many evils have been finished for me by death.

Flectere sī nequeō superōs, Acheronta movēbō. Verg. If I can’t bend the gods above, I’ll rouse (all) hell below.

Sì tot exempla virtūtis nōn movent, nihil unquam movēbit; sī tanta clādēs vīlem vitam nōn fēcit, nulla faciet. Liv. If so many examples of valor stir you not, nothing will ever do it; if so great a disaster has not made life cheap, none ever will.

Dēsīnēs timēre sī spērāre dēsierīs. Sen. You will cease to fear, if you (shall have) cease(d) to hope.

REMARKS.—1. After a Verb of Saying or Thinking (Orātio Obliqua), the Protasis must be put in the Subjunctive, according to the rule.
II. IDEAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

598. The Ideal Conditional Sentence represents the matter as still in suspense. The supposition is more or less fanciful, and no real test is to be applied. There is often a wish for or against.

The Protasis is put in the Present Subjunctive for continued action, and in the Perfect Subjunctive for completion or attainment.

The Apodosis is in the Present or Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperative and Future Indicative or equivalents are often found. The Universal Present is frequently used, especially in combination with the Ideal Second Person.

On the difference between Subjunctive and Future, see (27.)

**PROTASIS.**

\( \text{Si id crēdās,} \)

\( \text{If you should (were to) believe that,} \)

\( \text{Si id crēdās,} \)

\( \text{If you should (were to) believe that,} \)

\( \text{Si id crēdideris,} \)

1. \( \text{If you should (prove to) have believed} \)

\( \text{that (Perfect.; Action Past or Future), you would be going wrong.} \)

2. \( \text{If you should (come to) believe that} \)

\( \text{(Aor.; Action Future),} \)

\( \text{Si id crēdideris (rare),} \)

\( \text{If you (should have) believe(d) that,} \)

\( \text{errēs,} \)

\( \text{you would be going wrong.} \)

\( \text{errāveris,} \)

\( \text{you would go wrong.} \)

\( \text{errēs,} \)

\( \text{you would be going wrong.} \)

\( \text{errāveris,} \)

\( \text{you would (have) go(ne) wrong.} \)
Si vicinus tuus equum meliorem habeat quam tuus est, tuumne equum mali an illius? Cic. If your neighbor (were to) have a better horse than yours is, would you prefer your horse or his?

Si gladium quis apud te sanâ mente deposuerit, repetat insaniens, reddere peccatum sit, officium non reddere. Cic. If a man in sound mind were to deposit (to have deposited) a sword with you (and), reclaim it (when) mad, it would be wrong to return it, right not to return it.

Si nunc me suspendam meam operam luserim, et meâ inimicis voluptatem creaverim. Plaut. Should I hang myself now, I should (thereby) (have) fool(ed) my work away, and giv(e) to my enemies a charming treat.

Ut redeant veteres: Cicero nemo ducentos nunc dederit nummos nisi fuderit ingens. Juv. Let the ancients return: no one would give Cicero now-a-days two hundred two-pences unless a huge ring glittered (on his hand).

Si is desitutus, nihil satis tumult habebis. Liv. Should he leave us in the lurch, you will find no safety.

Si valeant homines, ars tua, Phoebe, jacet. Ov. Should men keep well, your art, Phoebus, is naught.

Ôtia si tollás, periôre Cupidinis arcús. Ov. (195, R. 6.)

Si vœrum exactis, faciés nón uxor amatūr. Juv. If you (were to) get out the truth, it is the face, not the wife, that is loved.

Nulla est excusatio peccati, si amici causâ peccaveris. Cic. It is no excuse for a sin to have sinned for the sake of a friend.

REMARKS.—1. The Potential of the Past coincides in form with the Unreal of the Present. (Comp. 252, R. 2.) Clear examples of definite persons are rare. Hor. Sat. 1. 3, 5.

Of indefinite persons: Miœratque qui tum orneret. Liv. (252.)

So, Erat Quintius. si ederēs, placābilis. Liv. Quinctius was, if you yielded to him. (sure to be) placable. (Est si edēs.)

Si luxuriae temperaret, avēritiam non timērēs. Tac. If he were to control his love of pleasure, you should not have feared avarice. (Si temperet, nón timeā.)

2. The lively fancy of the Roman often employs the Ideal where we should expect the Unreal. (Comp. 246, R. 2.)

Tū si hic sis, aliter sentiēs. Ter. If you were I (Put yourself in my place), you would think differently.

Haec si tēcum patria loquatur, nūnne impetrāre débeat? Cic. If your country should (were to) speak thus with you, ought she not to get (what she wants)?

In comparing Ideal and Unreal Conditionals, be careful to exclude all forms of future verbs, such as posse, to be able; velle, to wish, and the like.

Sometimes the conception shifts in the course of a long sentence:

Si reviviscant et tēcum loquantur—quid tālibus virīs respondērēs? Cic. If they should come to life again, and speak with you—what answer would you make to such men?

3. In Grācio Obliqua the difference between Ideal and Logical Future is necessarily effaced, so far as the mood is concerned. (659.)
Subjunctive for continued action—generally, in opposition to the Present; and by the Pluperfect Subjunctive—uniformly in opposition to the Past.

The notion of Impossibility comes from the irreversible character of the Past Tense. Compare the Periphrastic Future Perfect and Imperfect.

Any action that is decided is considered Past. (Comp. 266, R. 3.)

**Protasis.**

Si id créderēs,

*If you believed (were believing) that, [you do not,]*

Si id crédidissēs,

*If you had believed that, [you did not,]*

**Apodosis.**

errāēs,

you would be going wrong.

errāvissēs,

you would have gone wrong.

Sapientia nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficeret. Cic. *Wisdom would not be sought after, if it did no practical good.*

Caederem tē, nisi trāscerēr. Sen. *I should flog you, if I were not getting angry.*

Sī ibi tē esse scissem, ad tē ipse vēnissem. Cic. *If I had known you were there, I should have come to you myself.*

Hectora quis nōset, sī felīx Trōja fuisset. Ov. *Who would know (of) Hector, if Troy had been happy?*

Nisi ante Rōmā profectus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs. Cic. *If you had not departed from Rome before, you would certainly leave it now.*

Ego nisi peperissēm, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur; nisi filium habērem, libera in libera patriā mortuā essēm. Liv. *Had I not become a mother, Rome would not be besieged; had I not a son, I should have died a free woman in a free land.*

**Remarks.**—1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used in opposition to continuance in the Past. This is necessarily the case when the Protasis is in the Imperfect, and the Apodosis in the Pluperfect, except when the Imperfect denotes opposition to a general statement, which holds good both for Past and for Present:

Nōn tam facile opēs Carthagīnis tantae concidiissent nisi Sicilia clāssibus nōstrīs patēret. Cic. *The great resources of Carthage (Carthage with her great resources) would not have fallen so readily, if Sicily had not been open to our fleets.*

Sī pudōrem habērēs, ultimam mihi pensiōnem mihi remissēs. Sen. *If you had (= you had not, as you have not) any delicacy, you would have let me off from the last payment.*

Memoriam ipsam cum vōce perdidissēmus, sī tam in nostrā potestāte esset oblivīscī quam tācēre. Tac. *We should have lost memory itself, together with utterance, if it were as much in our power to forget as to keep silent.*

The Imperfect in both members is rare:

Sī Prōtogenēs Iālysum illum suum caenō oblitum vidēret, magnum, crēdo, accepert dolōrem. Cic. *If Protagoras had seen that famous Ialysus of his besmeared with mud, he would have felt a mighty pang.*

Perhaps this may be regarded as a form of Repraesentātio. (657, R.)

2. In Unreal Conditions, the Apodosis is sometimes expressed by the Imperfect Indicative, when the action is represented as interrupted (224); by the Pluperfect and Historical Perfect, when the conclusion is confidently anticipated. (246, R. 3.)
LABEBAR LONGIUS. NISI MĘ RETINUISSEM. CIC. (246. R. 3.)
OMNINÉ ERAT SUPERVACUA DOCTRINA. SI NATŪRA SUFICERET. QUINT.
PERACTUM ERAT BELLUM, SI POMPÆJUM OPPRIMERE BRUNDUSIAL POTUISET. FLOR.
THE WAR WAS (had been) finished, if he had been able to crush Pompey at Brundusium.

The Imperfect Indicative is sometimes found in the Protaesis:

IPSAM TIBI EPISTOLAM MISISSEM, NISI TAM SUBITO FRÆTRIS PUEER PROFICISET ṢAHATUR.
CIC. I should have sent you the letter itself, if my brother’s servant was not starting so suddenly.

3. The Indicative is the regular construction with verbs which signify Possibility or Power, Obligation or Necessity—so with the Active and Passive Periphrastic—VIX. PAENE, SCARELY, HARDLY, and the like.

CONSUL ESSE QUI POTUI, NISI EUM VITÆ CURSUM TENUISSEM? CIC. HOW COULD I HAVE BEEN CONSUL, IF I HAD NOT KEPT THAT COURSE OF LIFE?

ANTONIO POTUIT GLADIÒS CONTENMERE, SI SIC OMNIA DIXISSET. JUV. HE MIGHT HAVE DESPISED ANTONY’S SWORDS, IF HE HAD THUS SAID ALL (that he did say).

EMENDATURUS, SI LIQUISSET, ERAM. OV. I SHOULD HAVE REMOVED THE FAULTS, IF I HAD BEEN FREE (to do it).

IN BONA VENTURUS, SI PATERÆRE (R. 1.) FUIT. OV. HE WOULD HAVE COME INTO (my) PROPERTY, IF YOU HAD PERMITTED IT.

PONS ITER PAENE HOSTIBUS DEDIT (PAENE DEDIT = DABAT = DATURUS ERAT.) NI ŠANUS VIR FUisset. Liv. THE BRIDGE WELL NIGH GAVE A PASSAGE TO THE ENEMY, HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR ONE MAN.

4. In ÖREATIO OBLIGA the Protaesis is unchanged; the Apodosis is formed by the Periphrastic Future Infinitive, with esse and fuisset for the Active, futūrum (fore) ut, futūrum fuisset ut for Passive and Supineless Verbs.

A. Dico (díxi), tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.

B. Dico (díxi), tē, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuisset.

A. Dico (díxi), tē, si id crēderēs, fore ut dēcipērēs.

B. Dico (díxi), si id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisset ut dēcipērēs.

A is very rare; A theoretical. For the long form, B. the simple Perfect Infinitive is found. Examples, see 602, R.

5. When the Apodosis of an Unreal Conditional is made to depend on a sentence which requires the Subjunctive, the Pluperfect is turned into the Periphrastic Perfect Subjunctive; the Imperfect form is unchanged.

NÓN DUBITO, quin, si id crēderēs, errārēs.
I do not doubt, that, if you believed that, you would be going wrong.

NÓN DUBITĀBAM, quin, si id crēdidissēs, errātūrum fuērēs.
I did not doubt, that, if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.

HONESTUM TĒLĒ EST UT, VEL SI IGNORĀRENT ID HOMINĒS, ESSET LÆDĀBLE. CIC. VIRTUE IS A THING TO DESERVE PRAISE, EVEN IF MEN DID NOT KNOW IT.

NEC DUBIUM ERAT QUIN, SI TAM PAUCIT SIMUL OBRRE OMNIA POSSENT, TERGA DATūR hostēs fuerint. Liv. THERE WAS NO DOUBT THAT, IF IT HAD BEEN POSSIBLE FOR SO SMALL A NUMBER TO HAVE MANAGED EVERYTHING AT THE SAME TIME, THE ENEMY WOULD HAVE TURNED THEIR BACKS.

DIE QUIDNAM FACTūRUS FUERĪS, SI EŌ TEMPORE CENSOR FUÎSSE? LIV. TELL (me) WHAT YOU WOULD HAVE DONE, IF YOU HAD BEEN CENSOR AT THAT TIME?

ADEŌ INOPÌA COACTUS EST HANNIBAL, UT, NISI TUM FUGAE SPECIĒM ABEUNDŌ TIMUITISSET, GALLIAM REPETĪTūRUS FUEIRIT. Liv. HANNIBAL WAS SO HARD PRESSED BY WANT OF PROVISIONS, THAT, HE HAD NOT AT THE TIME FEARED (PRESENTING) THE APPEARANCE OF FLIGHT BY RETREATING, HE WOULD HAVE GONE BACK TO GAUL.

The Periphrastic Pluperfect Subjunctive occurs rarely, and then only in the Dependent Interrogative.

POTUI (246. R. 1) commonly becomes potuerim, and the Periphrastic Passive with fut becomes fuerim:
Hand dubium fuit quin, nisi ea mora intervénisset, castra sō die Púnicas capi potuerint. Liv. There was no doubt that, had not that delay interfered, the Punic camp could have been taken on that day.

The Passive Conditional is unchanged:

Id ille sī repudiāsset, dubitātis quīn ei vía esset allāta? Cīc. If he had rejected that, do you doubt that force would have been brought (to bear) on him?

The active form is rarely unchanged. (Liv. II. 33.) In the absence of the periphrastic tense use potuerim.

INCOMPLETE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

600. *Omission of the Conditional Sign.*—Occasionally the members of a Conditional sentence are put side by side without a Conditional sign:

*An ille mihi (351) līber, cui mulier imperat? poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum; ājicit, abeundum; minātur, extimescendum.* Cīc.

*Or is he free (tell), me, to whom a woman gives orders? she asks, he must give; she calls, he must come; she turns out (of door), he must go; she threatens, he must be frightened.*

*Unum cognōrīs, omnēs nōrīs.* Tēr. *You know one, you know all.*

*Dedissēs hunc animō pār corpus, sēcissēt quod optābat.* Pīn. Eρ.

*Had you given him a body that was a match for his spirit, he would have accomplished what he desired.*

601. *Omission of the Verb of the Protasis.*—When the Verb of the Protasis is omitted, either the precise form or the general idea of the verb is to be supplied from the Apodosis:

*Sī quisquam, Cato sapiens fuit = Sī quisquam fuit.* Cīc. *If any one was wise, Cato was.*

602. *Total Omission of the Protasis.*—The Protasis is often contained in a Participle or involved in the context (594, 2).

The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes mechanically explained by the omission of an indefinite Protasis. See 252, R. 1.

*Nimiō plūs quam velim Volscōrum ingenia sunt mōbilia.* Liv. *The dispositions of the Volscians are (too) much more unstable than I should like (if I had my way, if I could manage it, or what not).*

*Velim sīc existimēs.* Cīc. *I should like you to think so.* (Utinam existimēs!)

*Tam fēlix essēs quam formōssissima vellem.* Ov. (316). (Utinam essēs!)

The impossibility of definite ellipsis constitutes the Modality.
603. *Omission of the Apodosis.—*The Apodosis is omitted in *Wishes,* in conformity with the vague character of the expression, which is poetical. See 254 and R. 1.

O mihi præsteritūs referat sì Jūpper Annōs. Verg. (254)

**CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON.**

604. The Apodosis is omitted in comparisons with *ut sì,* velut *sì,* ac *sì,* quam *sì,* tanquam *sì,* quasi, or simply velut and tanquam, *as if.*

The verb is to be supplied from the Protasis, as is common in correlative sentences.

The Mood is the Subjunctive.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence, rather than the ordinary use of the conditional. In English, the translation implies the unreality of the comparison.

Nōlli timēre quasi [=quam timeās sì] assem elephanto dēs. Quint.  
*Don't be afraid, as if you were giving a penny to an elephant.*

Parvī primō ortū sic jacent tanquam [=jaceant sì] omnīnō sīne animō sint. Cic. *Babies, when first born, lie (there), as if they had no mind at all.*

Hīc est obstandum, militēs, velut sì ante Rōmāna moenia pugnēmus. Liv. *Here (is where) we must oppose them, soldiers, as if we were fighting before the walls of Rome (velut obstēmus, sì pugnēmus, as we would oppose them, if we were to fight).*

Mē juvat, velut ipse in parte labōris ac pericull fuerim, ad finem bellī Pūnicī pervēnisse. Liv. *I am delighted to have reached the end of the Punic war, as if I had shared in the toil and danger (of it).*

Suspectus tanquam ipse suās incenderit aedēs. Juv. *Suspected as if he had (of having) set his own house on fire.*

Tantus patrēs metus cēpit velut sì jam ad portās hostis esset. Liv. *A great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at their gates.*

Dēlēta est Ausōnium gens perinde ac sì internecivō bellō certāsset. Liv. *The Ausonian race was blotted out, just as if it had engaged in an internecine war (war to the knife).*

**REMARKS.—**1. Occasionally the sequence is violated out of regard to the Conditional:

Massiliēnsēs in sō honōre audīmus apud Rōmānos esse ac sì medium umbilīcum Graeciae incolerent. Liv. *We hear that the people of Marseilles are in as high honor with the Romans as if they inhabited the mid- navel (= the heart) of Greece.*
CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

2. As in the ordinary conditional sentence, so in the comparative sentence, the
Protemi may be expressed by a Participle:

Galli laeti ut explorati victorii ad castra Romam irent. Cat. The
Germans in their joy, as if (their) victory had been fully ascertained, proceeded to the camp
of the Romans.

Antiochus securus est de bellis Romam tamquam non transire in Asia
Romam. Liv. Antiochus was so unconcerned about the war with Rome as if the Romans
did not intend to cross over into Asia Minor.

CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

605. Concessive Sentences are introduced—
1. By the conditional Particles, etal, etiamet, tametel.
2. By the Generic Relative, quanquam.
3. By the compounds, quanvis, quantumvis.
4. By the Verb licet.
5. By the Final Particles, ut (né).
6. By quum (cum); all answering generally to the notion
although.

REMARKS.—Etal (et + si), even if; etiamet, even now if; tametel, yet even if;
quanquam, (quam + quam), to what extent sooner; quanvis, to what extent you
choose; quantumvis, to what amount you choose; licet, it is left free (perhaps intran.
of lineo, I leave).

606. E tal, etiamet, and tametel, take the Indicative or Sub-

junctive, according to the general principles which regulate the
use of si, if. The Indicative is more common, especially with
e tal and etiamet:

Dé futuris rébus etal semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum con-
jecturâ possis accōdere. Cic. Although it is always difficult to tell about
the future, nevertheless you can sometimes come near it by guessing.

Hamilcar etal flagrābat bellandi cupiditāte, tamen pácī serviendum
putāvit. Nep. Although Hamilcar was on fire with the desire of war, never-
theless he thought that he ought to subserve (to work for) peace.

Inops ille etiamet referre grātiam nōn potest, habēre certē potest. 
Cic. The needy man (spoken of), if he cannot return a favor, can at least
feel it.

Mē vēra prō grātis loqui, etal meum ingenium nōn monēret, necessi-
tās cōgit. Liv. Even if my disposition did not bid me, necessity compels me
to speak the truth instead of the smooth.

REMARK.—Si itself is often concessive, 592.

607. Quanquam, to what extent soever, falls under the head of
generic relatives (246, R. 4), and, in the best authors, is con-
strued with the Indicative:
CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.

Medici quanquam intellegunt saepe, tamen nunquam segris dicunt, illō morbō eōs esse moritūros. Cic. Although physicians often know, nevertheless they never tell their patients that they will die of that disease.

REMARKS.—1. The Potential Subjunctive is sometimes found with quanquam: Quanquam exercitum quō in Volsciis erat mālet, nihil recūsāvit. Liv. Although he might well have preferred the army which was in the Volscian country; nevertheless he made no objection.

2. Quanquam is often used at the beginning of sentences, in the same way as the English, And yet, Although, However, in order to limit the whole preceding sentence; less frequently etsi, tametsi.

3. The Indicative, with etsi and quanquam, is, of course, liable to attraction into the Subjunctive in Ērētio Obliqua. (509.)

608. Quamvis follows the analogy of volo, I will, with which it is compounded, and takes the Subjunctive. Quantumvis and quamlibet (as conjunctions) belong to poetry and silver prose.

Quamvis sint sub aquā, sub aquā maledicere tentant. Ov. Although they be under the water, under the water they try to revile.

Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tū candidus essēs. Verg. Although he was black, although you were fair.

Vitia mentis, quantumvis exigua sint, in mājus excēdunt. Sen. Mental ailments (=passions), no matter how slight they be, go on increasing.

REMARKS.—1. In later Latin, quamvis and quanquam change parts:

Quamvis ingeniō nōn valet, arte valet. Ov. Although he does not tell by genius, he does tell by art.

In Tacitus, for instance, quanquam regularly has the Subjunctive.

2. The Verb in quamvis is sometimes inflected:

Quam velit sit potens, nunquam imperāvisset. Cic. No matter how powerful she may be, she would never have obtained it.

609. Licet retains its verbal nature, and, according to the Sequence of Tenses, takes only the Present and Perfect Subjunctive:

Licet irrideat si qui vult. Cic. Let any one laugh who will.

Ardeat ipsa licet, tormentis gaudet amantis. Juv. Though she herself is aglow, she rejoices in the tortures of her lover.

Sim licet extrēmum, sicut sum, missus in orbem. Ov. Although I be sent, as I have been, to the end of the world.

REMARKS.—1. Exceptions are extremely rare: Juv. xiii. 56.

2. Quamvis is sometimes combined with licet.

610. Ut and nē are also used concessively:

Ut dēsint virēs, tamen est laudanda voluntās. Ov. Granted that strength be lacking, nevertheless you must praise (my) good will.
RELATIVE SENTENCES.

Nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est. Cic. Granted that pain be not the chief evil, an evil it certainly is.

Remark.—Ut nōn can be used on the principle of the Specific Negative:
Hic dīēs ultimus est; ut nōn sit, propē ab ultīmō. Sen. This is your last day; granted that it be not, it is near the last.
On ita—ut, see 255; on ut—ita, see 484, 2.

611. Concessive sentence represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.—The Concessive sentence may be represented by a Participle or Predicative Attribute.

Risus interdum ita repente ērumpit, ut eum cupiēntēs tenēre nequeāmus. Cic. Laughter between whiles (occasionally) breaks out so suddenly that we cannot keep it down, although we desire to do so.
Multōrum tē occīta et aurēs nōn sentientem custōdient. Cic. (Of) many (the) eyes and ears will keep guard over you, though you perceive it not (without your perceiving it).

Quis Aristidem nōn mortuam diligit. Cic. Who does not love Aristides, (though) dead?

Remark.—Later writers combine eīūs, quanquam, or quamvis, with the Participle:
Caesarem militēs quamvis recēsāntem ulōrō in Africam sunt secūtī. Suet. The soldiers followed Caesar into Africa of their own motion, although he declined it.
With Adjectives quamvis is used even in the best writers:
Saepe bibi suōs quamvis invitus amārōs. Ov. I have often drunk biter potions, although against my will.

RELATIVE SENTENCES.

612. The Latin language uses the relative construction far more than the English: so in the beginning of sentences, and in combination with Conjunctions and other Relatives.

Remarks.—1. The awkwardness, or impossibility, of a literal translation, may generally be relieved by the substitution of a demonstrative with an appropriate conjunction, or the employment of an abstract noun:
Quae quum ita sint. Now since these things are so (Ciceronian formula).
Futūra modo expectant; quae quīa certa esse nōn possunt, conficiuntur et angōre et metū. Cic. They only look forward to the future; and because that cannot be certain, they wear themselves out with distress and fear.

Epicūrus nōn satis politus ita artibus quās quī tenent, erudītī appellantur. Cic. Epicurus is not sufficiently polished by those accomplishments, from the possession of which, people are called cultivated.
Notice especially quod in combination with siī, ubi, in which quod means and as for that, and is sometimes translated by and, but, therefore, sometimes not at all.
2. The Relative is the fertile source of many of the introductory particles of the compound sentence, and is therefore put last on account of the multiplicity of its uses.

613. Relative sentences are introduced by the Relative Pro-
nouns in all their forms: Adjective, Substantive, and Advêrbial. (See Tables.)

Remarks.—1. The relative adverbs of Place, and their correlatives, may be used instead of a preposition with a relative. Unde, whence, is frequently used of persons, the others less frequently: ibi = in eō, &c.; ubi = in quō, &c.; inde = ex eō, &c.; unde = ex quō, &c.; eō = in eum, &c.; quō = in quem, &c.;

Potest fieri ut is, unde tē audisse dicis, frātus dixerit. Cic. It may be that he, from whom you say you heard (it), said it in anger.

2. The relative is not to be confounded with the dependent interrogative sentence. (469, R. 3.)

Quae probat populus ego nescio. Sen. The things that the people approves, I do not know (quid probet, what it is the people approves).

Et quid ego tē velim, et tū quod quæseris, scīas. Ter. You shall know both what (it is) I want of you, and what (the thing which) you are asking (= the answer to your question).

614. Position of Relatives.—The Relative and Relative forms are put at the beginning of sentences and clauses. The Preposition, however, generally, though not invariably, precedes its relative. (44.)

615. Antecedent.—The word to which the Relative refers is called the Antecedent, because it precedes in thought even when it does not in expression.

Remark.—The close connection between Relative and Antecedent is shown by the frequent use of one preposition in common. (416.)

CONCORD.

616. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person:

Is minimō eget mortāllis, quī minimum cupit. Syrus. (293.)

Uxor contenta est quae bona est ūnō virō. Plaut. (373, R. 1.)

Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtāri nōn potest. Syrus. Bad is the plan that cannot (let itself) be changed.

Hoc ills narro quī mē nōn intelligunt. Phaedrus. I tell this tale for those who understand me not.


Remarks.—1. The Relative agrees with the Person of the true Antecedent, even when a predicate intervenes:

Tū es ǐs, quī mē ad caelum extulisti. Cic. You are he that has exalted me to the skies.

So occasionally in English: Acts xxi. 38.
2. When the Relative refers to a sentence, *id quod, that which*, is commonly used (parenthetically):

*SÍ S VÍBIS DÉSÉRAR*, (*id quod nón spérés*), tamen animó nón défíciam. 
*CIC.* If I should be deserted by you, (which I do not expect,) nevertheless I should not become faint-hearted.

3. The gender and number of the Relative may be determined:

I. By the sense, and not by the form.
II. By the predicate or the apposition, and not by the antecedent:

**EXAMPLES**: I. *Sex milia qui Pydnam perfúgerant.* 
*Liv.* Six thousand, who had fled to Pydna.

***EQUITÁTUM omnem praemittit, quí videant.* 
*Liv.* He sent all the cavalry ahead, who should see (that they might see, to see).

II. *Thébae, quod caput Boētiae est.* 
*Liv.* Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.

***Flúmen Scaldis, quod influit in Mosam. CAES.* 
*The river Schelde, which empties into the Meas.*

***Júsista glória, quē est fructus virtūtis.* 
*CIC.* Real glory, which is the fruit of virtue.

4. The apposition may be incorporated into the relative:

***Testárum suffragiis quod illí ostracismum vocant.* 
*Ner.* By potterd votes — (a thing) which they call "ostracism."

5. When the Relative refers to the combined antecedents of different gender, the strongest gender is preferred, according to 282:

***Grandēs nātū mārēs et parvuli liberī, quórūm utrōrumque saēsīs misericordiam nostram requirīt.* 
*CIC.* Aged matrons and infant children, whose age on either hand demands our compassion.

***Utium atque divitiae, quae prima mortālēs putant.* 
*Sall.* Leisure and money, which mortals reckon as the prime things.

Or, the nearest gender may be preferred:

***Eae frūgēs atque fructūs quōs terra gignit.* 
*CIC.* Those fruits of field and trees which earth bears.

6. Combined Persons follow the rule, 283.

617. Repetition of the Antecedent.—The Antecedent of the Relative is quite often repeated in the Relative clause, with the Relative as its attributive:

***Caesar intellexit diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētītī oportēret.* 
*Caes.* Caesar saw that the day was at hand, on which (day it behooved to measure) corn (was to be measured out) to the soldiers.

618. Incorporation of the Antecedent.—The Antecedent and the Adjective, or the apposition of the Antecedent, are often incorporated into the Relative clause:

***In quem primum egressī sunt locum Trōja vocātur.* 
*LIV.* The first place they landed at was called Troy.
Amânus Syriam à Ciliciâ dividit, qui mons erat hostium plēnus. Cic. Syria is divided from Cilicia by Amanus, a mountain which was full of enemies.

Themistoclēs, dē servis suis quem habuit fidēlissimum, ad Xerxem misit. Neś. Themistocles sent the most faithful slave he had to Xerxes.

Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hāc sē exercet. Cic. What trade each man understands, in that let him practise himself (= every man to his trade).

Remark.—Especially to be noted are the phrases: quae tua prūdentia est, which (such) is your prudence; quā prūdentia es (= tū es sē prūdentia), of which (such) prudence are you (= prō tua prūdentia, in accordance with your prudence). See 628.

619. Attraction of the Relative.—The Accusative of the Relative is occasionally attracted into the Ablative of the Antecedent, rarely into any other case:

Hoc confirmāmus illō auguriō quō dīximus. Cic. We confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.

Remarks.—1. This attraction takes place chiefly when the verb of the relative clause must be supplied from the principal sentence:

Quibus sancīs poterat sécum ductīs ad urbem pergit. Liv. Having taken with him all the wounded he could, he proceeded to the city.

2. Inverted Attraction.—So-called Inverted Attraction is found only in poetry, and then in the Accusative case, which may be considered as an object of thought or feeling:

Urbem quam statuō, vestra est. Verg. (As for) the city which I am rearing, (it) is yours.

Istum quem quaeris, ego sum. Ter. (As for) that man whom you are looking for, I am he. ("He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.")

620. Correlative Use of the Relative.—The usual Correlative of qui is is, more rarely hīc, ille:

Is minimō egest mortālis, qui minimum cupit. Syrus. (293.)

Hīc sapiens, de quō loquor. Cic. (290, 3.)

Illā diēs veniet, mea quā lūgubria pōnam. Ov. (292, 4.)

621. Omission of the Correlative.—The Correlative, is, is often omitted, especially when it would stand in the same case as the Relative:

Postume, nōn bene olet, qui bene semper olet. Mart. Postumus, (he) smells not sweet, who always smells sweet.

Quem arme nōn frēgerant vitia vicērunt. Curt. (Him) whom arms had not crushed did vices overcome.

Quem di diligunt adulescens moritur. Plaut. (He) whom the gods love dies young.
Xerxes praemium proposuit qui [= et qui] invenisset novam voluptatem. Cic. Xerxes offered a reward to him who should invent a new pleasure.

Miseranda vita qui [= eorum qui'] se metui quam amari malunt. Nep. Piteous is the life of those who would prefer being feared to being loved.

Discite sanari per quem [= per eum, per quem'] didicistis amare. Ov. (408.)

622. Position of the Correlative clause.—The Relative clause often precedes the Correlative; incorporation is common:

Male res se habet quum quod virtute efficat id tentatur pecunia. Cic. It is a bad state of affairs when what ought to be accomplished by worth, is attempted by money.

Quod videt accidere puerris hoc nobis quoque majusculis puerris evenit. Sen. What you see befalls children (this) happens to us also, children of a larger growth.

Quae quia non liceat non facit, illa facit. Ov. (541.)

Quam quisque nornit artem, in hac se exerceat. (618.)

The Correlative omitted:

Quod non dedit fortuna, non eripit. Sen. What fortune has not given (does not give), she does not take away.

Per quas non petitis saepe fugatis opes. Ov. The means you take to win us, often scare us off.

623. Indefinite Antecedent.—The Indefinite Antecedent is generally omitted:

Elige cui dicis: tibi mihi sola places. Ov. Choose some one to whom you may say: You alone please me.

Remark.—Such sentences are sometimes hardly to be distinguished from the Interrogative:

Conon non quasavit ubi ipse tutus viveret. Nep., (397), might be either.

TENSES IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

624. Future and Future Perfect.—The Future and Future Perfect are used with greater exactness than in current English (234, 236):

Sic liber, dominus qui volet esse meus. Mart. He must be free who wishes (shall wish) to be my master.

Qui prior strinxerit ferrum, ejus victoria erit. Liv. (236, R. 2.)
RELATIVE SENTENCES.

625. Iterative Action.—Relative sentences follow the laws laid down for Iterative action (568, 569):

I. Contemporaneous action:

Öre trahit quocumque potest, atque addit acervō. Hor. Drags with its mouth whatever it can, and adds to the treasure (heap).

Quocumque incēdēbat agmen, légāti occurrēbant. Liv. In whatever direction the column advanced, ambassadors came to meet them.

II. Prior action:

Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddidit, quod accēpit. Cic. The earth never returns without interest what it has received (receives).

Quod nōn dedit fortūna, nōn ūrīpit. Sen. (623.)

Nōn oēnat quotīs nēmo vocāvit eum. Mart. He does not dine as often as (when) no one has invited (invites) him.

Haerēbant in memoriā quacumque audierat et viderat [Themistocles]. Nep. (569.)

Sequentur tē quocumque pervēneris vitia. Sen. Vices will follow you whithersoever you go.

Qui timēre désierint, dīisse incipient. Tacc. (569.)

Remark.—According to 569, the Subjunctive is used
1.) In Úrātio Obliqua (Total or Partial);
2.) ByAttraction of Mood (Complementary Clauses):

Quīs eum diligat quem metuat? Cic. Who could love him whom he fears?

Mōs est Athēnēs laudāri in contiōne eōs qui sīnt in praelibus interficīt. Cic. It is the custom at Athens that a panegyric be pronounced on those who have been killed in battle. (Laudantur, qui interficīt sunt.)

3.) In the Ideal Second Person:

Bonus segnīor ēt ubi negelegās. Sall. (568.)

4.) On the general principle of oblique sense, chiefly in later historians:

Qui ēnum ējus ordinis offendisset omnēs adversōs habēbat. Liv. (569.)

MOODS IN RELATIVE SENTENCES.

626. The Relative clause, as such—that is, as the representative of an adjective—takes the Indicative mood:

Uxor quae bona est, A wife who is good (a good wife).

Remark.—The Relative in this use often serves as a circumlocution for a Substantive, with this difference: that the Substantive expresses a permanent relation; the Relative clause, a transient relation: if quī docēnt = those who teach = the teachers (inasmuch as they are exercising the functions).

627. The Explanatory Relative qui, with the Indicative, (= is enim, for he,) often approaches quod, in that.
Habeo senectūtī magnam grātiam, quae mihi sermōnis aviditātem auxit. Cic. I am very thankful to old age, which (= it, in that it) has increased me (= in me) the appetite for talk.

Remark.—Quī with the Subjunctive gives a ground = cum is (387); quī with the Indicative, a fact; and in many passages the causal sense seems to be inevitable:

Errāverim fortasse qui mē esse aliquem putāvi. Plin. Ep. I may have erred in thinking myself to be somebody.

Improbā [i.e., Ardea] quae nōstrōs cōgis abesse virōs. Ov. Naught Ardea, that forcest (for forcing) our husbands to be away.

In some authors this causal sense is heightened by ut, utpote, as; quīppē, namely; but with these particles the Subjunctive is far more common.

628. Quī = si quis, if any, has the Indicative when the Conditional is logical. So in Generic Sentences. (246, R. 4.)

Terra nunquam sine ūsūrā reddit, quod accēpit. Cic. (Si quid accē-
pit.) (625.)

Qui mori didicit, servire dēdidicit. Sen. (424.)

Remark.—On the Relative with the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences, see 594.

629. The Subjunctive is employed in Relative clauses when it would be used in a simple sentence.

Potential: Habeo quae velim. Cic. I have what I should like.

Optative: Quod faustum sit, rēgem cūrāte. Liv. Blessing be on your choice, make ye a king.

Remark.—Especially to be noted is the Subjunctive in Restrictive phrases. This Relative often takes quidem, sometimes modo. Such phrases are quod sciam = quantum scio, for all I know; quod meminerim, so far as memory serves me.

Omnium ērātorum quōs quidem cognōverim acūtissimum ēdico Sertórium. Cic. Of all orators, so far as I know them, I consider Sertorius the most acute.

Nullum ornātum quī modo nōn obscurēt subtrahendum puto. Quint. I think no ornament is to be withdrawn, provided that it do not cause obscurity.

Sometimes qui quidem is found with the Indicative.

630. The Subjunctive is used in Relative clauses which form a part of the utterance or the view of another than the narrator, or of the narrator himself when indirectly quoted. (539, R.) So especially in Úrātio Obliqua and Final Sentences:

Rectē Graeci praecipiunt, nōn temptanda quae efficī nōn possint. Quint. Right are the Greeks in teaching, that those things are not to be attempted, which cannot be accomplished.

Apud Hypanim ūnus Aristotelēs ait, bestiōs quādam nāscī quae ūnnum diem vivant. Cic. (633.)

Paestus omnēs librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit. Cic. (This is Paetus' statement; otherwise: quōs frāter ājus (521) reliquerat.)
RELATIVE SENTENCES.

Xerxes praeium proposuit qui [= et qui] invénisset novam volup-
tatem. Cic. (621.)

Multi suam vitam negezœrunt ut eös qui hís cáríorés quam ipsi sibi
essent liberärent. Cic. Many have neglected their own lives, that they might
free those who were dearer to them, than they were to themselves.

REMARKS.—Even in Úrâtio Obliqua the indicative is retained:
1. In explanations of the narrator :
Nuntiátur Afrânio magnús comméntús qui iter habébant ad Caesarem ad
flúmer constitisse. Caes. It is (was) announced to Afranius that large supplies of pro-
visions (which were on their way to Caesar) had halted at the river.

In the historians this sometimes occurs where the relative clause is an integral part
of the sentence, especially in the Imperfect and Pluperfect; partly for clearness, partly
for liveliness. For shifting indicative and subjunctive, see Liv. xxvi. 1.

2. In mere circumlocutions :
Quis neget hæc omnia quae vidémus deórum potestáte administrári? Cic.
Who would deny that this whole visible world is managed by the power of the gods?
Próvidéndum est née quae dicuntur ab eós qui dicit dissentiant. Quint. We
must see to it that the speech be not out of keeping with the speaker.

631. Relative sentences which depend on infinitives and
subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put
in the subjunctive (attraction of mood):

Pigři est ingenii contentum esse iús quae sint ab aliís inventa. Quint.
It is the mark of a slow genius to be content with what has been found out by
others.

Quis eum diligat quem metuat aut eum a quó sé metui putet? Cic.
Who could love a man whom he fears, or by whom he deems himself feared?

Nam quod emás pòssis jūre vocāre tuum. Mart. For what you buy,
you may rightly call your own.

Ab aliís expectés alterí quod fécérís. Syrus. (306.)

In virtúte sunt multí ascensús, ut is glória maximá excellat, qui vir-
túté plúrimum praestet. Cic. In virtue there are many degrees, so that he
exceeds in glory, who has the greatest eminence in virtue.

Si sōlōs eós dicérés miserós quibus moriendum esset, nēominem éorum
qui víverent excipérés; moriendum enim est omnibus. Cic. If you
called only those wretched who had (have) to die, you would except none who
lived (live); for all have to die.

REMARKS.—The indicative is used:
1. In mere circumlocutions; so, often in consecutive sentences:
Necesse est facere stúmpum qui quærít lucrüm. Plaut. (535.)

Efficiitur ab orátóre, ut ilí quí audíunt íta assistántur ut orátór velít. Cic. It is
brought about by the orator that those who hear him (= his auditors) are affected as he
wishes (them to be).

2. Of individual facts :
Et quod videás perse déritum dicás. Cat. And what you see (definite thing,
definite person) is lost for aye, for aye deem lost. (Quod videás, any body, any thing.)
632. Relative Sentences of Design.—Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive (of Design) when quī = ut is:

Sunt mulī qui alīs ēripiunt quod alīs largiuntur. Cic. Many are they who snatch from some to lavish on others.
Senex serit arborēs, quae alterī sēculō prōsint. Cic. (545.)
Semper habē Pylāden, qui consōlētur Orestēn. Ov. (545.)
Artaxerxēs Themistocli Magnēsiam urbem dōnāverat, quae et pānem praebeāret. NEP. (545.)

REMARK.—In many combinations this Relative lends to the Characteristic, and the conception seems Potential rather than Optative.

633. Relative Sentences of Tendency.—Optative Relative sentences are put in the Subjunctive (of Tendency) when quī = ut is.

The notion is generally that of Character and Adaptation:
Danum nulla tanta sunt quae nōn vīrī fortēs ferenda arbitretur. Cic. There are no losses so great, that brave men should not think them endurable (great enough to keep brave men from thinking them endurable).
Ille ego sum cūjus laniet furiōsa capillōs. Ov. I am the man whose hair she tears in her seasons of frenzy.
Nil prōdest quod nōn laedere possit idem. Ov. (296.)
Quem mea Calliopē laesarit īnus ego. Ov. I am the only one that my Calliope (= my Muse) has hurt.
Māior sum quam cū possit Fortūna nocēre. Ov. (313.)
Digna fuit illa nātūra quae meliōra vellet. QUINT. (556, R. 2.)

634. This construction of the Characteristic Relative is especially common after such general expressions as

Est quī, sunt quī, there is, there are some who; nēmō est quī, there is none to; nihil est quod, there is nothing; habeo quod, I have to; reperiuntur quī, persons are found who (to) . . . ; quis est quī? who is there who (to) . . . . ? est cūr, there is reason for, &c. So, also, fuit cum, there was a time when.

Sunt quī discessum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem. Cic. There are some who (to) think that death is the departure of the soul from the body.

Fuit quī suādēret appellātiōnem mēnsis Augustī in Septembrēm transferendum. SUET. There was a man who urged (= to urge) that the name of the month (of) August should be transferred to September.

Multi suērunt quī tranquillitātem expetērent ā negotiis públicis sē remōverint. Cic. There have been many who, in the search for quiet, have withdrawn themselves from public engagements.

Post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam mali. PlAUT. After death there is no ill in death for me to dread.
Nec mea quif digitis lumina condat erit. Ov. And there will be no one to close mine eyes with his fingers.

Miserrimus est qui cum esse cupit quod edat non habet. Plaut. He is a poor wretch who, when he wants to eat, has not any thing to eat.

Nob habet quid edat would mean: does not know what to eat.

Nōn est quod Paupertās nōs ā philosophiā revocet nē egestās quidem. Sen. There is nothing to make narrow circumstances recall us from philosophy—not even (= or even) want.

Remarks.—1. The Indicative may be used in the statements of definite facts, and not of general characteristics:

Multi sunt qui ēripiunt. There are many to snatch away.

Many are they who snatch away.

Of course this happens only after affirmative sentences. The poets use the Indicative more freely than prose writers:

Sunt-qui (= quidam) quod sentiunt nonn audent dicere. Cic. Some dare not say what they think.

Sunt-quibus ingrātōs timida indulgentia servit. Ov. To some trembling indulgence plays the slave all thanklessly.

Est-ubi profectō damnōm praestat facere quam lucrum. Plaut. Sometimes, in point of fact, 'tis better to lose than gain.

2. When a definite predicate is negated, the Indicative may stand on account of the definite statement, the Subjunctive on account of the negative:

a. Nihil bonum est quod non eum qui id possideat meliōrem faciat; or,

b. Nihil bonum est quod non eum qui id possideat meliōrem faciat.

a. Nothing that does not make its owner better is good.

b. There is nothing good that does not make its owner better.

635. Negative of Qui in Sentences of Character.—Qui non, sometimes quae non, quod non, &c., are represented after negative clauses by quin:

Sunt certa vitia quae nōmo est quin effugere cupiatur. Cic. There are certain faults which there is no one but (= everybody) desires to escape.

Nil tam difficile est quin quaerendo investigari possit (= possit). Ter. (556.)

But as quin = ut non, the demonstrative may be expressed:

Nōn cum quōquam arma contuLt quin is mibi succubuerit. Nep. I have never measured swords with any one that he has not (but he has) succumbed to me.

For other uses of quin, see 551.

636. Relative in a Causal Sense.—When qui = cum is, as he, the Subjunctive is employed.
The particles ut, utpoœ, quippe, as, are often used in conjunction with the Relative:

[Caninius] fuit mûrîficâ vigilantiâ quî suô tô tô consulâtû somnum non viderit. Cic. Caninius has shown marvellous watchfulness, not to have been (= taken a wink of) sleep in his whole consulship.

Ô fortûnâte adulescens, qui tuae virtûtis Homœrum praecönem invêneris! Cic. Lucky youth! to have found a crier (= trumpeter) of your valor (in) Homer!

Mâjor glória Scipîonis, Quintû recentior ut qui eô annô triumphässet. Liv. Scipio’s glory was greater, Quintus’ was fresher, (as was to be expected in) a man who (inasmuch as he) had triumphed in that year.

Plato a Dionysiô tyrannô crûdéliter violâtus est quippe quem vênumdari jussässet. Nep. Plato was cruelly maltreated by the tyrant Dionysius, seeing, namely, that he had ordered him to be sold.

637. Relative in a Concessive or Adversative Sense.—Quî is sometimes used as equivalent to cum is in a Concessive or Adversative Sense:

Ego quî leviter Graecâs litterâs attigissem, tamen cum vênissem Athenâs complûrâs diēs ibi commorâtûs sum. Cic. Although I had dabbled but slightly in Greek, nevertheless, having come to Athens, I stayed there several days.

638. Accusative Relative and Infinitive.—The Accusative Relative, with the Infinitive, may be used in Ôrâtio Obligua when the Relative is to be resolved into a Coördinating Conjunction and the Demonstrative:

Philosophi cœnsent ünumquemque nôstrum mundi esse partem, ex quô illud nâtûra consequi ut communem utilitâtêm nôstrae antepônâmus. Cic. Philosophers think that every one of us is a part of the universe, and that the natural consequence of this is for us to prefer the common welfare to our own.

REMARK.—So also sometimes sentences with the relative particles quia, cum, ut, quanquam, etc.: quia trucidâre = quia trucidârent, because they butchered (only in the later historians).

639. Combination of Relative Sentences.—Relative Sentences are combined by means of Copulative Conjunctions only when they are actually coördinate.

When the second Relative would stand in the same case as the first, it is commonly omitted.
When it would stand in a different case, the Demonstrative is often substituted; or, if the case be the Nominative or Accusative, the Relative may be omitted altogether:

**Dumnorix qui principatum obtinēbat cuique plēbs favēbat,**
_Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;_

**Dumnorix qui principātum obtinēbat ac plēbē acceptus erat, (Caesar),**
_Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (who) was acceptable to the commons;_

**Dumnorix qui principātum obtinēbat eique plēbs favēbat,**
_Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and whom the commons favored;_

**Dumnorix qui principātum obtinēbat et plēbs diligēbat,**
_Dumnorix, who held the chieftaincy, and (whom) the commons loved;_

**Dumnorix quem plēbs diligēbat et principātum obtinēbat,**
_Dumnorix, whom the commons loved, and (who) held the chieftaincy._

**Remark.**—The Relative is not combined with adversative or fillative conjunctions (but who, who therefore), except at the beginning of a sentence, when it represents or anticipates a demonstrative. (692.)

_Qui fortis est fidem est, qui antem fidem est is non extimēcit._ Cíc. _He who is brave is confident, but he who is confident is not afraid._
_Sēd qui, qui tamen, can be used in antithesis to adjectives._

_Sophrōn mīmōrum quidem scriptor sed quem Plato probāvit._ Cíc. _Sophron, a writer of mimes, 'tis true, but (one) that Plato approved._

**640. Relative Sentence represented by a Participle.**—The Relative sentence is sometimes represented by a Participle, but generally the Participle expresses a closer connection than the mere explanatory Relative:

_Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs perfidi sunt._ Cíc. _All who are driving at one thing and pretending another are treacherous._

_Pisistratus Homēri librōs confusōs antea sīc disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus._ Cíc. _Pisistratus is said to have arranged the books of Homer, which were (whereas they were) in confusion before, as we have them now._

**Comparative Sentences.**

**641. A peculiar phase of the Relative sentence is the Comparative, which is introduced in English by as or than, in Latin by a great variety of relative forms:**

I. By correlatives;
II. By _atque_ or _ac_;  
III. By _quam._

**642. Moods in Comparative Sentences.**—The mood of the Dependent clause is the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive is
required by the laws of oblique relation, or by the conditional idea (604).

**Remark.**—On potius quam with the Subjunctive, see below, 647, R. 4.

643. The dependent clause often borrows its verb from the leading clause:

Ignōrātio futūrōrum malōrum utilior est quam scientiā. Cic. (311.)
Servī mōribus īisdem erant quibus dominus. Cic. (296, R. 1.)

644. When the dependent clause (or standard of comparison) borrows its verb from the leading clause, the dependent clause is treated as a part of the leading clause; and if the first or leading clause stands in the Accusative with the Infinitive, the second or dependent clause must have the Accusative likewise:

Ita sentio Latinam linguam locupletiōrem esse quam Graecam. Cic.  
*It is my opinion that the Latin language is richer than the Greek.*

Ego Gājum Caesarem nōn eadem dē rēpublīcā sentiēre quae mē scio.  
Cic. *I know that Gaius Caesar has not the same views with regard to the state as I (have).*

I. CORRELATIVE COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.

645. Correlative Sentences of Comparison are introduced by Adjective and Adverbial Correlatives:

1. Adjective correlatives:

| tot, totidem | quot, | (so) as many |
| tantus | quantus, | (so) as great |
| tālis | quālis, | such |
| īdem | quī, | the same |

2. Adverbial correlatives:

| tam | quam, | (so) as much |
| tantopere | quantopere | (so) as much |
| totīēs | quotīēs, | as often |
| tamdiū | quamdiū, | as long |
| ita, sīc | quamadmodum, ut, utī, sīcut, | so (as) = as. |
| ītem, ītidem | quōmodo, | |

Quot hominēs, tot sententiae, (as) many men, (so) many minds. Prov.  
Frūmentum tanti fuit quanti īste aestimāvit. Cic. *Corn was worth as much as he valued it.*
Quālem invēni tālem reliquit. Front. Such as I found (him), I left (him).

Cimōn incidit in eandem invidiām quam pater suus. Nep. (296.)
Nihil tam populāre quam bonitās. Cic. Nothing is so winning as kindness.

Sic dē ambitiōne quōmodo dē amicā queruntur. Sen. They complain of ambition as they do of a sweetheart.

Tamdiū requiesco quamdiū ad tē scribo. Cic. I rest as long as I am writing to you.

Remarks.—1. On other forms with idem see 296.

2. Ut quīisque with the Superlative is more common than quō quīisque with the Comparative, and is translated in the same way:

Ut quīisque sibi plārumīn confidit, ita maximē excellit. Cic. The more a man trusts himself, the more he excels.

Obscūrior quō quīisque dētoriēr. Quint. The obscurer a man (a speaker) is, the worse he is.

One member often coalesces with the other:

Optimum quidque rāriissum est = Ut quidque rāriissum est, ita optimum. See 305.

3. Ut—ita is often used concessively (484). On ita—ut, in Asservations, see 235:

4. Ut and pro eō ut are frequently used in a limiting or causal sense. so far as. inasmuch as: Prō eō ut temporum difficultās tulit, so far as the hard times permitted; ut tum rēs erant, as things were then; ut temporibus illās, for those times; ut erat furiōsus, stark mad as he was.


Ut sunt hūmāna, nihil est perpetuum datum. Plaut. As the world wags, nothing is given for good and all.

5. On quam, quantus, and the Superlative, see 311.

Notice in this connection quam quī with the Superlative:

Tam sum amīcus repūlicae quam quī maximē (= est). Cic. I am as devoted a friend to the State as he who is most (= as any man).

II. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES WITH atque (ac).

646. Adjectives and Adverbs of Likeness and Unlikeness may take atque or ac:

Virtūs eadem in hominē ac deō. Cic. Virtue is the same in man as in god.

Date operam nē simulī fortūnāūtāmur atque anteāūsi sumus. Ter. Do your endeavor that we have not (ill)-luck like that we had before.

Dissimulātiō est quem alia dicuntur ac sentiās. Cic. Dissimulation is when other things are said than what you mean (something is said other than what you mean).

Similiter facis ac si mē rogēs cūr tē duōbus contuear oculīs, et nōn alterō. Cic. You are acting (like) as if you were to ask me why I am looking at you with two eyes, and not with one.
Non dixi secus (aliter) ac sentiēbam. Cic. I did not speak otherwise than I thought.

Remarks.—1. The expression is commonly explained by an ellipsis:
Aliter dixi atque [aliter] sentiēbam, I spoke one way and yet I was thinking another way.
So we find:
Timeo nē alius crēdās atque alius nūntīs. Ter. I fear that you believe one thing and tell another.
Et and -que are occasionally used in the same way.*
2. Alius, aliter, secus, seldom have quam: non alius and other negative combinations seldom have atque, commonly quam or nisi. (592, R. 2.)
Philosophia quid est aliu (= nihil est aliu) nisi dōnum deōrum? Cic.
Philosophy—what else is it but the gift of the gods?
Non aliter has either quam or atque.

III. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES WITH quam.

647. Comparative Sentences with quam follow the comparative degree or comparative expressions.
The Verb of the dependent clause is commonly to be supplied from the leading clause, according to 643.
In Comparative Sentences quam takes the same case after it as before it:

Melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria. Liv. (292, R. 1.)
Potius amicūm quam dictum perdidī. Quint. I preferred to lose my friend rather than my joke.
Existimēs velim nēminem culquam cāriōrem unquam fuisset quam tē mihi. Cic. (546, R. 3.)

Remarks.—1. When the second member is a subject, and the first member an oblique case, the second member must be put in the Nominative, with the proper form of the verb esse, unless the oblique case be an Accusative:

Vicinus tuus equum meliorēm habet quam tuus est. Cic. (598.)
Haec verba sunt Varrōnis, hominis doctīoris quam fuit Claudius. Gell.
These words are (the words) of Varro, a person of greater learning than Claudius (was).

Ego hominem callidiōrem vidi nēminem quam Phormiōnem Ter. I have seen no shrewder man than Phormio (= quam Phormio est).
2. On quam prō, see quam quī, 313. On the double comparative, 314.
3. Atque for quam after a comparative is poetical.
4. When two clauses are compared by potius, rather, prius, before, citius, quicker, sooner, the second clause is put in the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive (512), with or without ut.

Dépignā potius quam servīās. Cic. (579 R.)
Vir bonus statuit intolerābilis dolore lacerātī potius quam ut officium prōdat. Cic. A good man resolves to let himself be torn by unsustainable anguish, rather than be untrue to his duty.

* Still, -que in atque connects these clauses with the Relative, and the explanation of atque as ad + que, in comparison with + how (Ribbeck) is worthy of note.
Moriturès sò affirmábant citius quam in aliënös mórès verterentur. Liv. They declared that they had rather die, than let themselves be changed to foreign ways.

If the leading clause is in the Infinitive, the dependent clause may be in the Infinitive likewise, and this is the more common construction when the Infinitive follows a verb of Will and Desire:

Haec patienda cénseo, potius quam trucidári corpora vestra. Liv. I think these things are to be endured, rather than that your bodies (= you) should be butchered.

5. Instead of tam—quam, as—so, the Roman prefers the combinations non minus quam—nòn magis quam (by Lütot).  
1.) Nòn minus quam means no less than = quite as much:

Patria hominibus nòn minus cára esse débet quam libérí. Cíc. Country ought to be no less dear to men than children (= quite as dear as).

2.) Nòn magis quam means quite as little, or quite as much:

Animus nòn magis est sánus quam corpus. Cíc. The mind is no more sound than the body = as little sound as the body.

Or it might mean:

The mind is no more sound than the body = the body is quite as sound as the mind.

Fabius nòn in armís præstantior fuit quam in togá. Cíc. Fabius was not more distinguished in war than in peace (no less distinguished in peace than in war, quite as distinguished in peace as in war).

THE ABRIDGED SENTENCE.

648. The compound sentence may be reduced to a simple sentence, by substituting an Infinitive or a Participle for the dependent clause.

THE INFINITIVE AND INFINITIVE FORMS.

649. The practical uses of the Infinitive and its kindred forms, as equivalents of dependent clauses, have already been considered:

Infinitive after Verbs of Creation: 424 and after.
Gerund and Gerundive: 426 and after.
Supine: 435 and after.
Infinitive in Object Sentences: 526 and after.
Infinitive in Complementary Final Sentences: 532.
Infinitive in Relative Sentences: 638.

REMARK.—Under the head of the Abridged Sentence, will be treated the Historical Infinitive and Òráto Obliqua: the Historical Infinitive, because it is a compondious Imperfect; Òráto Obliqua, because it foreshortens, if it does not actually abridge, and effaces the finer distinctions of Òráto Recta.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.

650. The Infinitive of the Present is sometimes used by the historians to give a rapid outline of events, with the
subject in the Nominative; generally, several infinitives in succession:


Remarks.—1. The ancient assumption of an ellipsis of coepit, begun (Quint. ii. 3, 58), serves to show the conception, although it does not explain the construction. There is no ellipsis. The Infinitive is to be explained as in Oratio Obliqua. It takes the place of the Imperfect, is used chiefly in rapid passages, and gives the outline of the thought, and not the details.

2. The Historical Infinitive is sometimes found after cum, ubi, etc.:

Nōn multum erat progressa nāvis cum datō signō ruere tectum. Tac. Not far (but a little way) had the ship advanced, when, at a signal given, the roof came down with a rush (began to tumble).

**Oratio Obliqua**

651. The thoughts of the narrator, or the exact words of a person, as reported by the narrator, are called Oratio Recta, or Direct Discourse.

Indirect Discourse, or Oratio Obliqua, reports not the exact words spoken, but the general impression produced.

Remarks.—1. Under the general head of Oratio Obliqua are embraced also those clauses which imply Indirect Quotation (Partial Obliquity). See 509.

2. Inquam, quoth I, is used in citing the Oratio Recta, ēgo, I say, generally in Oratio Obliqua. Inquam is always parenthetic; ēgo may or may not be parenthetic. Oratio Recta may also be cited by a parenthetic "ut ait," "ut ējunt," as he says, as they say. When the subject of inquit is mentioned it is commonly postponed.

652. Oratio Obliqua differs from Oratio Recta, partly in the use of the Moods and Tenses, partly in the use of the Pronouns.

Remarks.—1. It must be remembered that ē. O. is necessarily less accurate in its conception than ē. R., and hence it is not always possible to restore the ē. R. from the ē. O. with perfect certainty. What is ideal to the speaker, may become unreal to the narrator from his knowledge of the result, and hence, when accuracy is aimed at, the narrator takes the point of view of the speaker, and in the last resort passes over to ē. Recta.

2. ē. Obliqua often comes in without any formal notice.

**Moods in Oratio Obliqua.**

653. In Oratio Obliqua the principal clauses are put in the Infinitive, the subordinate clauses in the Subjunctive.
Örátio Recta: Apud Hypanim fluvium, inquit Aristotelēs,
Örátio Obliqua: Apud Hypanim fluvium Aristotelēs ait,
Ū. R.: bestiolae quaedam nāscuntur.
Ū. O.: bestiolās quāsdam nāscī,
Ū. R.: quae ānum diem vivunt,
Ū. O.: quae ānum diem vivant.

Ū. R.—On the river Bog, says Aristotle,
Ū. O.—Aristotle says that, on the river Bog, little creatures are born, that live (but) one day.

Socratēs dixere solēbat:
Ū. R. Omnēs in ēō quod sciant satis sunt eloquentēs.
Ū. O. Omnēs in ēō quod scirent satis esse eloquentēs.

Ū. R. Socrates used to say: "All men ARE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTAND."
Ū. O. Socrates used to say that all men WERE eloquent enough in what they UNDERSTOOD.

REMARK.—When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Indicative, the Infinitive is used according to the rule for Verbs of Saying and Thinking. When the Principal Clause, or Apodosis, is in the Subjunctive, as in the Ideal and Unreal conditions, special rules are necessary. (659.) Otherwise, Subjunctive in Ū. R. continues to be Subjunctive in Ū. O.

654. Interrogative sentences are put in the Subjunctive according to 469:

Arionvistus respondit sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum: quid sibi vellet ēō in suās possessionēs veniret. CAES. Arionvistus replied that he had come to Gaul before the Roman people: what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into his possessions? (Quid tibi vis?"

Thrasybūlus magnā vōce exclamābat; ēō sē fugiānt? Thrasybūlus cried out with a loud voice (asking), why they ran from him. (Ū. R., ēō mē fugitis?)

REMARKS.—1. Indicative Rhetorical Questions (466) are transferred from the Indicative of the Örátio Recta to the Accusative and Infinitive of Ū. O.; but seldom in the Second Person, which is commonly in the Subjunctive.

Quid est turpiss? What is baser? [Nothing.] Quid esse turpiss? What was baser?

Quō sē repulsēs ab Rōmānis itūrēs? LIV. Whether should they go, if repelled by the Romans? (Quō ibimūs?"
Cul nōn appārēre ab ēō quī prius arma intulisset injuriām ortam esse? LIV. To whom is it not evident that the wrong began with him, who had been the first to wage war? (Cul nōn appāret?)
Sī bonum dūcentem, quid prō nooxiō damnāssent? LIV. If they thought him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty? (Sī bonum dūcitīs, quid prō nooxiō damnāstis?)

2. In Subjunctive Rhetorical Questions the Subjunctive is either retained, or transferred to the Infinitive. The Deliberative Subjunctive is always retained,
Quis sibi persuādēret sine certā re Ambiorigem ad ejusmodi consilium déscondisse? Caes. Who could persuade himself that Ambiorix had proceeded to an extreme measure like that, without (having made) a sure thing (of it)? (Quis sibi persuādebat?)

The Infinitive form would be the Future: quem sibi persuāsūrum? (659) and is not to be distinguished from the Future Indicative.

655. Imperative sentences are put in the Subjunctive: the Negative is, of course, nē:

Reditur responsum: Nōndum tempus pugnae esse; castrīs sē tenērent. Liv. There was returned for answer, that it was not yet time to fight, that they must keep within the camp. (O. R. castrīs vōs tenēte.)

Vercingetorix cohaerētus est: nē perturbārentur incommōtō. Caes. Vercingetorix comforted them (by saying) that they must not allow themselves to be disconcerted by the disaster. (O. R. nōlite perturbāri.)

Remark.—Ut can be used in the first sentence, according to 546; but only in the first.

Pythia respondit ut moenibus lignēs sē mūnirent, Ner. The Pythia answered that they must defend themselves with walls of wood.

TENSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

656. The Tenses of the Infinitive follow the laws already laid down (530):

The Present Infinitive expresses contemporaneous action;
The Perfect Infinitive expresses prior action;
The Future Infinitive expresses future action.

657. The Tenses of the Subjunctive follow the laws of sequence (510). The choice is regulated by the point of view of the Reporter, or the point of view of the Speaker.

Remark.—By assuming the point of view of the speaker, greater liveliness as well as greater accuracy is imparted to the discourse. This form is technically called Repraesentatio. In Conditional Sentences Repraesentatio often serves to prevent ambiguity. The point of view not unfrequently shifts from reporter to speaker, sometimes in the same sentence.

Point of View of the Reporter:

Lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: sibi mīrum vidēri quid in suā Galliā quam bellō vicisset, Caesārī negotiī esset. Caes. To the embassy Ariovistus replied, that it seemed strange to him (he wondered) what business Caesār had in his Gaul, which he had conquered in war.

Point of View of the Speaker:

Lēgātis Helvētiōrum Caesār respondit: consuēsse deōs immortālēs,
quod gravius hominés ex committitiónē rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdere. Caes. To the envoys of the Helvetians Cæsar replied, that the gods were (are) wont, that men might (may) suffer the more severely from change in their fortunes, to grant occasional increase of prosperity to those whom they wished (wish) to punish for their crime. (A long passage may be found in Liv. xxviii. 32.)

Point of View shifted:

Ad haec Marius respondit: Si quid ab senātū petere vellent, ab armīs discēdant. Sall. Thereto Marius replied: If they wished to ask anything of the senate, they must lay down their arms.


Examples of Ō. O. in Object Clauses, 524.

Causal, 541.

Temporal, 562, 563, 564, 566, 570, 572, 576.

Relative, 630.

Remarks.—1. Coördinate Relative Clauses are put in the Accusative and Infinitive (638).

2. Relative Clauses are put in the Indicative: 1. In mere circumlocutions. 2. In explanations of the narrator. (639, R. 1.)

3. Dum, with the Indicative, is often retained as a mere circumlocation (so also sometimes cum):

Dic, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hic vidisse jacentēs, dum sanctīs patrīae lēgibus obsequīmur. Cic. Tell Sparta, stranger, that thou hast seen us lying here obeying (in obedience to) our country’s hallowed laws.

659. Conditional Sentences in Oratio Obliqua (Total and Partial).

1. The Protasis follows the rule.

2. The Indicative Apodosis follows the rule, but Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Subjunctive are turned into the Future Infinitive or its periphrases.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is transferred to the Perfect Infinitive of the Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Passive and Supineless Verbs take the circumlocution with futūrum fuisset ut . . . . 240, R. 2.

Remark.—Posse needs no Future (245, R. 3), and potuisse no Periphrastic Perfect Infinitive, so that these forms are often used to lighten the construction.

3. Identical Forms.—In the transfer of conditions to Ō. Ō., the difference between many forms disappears. For instance:
I. Si id crēdis, errābis.  
Dico tē, si id crēdās, errātūrum esse.  
Si id crēdās, errēs.

II. Si id crēdis, errābis.  
Dixi tē, si id crēderēs, errātūrum esse.  
Si id crēderēs, errāres.

III. Si id crēdiderēs, errābis.  
Dixi tē, si id crēdidiessēs, errātūrum esse.  
Si id crēdidiessēs, errāveris.

Remark.—In No. I the difference is not vital, though exactness is lost.  
In No. II. the ambiguity is avoided by Representatio for the logical condition, and  
the use of the Periphrastic Perfect for the Unreal, wherever it is possible. The difference  
between an Unfulfilled Present and an Unfulfilled Past would naturally vanish to the nar-  
rator, to whom both are Past.*

No. III., like No. II., is used chiefly of the Future:

Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipse Caesar opus esset, sēsē ad illum ventū-  
rum fuisse: si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportēre. Caes. Ariovistus  
answered, that if he had wanted anything of Caesar he would have come to him; if he  
(Caesar) wanted anything of him, he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).

660. Logical Conditions in Oratio Obliqua:

1. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praec-  
scriberet quem ad modum suō jūre īterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō  
Rōmānō in suō jūre impedīri. Caes. To this Ariovistus made answer: If  
he did not prescribe to the Roman people how to exercise their right, he ought  
not to be hindered by the Roman people in the exercise of his right. (Ο. R. Si  
ego nōn praecrisbo, nōn oportet mē impedītr.)

2. Si bonum dūcerent, quid prō noxīō damnāsset? Sin (593) noxium  
comiserissent, quid alterum consulātum crēderent? Liv. If they thought  
him a good man, why had they condemned him as guilty; if on the other  
hand they had found him guilty, why did they intrust him with a second con-  
sulship? (Ο. R. Si—ducitas, quid damnāstis? Sin—comperistis, quid crē-  
ditis?)

3. Titurius clāmitābat, suam sententiam in utramque partem esse  
tūtam; si nihil esset (Ο. R., si nihil erit) dūrius, nullō periculō ad proxim-  
amm legiōnem perventūrōs (Ο. R., perveniētis); si Gallia omnis cum  
Germānīs cōnsentīret (Ο. R., si cōnsentit) ūnam esse (Ο. R., est) in cele-  
ritāte positam salūtem. Caes. Titurius kept crying out that his resolution  
was safe in either case: if there were (should be) no especial pressure, they

would get to the next legion without danger; if all Gaul was in league with the Germans, their only safety lay in speed.

4. Eum omnium labōrum finem fore existimabant si hostem ab Hibērō interclūdere potuisserint. Caes. They thought that would be the end of all (their) toils, if they could cut off the enemy from the Ebro. (Ö. R., is labō-
rum finis erit (or fuerit) si hostem interclāudere potuerimus.)

5. [HI] Jugurthae nōn mediocrem animum pollicitandō accendēbant sī Micipsa rōx occidisset, fore uti sōlus imperiō Numidiæ potīrētur. Sall. These persons kindled no little courage in Jugurthâ's heart by prom-
ising over and over that if King Micipsa fell, he alone should possess the rule over Numidia. (Ö. R., sī Micipsa occiderit, tū sōlus imperiō potiēris.)

6. Fīdēs data est, sī Jugurtham vīvum aut necātum sibi trādidisset fore ut illī senātus impūninēm et sua omnia concēderet. Sall. His word was pledged that if he delivered to him Jugurtha, alive or dead, the senate
would grant him impunity, and all that was his. (Ö. R., sī mihi trādideris,
tibi senātus tua omnia concēdet.)

7. Nōn multō ante urbem captam exaudita vōx est . . . futūrum esse, nisi prōvisum esset, ut Rōma caperētur. Cic. Not long before the taking of the city, a voice was heard (saying), that unless precautions were adopted, 
Rome would be taken. (Ö. R., nisi prōvisum erit, Rōma capiētur.)

8. Ariovistus respondit sī quid ille sē velit illum ad sē venire oportēre. Caes. (659, R.)

habitūrum; quod si eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus principibus-
que populi Rōmānī grātum factūrum. Caes. Ariovistus replied, that un-
less Caesar withdrew, he should regard him as an enemy, and in case he killed him, he would do a favor to many men of the highest position among the
Roman people. (Ö. R., Nisi dēcēdēs tē prō hoste habēbo . . . sī tē inter-
fēcero grātum fēcero (236, R. 2).

10. Fētur Jugurtha dixisse urbem vēnālem et mātūrē peritūram sī
emptōrem invēnerit. Sall. (Perf. Subj.) Jugurtha is reported to have said that the city was for sale, and would soon perish if it found a buyer. (Ö. R.,
urbs perībit sī emptōrem invēnerit : Fut. Perf. Ind.)

Remark.—Posse is used as has been stated. (659.)

Negārun bellum dirimī posse nisi Messēnīs Achaei Pylum redderent. Liv. They said that the war could not be stopped unless the Achaeans restored Pylos to the Mes-
seniāns. (Ö. R. Bellum dirimī nōn potest (poterit) nisi Pylum reddent.)

Decent, sī turris concōnāset, nōn posse militēs continēri quin spē praedae in
urbem irrigant. Caes. They show that if the tower fell, the soldiers could not be kept
from bursting into the city in the hope of booty. (Ö. R. si considerit, nōn possunt
(poterunt) continērī.)

661. Ideal Conditions in Ùrātio Obliqua:

1. Ait sē sī ùrātur "Quam hoc suāve" dictūrum. Cic. He declares
that if he were to be burnt he would say, “How sweet this is.” (O. R. Si ūrar, dicam, same form as Logical.)

2. Voluptātem si ipsa prō sē loquātur concessūram arbitror Dignitāti. Cic. I think that if Pleasure were to speak for herself, she would yield (the palm) to Virtue. (The context shows (Fin. III. 1) that the condition is Ideal, not Logical. Si loquātur, concēdat. Comp. 598, R. 2.)

662. Unreal Conditions in Ērātio Oblīqua:

1. Titurius clāmitābat Eburōnēs, si Caesar adesset, ad castra [Rōmānōrum] ventūros [nōn] esse. CAES. Titurius kept crying out that if Caesar were there, the Eburones would not be coming to the camp of the Romans. (O. R., si Caesar adesset, Eburōnēs nōn ventūrent.) On the rareness of this form see 659, R.

2. Appārēbat si diūtius vixisset Hamilcare duce Poenōs arma Italiae illātūros fuisse. Liv. It was evident that if he had lived longer, the Punic would have carried their arms into Italy under Hamilcar's conduct.

3. Nīsi eō ipsō tempore nūntiī dē Caesaris victoriā essent allāti existimābant plērīque futūrum fuisse ut oppidum āmitterētur. CAES. Had not news of Caesar's victory been brought at that very time, most persons thought the city would have been lost. (O. R., nisi nūntiī allāti essent, oppidum āmissum esset.)

Remark.—As the Pluperfect Indicative is sometimes used (rhetorically) for the Subjunctive (446, R. 3), so the ordinary Perfect Infinitive is sometimes employed instead of the Periphrastic:

Nēmō mihi persuādēbit multōs praestantōs virōs tanta esse cōnātōs (= cōnātūros fuisse) nisi animō cernērent (599, R. 1) posteritātem ad sē pertinēre. Cic. No one will persuade me that (no) many eminent men had made such mighty endeavors. had they not seen with their minds' (eye) that posterity belonged to them.

Pompejum plērīque existimāvānt si ērcius insequī voluisset bellum eō diē potuisset finire. CAES. Most people think that if Pompey had (but) determined to follow up more energetically, he could have finished the war on that day. (O. R., si voluisset. potuit, 599, R. 2.)

Namque illā multītūdine si sānā mens esset (599, R. 1) Graeciae, supplicium Persāe dare potuisset. Nēp. For with that number if Greece had had (= been in her) sound mind, the Persians might have paid the penalty (due). (O. R. Si sānā mens esset Graeciae. supplicium Persāe dare potuērunt.)

Pronouns in Orātio Oblīqua.

663. 1. The Reflexive is used according to the principles laid down 520, and after.

2. The person addressed is ille or is:

[Ariovistus respondit] nisi dēcēdat [Caesar] sēsē illum prō hoste hābitārum: quodsi eum interfecerit, multis sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum factūrum. CAES. (667, R. 9.) Of course this does not exclude the ordinary demonstrative use.
3. Hic and iste are commonly changed into ille or is, as nunc into tum and tunc.

Diodorus respondit se paucis illis diebus argentum misisse Lilybaeum. Cic. (389, R. 4)

4. Nōs is used when the narrator’s party is referred to. CAES. B. G. I. 44.

664. Specimens of the conversion of Oratio Obliqua into Oratio Recta.

Oratio Obliqua.

1. Aristovistus respondit:

Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte sed rogatus et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magnae spe magnisque praemis domum propinquisque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallis ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datas; stipendium capere jure bellii, quod victores victis imponeere consuerint. Non sese Gallis sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnès Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse et contrā se castra habuisse; eae omnès copias a se unō proelii pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velit, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pase uti velit, intuquam est de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint, Amicitiam populi Români sibi ornamento et praesidiō, non detrimento esse oportere se a spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendum remittatur et dediticiit subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recursurum populi Români amicitiam quam appeterit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere; eius ret testimonio esse quod nisi rogatus non venerit et quod bellum non intulerit sed defenditer. CAES. B. G. I., 44.

Oratio Recta.

Transit Rhenum non mea sponte sed rogatus et arcessitus a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemis domum propinquisque reliquisse; sedes habeo in Galliis ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datas; stipendium capio jure bellii, quod victores victis imponeere consuerunt. Non ego Gallis sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt; omnès Galliae civitates ad me oppugnandum venérunt et contra me castra habuerunt; eae omnès copias a me unō proelii pulsae ac superatas sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, iterum paratum sum decertare, si pase uti volunt, intuquam est de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad hoc tempus pependerunt. Amicitiam populi Români mihi ornamento et praesidiō, non detrimento esse oportet idque ea spe peti. Si per populum Romanum stipendum remittatur et dediticiit subtrahentur, non minus libenter recusabo populi Români amicitiam quam appeti. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducam, id met muniendi non Galliae impugnandae causa facio; eius ret testimonio est quod nisi rogatus non venit et quod bellum non intulit sed defendit.

*Allusion to the preceding speech, otherwise traduce.
[Text content in Latin, translated as necessary]
INVOLVED ÖRATIO OBLĪQUA. ATTRACTION OF MOOD.

665. Öratio Obliqua proper depends on some verb of Thinking or Saying, expressed or understood. In a more general sense, the term Ö Obliqua is used of all complementary clauses, that belong to ideal relations. The principle is the same in both sets of sentences, for in the one as in the other, the Infinitive takes its dependencies in the Subjunctive, on account of the close relation between the Ideal mood and the Substantive Idea of the verb. Hence the favorite combination of the Infinitive and the Ideal second person:

Proprium hümānt ingenii est ödisse quem laeseris. Tac. It is peculiar to human nature to hate whom you have injured. (But Ödist quem laesist.)

The so-called attraction of mood by which clauses originally Indicative become Subjunctive in dependence on Subjunctives, is another phase of the same general principle.

666. All clauses which depend on Infinitives and Subjunctives, and form an integral part of the thought, are put in the Subjunctive:
Recordātione nōstrae amicitiae sīc fruor ut beātē víxisse vídear quīa cum Scipióne víxeram. Cic. I enjoy the remembrance of our friendship so much that I seem to have lived happily because I lived with Scipio.

Vereor nē dum minuere velim labōrem augeam. Cic. I fear lest while I am wishing to lessen the toil I may increase it (dum minuere volo, augeo).

Corporis viribus ûtāre dum adsint, cum absint nē requirās. Cic. (264.)

Quārē frēbat ut omnium oculōs quotiēscumque in públicum prōdisset ad sē convertēret. Nep. Whereby it happened that he attracted the eyes of all, every time he went out in public (quotiēscumque prōdierat convertēbat).

Nēscive quid antequam nātus sīs acciderit, id est semper esse puerum. Cic. Not to know what happened before you were born, (that) is to be always a boy.

Franx fidem in parvis sībi praeshrēruit ut cum opera pretium sit, cum magnā merceōde fallat. Cic. Fraud lays itself a foundation of credit in small things in order that when it is worth while it may make a great profit by cheating.


Abestī sī quid poposcerit concēdere moris. Tac. To the departing (guest) it is customary to grant anything that he asks (sī quid poposcit concēdunt).

REMARKS.—1. From this it is easy to see how the Subjunctive came to be used in a Generic or Iterative sense after Tenses of Continuance. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative may all involve the Notion of Habit, Will, Inclination, Endeavor, and the complementary clauses would follow the sense rather than the form (Partial Obligunity). Examples, see 565, R.

2. Dum not unfrequently restricts the Attractive both in prose and poetry:

Tantum nē noceans dum vis prōdesse vidētēs. Ov. (548.)

 Participial Sentences.

667. Participles are used in Latin even more extensively than in English, to express a great variety of subordinate relations, such as Time and Circumstance, Cause and Occasion, Condition and Concession. The classification cannot always be exact, as one kind blends with another.

REMARKS.—1. It is sometimes convenient to translate a Participial Sentence by a coordinate clause, but the Participle itself is never coordinate, and such clauses are never equivalents. (409, R. 2.):

Manlius Gallum caesium torque spillavit. Liv. Manlius slew the Gaul and stripped him of his neckchain (after slaying the Gaul stripped him of his neckchain, having slain, etc.).
**PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.**

Miltiadès capitis absolutus, pecúnīā multātus est. **Nep.** Miltiades (though) acquitted of a capital charge, was mulcted in (a sum of) money (was acquitted, but mulcted).

2. A common translation of the Participle is an Abstract Noun: See 324, R 3:

Terra mūtātā non mūtāt mōrēs. **Liv.** The change of land changed not the character.

Tenceur Ulixēn reum facit Ājācis occisī. **Quint.** Tenceur indicts Ulysses for the murder of Ajax.

On the Participle after Verbs of Perception and Representation, see 534, R. 1 and 536.

668. Participles may represent Time when:

**Alexander moriens ānulum suum dederat Perdiccae. Nep.** Alexander (when he was) dying, had given his ring to Perdiccas.

Dionysius tyrannus Syrācūsīs expulsus Corinthi puerōs docēbat. **Cic.** Dionysius the tyrant, (after he had been) exiled from Syracuse (after his exile from Syracuse), taught (a) boys’ (school) at Corinth.

Ablative Absolute:

Solōn et Pisistratus Serviō Tulliō regnante viquērunt. **Cic.** Solon and Pisistratus flourished when Servius Tullius was king (in the reign of Servius Tullius).

Sōle ortō Volsci sē circumvallātōs vidērunt. **Liv.** When the sun was risen (after sunrise), the Volscians saw that they were surrounded by lines of intrenchment.

**Remark.—** On the Ablative Absolute of the Simple Participle, see 438, R. 1.

669. Participles may represent Cause Why:

Arēopagitaē damnāvērunt puerum coturnicum oculōs ēruentem. **Quint.** The court of Mars Hill condemned a boy because he plucked out (for plucking out) the eyes of quails.

Athēniensēs Alcibiadem corruptum ā rēge Persārum capere nōluisse Cūmēn arguēbant. **Nep.** The Athenians charged Alcibiades with having been unwilling to take Cyme (because he had been) bribed by the King of Persia.

Ablative Absolute:

Rōmānī veterēs regnārī omnēs volēbant libertātīs dulcēdīne nōndum expertā. **Liv.** The old Romans all wished to have a king over them (because they had) not yet tried the sweetness of liberty.

**Remark.—** An apparent cause is given by ut as velut, as, for instance, tanquam (so) as, quasi, as if, see 604, R. 2.

670. Participles may represent Condition and Concession:

Si latet ars prōdest, afferē dēprensa pudōrem. **Ov.** (594, 2.)
PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES.

Risus interdum ita repente ērumpit ut eum cupiēntēs tenēre nequēmus. Cic. (611.)
Militiāōs capitās absolutūs pecūniā multātus est. Nep. (667, R.)

Ablative Absolute:

Maximās virtūtes jacēre omnēs necesse est voluptāte dominante. Cic. (594, 2.)

Remark.—Later writers combine with the Participle etsi, quamquam, quamvis, see 611, R.

671. Participles may represent Relative Clauses (640):

Omnēs aliud agentēs, aliud simulantēs, perfidī sunt. Cic.
Pisistratus Homēri librōs confusōs anteā sic disposuisse dicitur ut nunc habēmus. Cic.

Remark.—So called, qui dicitur, vocātur, quem vocant; above-mentioned, quem anteā. supra diximus.

672. Future Participle (Active).—The Future Participle is a verbal adjective, denoting capability and tendency, chiefly employed in the older language with sum, I am, as a periphrastic tense. In later Latin, it is used freely, just as the Present and Perfect Participles, to express subordinate relations.

Peculiar is the free use of it in Sentences of Design, and especially noticeable the compactness gained by the employment of it in Conditional Relations.

673. In later Latin, the Future Participle (Active) is used to represent subordinate relations:

1. Time When:

Tiberius trājectūrus (cum trājectūrus esset) Rhēnum commēätum nōn transmisit. Suet. When Tiberius was about to cross the Rhine, he did not send over the provisions.

2. Cause Why:

Dōrīdiculō fuit senex foedissimae adūlātiōnis tantum infāmiā ēsūrus. Tac. A butt of ridicule was the old man, as infamy was the only gain he would make by his foul fawning.
Antiochus sēcūrus erat dē bellō Rōmānō tanquam nōn transitūris in Asiam Rōmānīs. (604, R. 2.)

3. Purpose:

Maroboduus misit lēgātōs ad Tiberium ōrātūros auxilia. Tac. (549, R. 2.)
ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

Remark.—The Present Participle is sometimes used in a similar sense, but the Purpose is only an inference:
Lēgātā vēnērunt nāntiantēs Asiae quoque cīvitātēs sollicitārī. Liv. Envoys came with the announcement that the states of Asia (Minor) also were tampered with.

4. Condition and Concession:

1.) Protasis.
Dōditūris sē Hannibāli fuisset accersendum Rōmānōrum præsidium? Liv. If they had been ready to surrender to Hannibal, would they have had to send for a Roman garrison? (= Si dōditūris fuissent, Ķ. R. si dōditūris fuērunt.)

2.) Apodosis.
Quatunt arma, ruptūrī imperium nī dūcantur. Tac. They clash their arms, ready to break orders, if they be not led forward.

Librum misi exigentī tibi, missūrus etā nōn exīgissēs. Plin. Ep. I have sent you the book, as you exacted it, although I should have sent it even if you had not exacted it.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

674. The Latin language allows greater freedom in the arrangement of words than the English. This freedom is, of course, due to its greater wealth of inflections.

675. Grammatical arrangement has for its object clearness. Rhetorical arrangement has for its objects Emphasis and Rhythm.

1. Emphasis is produced 1. By reversing the ordinary position.
   2. By approximation of similars or opposites.
   3. By separation.

In all sentences beginning and end are emphatic points. In long sentences the means as well as the extremes are the points of emphasis.

2. Rhythm.—Much depends on the rhythmical order of words, for which the treatises of the ancients are to be consulted. Especially avoided are poetic rhythms. So, for example, the dactyl and spondee, or close of an hexameter at the end of a period.

676. Rule I.—The most simple arrangement of a sentence is as follows:
1. The Subject and its Modifiers.
2. The Modifiers of the Predicate.
3. The Predicate Proper or Verb.
1. Dēmocritus tyrannus, 2. Syrācūsīs expulsus Corinthī puerōs,
3. docēbat. Cīc. (663.)
Rhetorical positions :
Potentès sequitur invidia. QUINT. (479.)
Nōbis nōn satisfacit ipse Dēmosthenēs. Cīc. (556. R. 1.)
Dēscriptus erat populus Romanus censū, ordinibus, actūtibus. Cīc.
Intrā moenia suēt hostēs. SALL.

Remark.—The modifiers of the predicate stand in the order of their importance. The
following arrangement is common :
1. Place, Time, Cause, or Means.
2. Indirect Object.
3. Direct Object.
4. Adverb.
5. Verb.

677. Rule II.—Interrogative Sentences begin with the interro-
gative, subordinate clauses with the leading particle or
relative :
Quis eum diligat quem metuat? Cīc. (637.)
Postquam Caesar pervēnit obsidēs poposcit. CAES. (563.)
Si spiritum dūcit vivit. Cīc. (597.)
Quō timēre désierint ódisse incipient. TAC. (569.)
Rhetorical position :
Nātūram si sequēmur ducem, nunquam aberrābimus. Cīc. (597.)
Dē futūris rēbus etiam sempēr difficile est dioere, tamen interdum con-
jectūra possess accēdere. Cīc. (606.)
Cato mīrāri sē ajēbat quod nōn rīdēret haruspex, haruspicem cum
vidissent. Cīc. (569.)

678. Rule III.—An Adjective or dependent Genitive follows
the word to which it belongs :
Torquātus filium suum necārī jussit. SALL. (540.)
Sensum oculōrum praecipit animus. QUINT. (540.)
Rhetorical positions :
Hannibalem sui civēs ē civitāte ējōcērunt. Cīc. (295, R. 1.)
Isocratēs queritur plūs honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus
dari. QUINT.
Ager, cum multōs annōs requīsvit, überiōrēs esserre frūgēs solet. Cīc.
(567.)
Vereor nō parum hīc liber mellis et absinthii multum habēre videā-
tur. QUINT. (552.)

Remarks.—1. Many expressions have become fixed formulae: So titles, proper
names, and the like : see 284 :
Facinus est vincīrī cīvem Rōmānum. Cīc. (585.)
2. The demonstrative pr. nouns regularly precede:
Vereor nē hic liber absinthii multum habère videātur. Quint. (561.)

Rhetorical position:
Recordāre tempus illud, cum pater Cārio maerens jacēbat in lectō. Cic. (582.)
3. New modifiers of either element may be inserted, prefixed, or added:
Cātōnem vidē in bibliothēcā sedentem multōs circumfūsūm Stōicōrum libris.
Cic. (586.)
Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reipūblicaes prōdesse potnisset extincta fuit. Cic. (579.)
At vidēte hominis intolerābilem audāciam. Cic. (490.)
Aristidēs interfuit pugnae nāvālē apud Salaminem. Nep. (343.)

679. Rule IV.—Adverbs are commonly put next to their verb, and before it when it ends a sentence, and immediately before their adjective or adverb:
Zēnōnem cum Athēnīs esset audīābam frequenter... Cic. (586.)
Nēmo orātōrem admirātus est quod Latinē loquērētur. Cic. (542.)
Vīx cuīquam persuādēbatur Graecīa omni cessūrōs Rōmānōs. Liv. (548, R. 2.)
Rīsus interdum ita repente ērumpit ut cum cupiēntēs tenēre nequeāmus. Cic. (611.)

Rhetorical positions:
Īram bene Ennius initium dixit insānīae. Cic. (441.)
Saepe magna indolēs virtūtis priusquam reipūblicaes prōdesse potnisset extincta fuit. Cic. (579.)

Remarks.—1. Ferē, paene, prope, usually follow:
Nēmo ferē saltat sobrius nisi forte insānīt. Cic. (591, R. 4.)
2. Negatives always precede, see 447.

680. Rule V.—Prepositions regularly precede their case. (414.)

Ā rectā conscientiā transversum unguem nōn oportet discēdere. Cic. (582.)

Remarks.—1. On versus, tenus and the regular postposition of cum in combination with the Personal Pronoun and the Relative, see 414, R. 1.
2. Monosyllabic prepositions are not unfrequently put between the Adjective and Substantive:
Magna cum cūrā (401).
Less frequently between the Genitive and Substantive; except when the relative is employed.
3. Dissyllabic prepositions are sometimes put after their case (Anastrophē), especially after a relative or demonstrative: most frequently contrā, inter, propter. So also adverbs.
4. The preposition may be separated from its case by a Genitive or an Adverb.
Ad Attīf Claudīf senectūtem accēdēbat etiam ut caecus esset. Cic. (588.)
5. Monosyllabic prepositions such as cum, ex, dē, post, sometimes append the en-
clitics -que, -ve, -ne, as ex que ifs, and from them. Usually, however, the clitics join
the dependent substantive: in patriamque rediit, and returned to his country.
On the position of per, see 415, R.

681. Rule VI.—Particles vary:

*Enim* commonly takes the second, seldom the third place; *nam* and
*namque* are regularly prepositive.

*Ergō* in the syllogism precedes, elsewhere follows; *igitur* is commonly
second or third; *itaque* regularly first.

*Tamen* is first, but may follow an emphatic word.

*Etiam* usually precedes, *quoque* always follows.

*Quidem* and *dēmum* (*at length*) follow the word to which they belong.

682. Rule VII.—A word that belongs to more than one
word regularly stands before them all, or after them all, sometimes after the first (287):

*Arlovistus* responēvit multis sēsē nōbillibus principibusque populi
Rōmānil grātum factūrōm. CAES. (670, R. 9.)

*Esocratēs* queritur plās honōris corporum quam animōrum virtūtibus
darī. QUINT. (542, R.)

*Longum* est mūlōrum persequi utilitātēs et asinōrum. CIC. (246, R.)

683. Rule VIII.—Words of kindred or opposite meaning
are often put side by side for the sake of complement or con-
trast:

*Manus manum lavat, One hand washes the other.*
*Cato mirāt sē ājēbat quod nōn ridēret haruspex, haruspicem cum
vidisset.* CIC. (569.)

*Émit morte immortalitātem.* QUINT. (404.)

684. Rule IX.—Contrasted Pairs.—When pairs are con-
trasted, the second is put in the same order as the first, but
often in inverse order. This inverse order is called Chiasmus,*
or crosswise position, and gives alternate stress. The principle
is of wide application.

Same order:

*Fortūna vestra facit ut Irae meae temperem. LIV. (557.)*
*Mālo tē sapiens hostis metuat quam stulti cīvēs laudent. LIV. (546,
R. 2.)*

* From the Greek letter Χ.

1. *Foris*  X  2. *arma.*
Inverse order (Chiasmus):

Ante vidēmus (1) fulgurātiōnem (2) quam sonum (2) audiēmus (1).
Sen. (579.)
Parvi sunt foris (1) arma (2) nisi est consilium (3) domī (1). Cic. (412, R. 1.)

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

685. A period is a compound sentence with one or more subordinate clauses, in which sentence the meaning is kept suspended to the close.

686. Latin periods may be divided into two classes:
1. Responsive or Apodotic, in which a Protasis has an Apodosis.
2. Intercalary or Enthletic, in which the various items are inserted in their proper place between Subject and Predicate.

687. Care must be taken—
1. To vary the clauses, so as to prevent too great uniformity of rhythm.
2. To observe a certain proportion in the length of the clauses.

The following passages may be cited as specimens of long periods:

Ut saepe homines aegri morbō gravi, cum aestū febrīque jactantur, si aquam gelidam biberunt, primumque relevāt videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque afflantur: sic hic morbus, qui est in républicā, relevātus istius paenā, vehementius, vivīs reliquis, ingravescent. Cic. (Apodotic.)

Catuvolcus, rēx dimidiae partis Eburōnum, qui ūna cum Ambiorīgē consilium inierat, aetāte jam confectus, cum labōre aut bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgēm, qui sījus consilīt auctor fuisset, taxō, cūjus magna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē examināvit. Caes. (Enthetic.)

FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

688. Ellipsis is the omission of some integral part of the thought, such as the substantive of the adjective (195, R. 1), the copula of the predicate (200), the verb of the adverb.

Unde domī? 411, R. 2.
Remark.—When the ellipsis is indefinite, do not attempt to supply it. The figure is much abused by commentators in the explanation of grammatical phenomena.

689. Brachylogy (breviloquentia) is a failure to repeat an element which is often to be supplied in a more or less modified form.

Tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima (= es) vellem. Ov. (316.)

690. Zeugma (yoking) is a junction of two governing words under the same regimen, or with the same modifier, although the common factor strictly applies but to one.

Manūs ac supplicās vōcēs ad Tiberium tendens. Tac. Stretching out hands and (uttering) supplicant cries to Tiberius.

691. Aposiopēsis is a rhetorical breaking off before the close of the sentence, as in the famous Vergilian Quōs ego.

692. Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words.

693. Hyperbaton, or Trajection, is a violent displacement of words.

Līdīa dīc per omnēs tē deōs òrō. Hor. (415, R.)

694. Anacolūthon, or want of sequence, occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

695. Hendiadys (ἐν δίδα δούλον) consists in giving an analysis instead of a complex, in putting two substantives connected by a copulative conjunction, instead of one substantive and an adjective or attributive genitive:

Vulgus et multitudō, the common herd.
Via et ratio, scientific method.
Vī et armīs, by force of arms.

Remark.—This figure is much abused by commentators.

696. Constructio Praegnans. So-called constructio praegnans is nothing but an extended application of the accusative of the Inner Object (Object Effected). The result is involved, not distinctly stated.

Exitium irritat. Tac. He provokes destruction. (Ad exitium irritat.)

697. On Lītotēs, see 448, R. 2.
PROSODY.

698. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

Remark.—Prosody originally meant Accent. Latin Accent is regulated by Quantity, and as classic Latin versification is also quantitative, Prosody is loosely used of both quantity and versification.

Quantity.

699. Rule I.—A syllable is said to be long by nature when it contains a long vowel or dipthong: ọ, vae, légés, sævæ.

Remark.—Every vowel sound followed by j is long. This is due sometimes to the broad sound of the j itself, sometimes to natural length of the vowel, sometimes to compensation (Gājus for Gāius, pējero for perjero). J does not make position in the compounds of jugum, yoke; bījugas, two-horse.

700. Rule II.—A syllable is said to be long by position when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants, or a double consonant: ars, col lum, dis co, castra.

Remarks.—1. The consonants may be divided between two words: per mare, in terris; but when all the consonants are in the second word, the preceding short syllable commonly remains short: præmiā scribae.

2. The natural length of a vowel before two consonants is often hard, often impossible, to determine. Every vowel before nf and ns seems to have had a long sound. Other points are too much disputed to be introduced into an elementary treatise. With the clear and full pronunciation of the vowels, the difference between length by nature and length by position was probably not so great as might be supposed.

701. Rule III.—A syllable ending in a short vowel before a mute, followed by l or r, is common: tenē-brae.
QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

REMARKS.—1. The syllable must end in a short vowel: nāvī-fragus, mellī-flōus; but ā brūmpo, ò brīviscor.

2. In Greek words, ι and ω are included under this rule: Tē-cmēssa, Oy-cnus.

702. RULE IV.—Every diphthong, and every vowel derived from a diphthong, or contracted from other vowels, is long: sāevus, conclūdo (from clando), inquīs (from aequus), cōgo (from coigo = con + ago).

EXCEPTION.—Prae in composition is shortened before a vowel; prae-ustus.

703. RULE V.—One simple vowel before another vowel-sound, or h, makes a short syllable: dēus, God; pūer, boy; nīhil, nothing.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. a in the old Genitive of the First Declension: aurāl.

2. e in -ēf of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: diēl, but fīdēl.

3. a and e before i in proper names in -ius: Gāl, Pompēi.

4. i in the Genitive form -ius. Alterius is often shortened, perhaps even in prose: ūnius, ullius, nullius, tōtius, are found in poetry. In allius the i is never shortened (allius for aliuss).

5. i in fio (for fuio) is long, except before r: fīo, but fīeret.

6. ōheu, Dīsā, ōhē, dius (= divus).

7. Many Greek words: ā ēr, Menelāus, μūs ē um, Mēdēa.

QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

A. POLYSYLLABLES.

704. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable, final a, e, and y are short; i, o, and u are long.

1. a is short: terrā, earth; dōnā, gifts; capitā, heads.


2. Vocative of words in ās (Aemā), and Greek Nominative in α long (Electrā).

3. Imperative of First Conjugation: amā.

4. Most uninflected words: trigintā, juxtā, but itā, quiā, ājā, putā (for instance).
2. e is short.

Exceptions.—1. Ablative of the Fifth Declension: diē.
2. Imperative of Second Conjugation: monē (but cavē and occasionally other Iambic Imperatives).
4. Greek words in e long (η): Tempē, melē.

3. y is always short, except in contracted forms: misy (Dative misy = misyī).

4. i is long: domini, vigintī, audī.

Exceptions.—1. Greek Dative ai: Trōasī.
2. Greek Nominatives, sīnāpī Vocatives, Parī; Dative Sing. (rarely) Minōidī.
3. quasi, nisi, cūi (when a dissyllable).
4. i is common in mīhi, tībi, sībi, ibī, ubī.

Observe the compounds: ibidem, ibīque, ubīque, ubīnam, ubīvis, ubī-
conque, nēcubī; (utī, but) utīnam, utīque, sclutī.

5. o is long: bonō, tōtō.

Exceptions.—1. Common in Nominatives of proper names, and occasion-
ally in common nouns: Scipīs, virgō.
2. Common in verbal forms, but more rarely outside of the Present Tense or in verbs with long penults: scīō, putō, volō; estō, crūdēs. The short pronunciation extended sometimes even to the Gerund: amandō.
3. o is short in modō, citō, duō, octō, ego, illīcō, immō, and in many other words (in later poetry).

6. u is always long: cornū, fructū, auditū.

705. Rule VII.—All final syllables that end in a simple consonant other than s are short.

Exceptions.—1. ālēc, liōn, and many Greek nouns.
2. The adverbs and oblique cases of illīc, illūc, istic, istūc, can hardly be considered exceptions, as -o is for -ce, and is merely enclitic.
4. itī, petitī, and their compounds.

706. Rule VIII.—Of final syllables in s: as, es, os, are long; is, us, ys, short.
QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. as is long: Aenēs, servās, amās.

**Exceptions.**—1. Greek nouns in ās, ādis: Arcās, Arcādis.
2. Greek Accusative Plural, Third Declension: hērōs, Arcadās.
3. anās, anētis.

2. es is long: rēgēs, diēs, monēs.

**Exceptions.**—1. Nominative Singular Third Declension, when the Genitive has ētis, ētis, idēs: segēs, milēs, obsēs; but abiēs, ariēs, pariēs.
2. Compounds of ēs, ē: adēs, potēs.
3. penēs (Preposition).
4. Greek words in ēs (ēς): Nominative Plural, Arcadēs; Vocative, Dēmosthenēs; Neuter, cacoēthēs.

3. os is long: deōs, nepōs.

**Exceptions.**—1. Compōs, impōs, exōs.
2. Greek words in ēs (ēς): melōs.

4. is is short: canīs, legīs.

**Exceptions.**—1. Dative and Ablative Plural: terrīs, bonīs.
3. In the Nominative of sundry words, increasing long in the Genitive: Quīrīs, Quīritis.
5. In the verbal forms from vis, sis, fis, and velīs: nō-līa, mā-līa, ad-sīa, cale-fīa.
6. In the Second Person Singular Future Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive, is is common; viderīs.

5. us is short: servūs, currūs.

2. Nominative Third Declension, when the Genitive has a long u: virtūs, virtūtis; incūs, incūdis: tellūs, tellūris.
3. In Greek words with u long (ους): tripūs, Sapphūs; but Oedipūs and polypūs.

6. ys is short: ohlamūs.
B. Monosyllables.

707. Rule IX.—All monosyllables that end in a vowel are long: ä, dä, me, de, hi, si, ò, dò, tu.

Except the enclitics: -quō, -vē, -nē, -cē, -tē, -psē, -ptē.

708. Rule X.—Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a consonant follow the rules given: dās, fēs, sēs, dāt, flēt, is, Id, quīs, hīs, quīs, quōs.

hic and hoc (Nominative and Accusative) are sometimes short; dico and dūc have the quantity of their verbs; es, be, is short.

709. Rule XI.—Monosyllabic Nominatives of Substantives and Adjectives are long when they end in a consonant, even if the stem-syllable be short: òs, mōs, vēr, sōl, fūr, plūs; lār (lāris), pēs (pēdis), bōs (bōvis), pār (pāris).

Exceptions.—vīr and lāc, os (ossis), mel;
Also cor, vas (vadis), fel.

710. Rule XII.—Monosyllabic particles that end in a consonant are short: ān, cīs, īn, nēc, pēr, tēr.

Excepting ēn and nōn and quīn;
And also crās and cūr and sūn;
Also the Adverbs in c: hīc, hūc, hāc, sic.

Quantity of Stem-Syllables.

711. Rule XIII.—The quantity of stem-syllables, when not determined by the general rules, is fixed by the usage of the poets (long or short by authority).

Remarks.—1. The changes of quantity in the formation of tense-stems have been set forth in the conjugation of the verb, (153, 2.)

2. The occasional differences in the quantity of the stem-syllables, which spring from the same radical, can only be explained by reference to the history of each word, and cannot be given here.
QUANTITY IN COMPOUNDS.

712. Rule XIV.—Compounds generally keep the quantity of their constituent parts: (cēdo), ante-cēdo, dē-cēdo, prō-cēdo, (caedo), occīdo (cādo), occīdo.

Remarks.—1. Of the inseparable prefixes, di, sē, and vē, are long, rē, short: didūco, sēdūco, vēcōrs, rēdūco. Exceptions: di in disertus is short; in dirimo dir stands for dis.

2. Nē is short, except in nēsum, nēmo (ne-hemo), nēquam, nēquidquam, nēquāquam, nēquītia, nēve, nēcubi, nēcunde.

3. Rē is sometimes lengthened; the following letter is then doubled in many texts: rel(l)igio, rel(l)iquiae, rep(6)erit, re(t)ulit; compare reddo. Re is for red, but, except in perfect stems and in dactylic poetry, there is no compensation.

4. Prō is shortened in many words, especially before f: prōfugio, prōfagus, prōfundus, prōfiteor, prōfāri, prōfānus, prōficiscor, prōcelia, prōcul, prōnepōs. The older language shortens less frequently than the later. In Greek words pro (πρό) is generally short: prōphēta.

5. The second part of the compound is sometimes shortened: dējēro, (from jūro), cognitus, agnitus (from nōtus). Notice the quantity in the compounds of -dicus: fātīdicus, vārīdicus (dico), and inūba, prīnūba (nūbo).

6. Mechanical rules, more minute than those given above, might be multiplied indefinitely, but they are all open to so many exceptions as to be of little practical value. A correct pronunciation of Latin cannot be acquired except by constant practice, under the direction of a competent teacher, or by a diligent study of the Latin poets, and consequently of Latin versification.

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

713. Poetry often preserves the older forms of language, and perpetuates peculiarities of pronunciation, both of which are too frequently set down to poetic licence.
714. **Hiatus and Elision.**—Hiatus is the meeting of two vowels in separate syllables, which meeting produces an almost continuous opening (yawning) of the vocal tube. In the body of a word this hiatus, or yawning, is avoided sometimes by contraction, often by shortening the first vowel (13).

In poetry, when one word ends with a vowel and another begins with a vowel, or $h$, the first vowel is *elided*. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a hurried half-pronunciation.

> O *felix un(a) ant(e) alias Priamea virgo.*—**Verg.**

In like manner $m$ final (a faint nasal sound) is elided with its short vowel before a vowel or $h$ (*Echthipsei*).

> Monstr(um), horrend(um), inform(e) ingens cui lumen ademptum.—**Verg.**

**Exceptions.**—After a vowel or $m$ final, the word est, is, drops its $e$ and joins its preceding syllable.

> Si *rixas t ubi tu pulsa ego vapulo tantum.*—**Juv.**

> Asternas quoniam paenas in morte timendum s t.—**Lucr.**

**Remarks.**—1. The Hiatus is sometimes allowed: $a$, in the Arsis, chiefly when the first vowel is long; $b$, in the Thesis, when a long vowel is shortened; $c$, before a period.

   1. *Stant et juniperi ($h$) et castanæae ($h$) hirsutæ.* **Verg.**
   2. *Credimus $t$ an qui ($h$) amant ipsi sibi somnia fingunt $t$ **Verg.**
   3. *Promissam eripui genero. ($h$) Arma impia sumpsi. **Verg.**

2. Mono-syllabic interjections are not elided.
3. On the elision of $e$ in -$ne$ $t$ see 456, R. 2.

715. **Diastolæ.**—Many final syllables, which were originally long, are restored to their rights by the weight of the Arsis. This is called Diastolæ.

> Hostis est $ux$or invita quae ad virum nuptum datur.—**Plaut.**

> Dummodo morata recte veniat dotatast satis.—**Plaut.**

> Pectoribüs inhians spirantia consultit exta.—**Verg.**

> Perruptit Acheronta Herculeus labor.—**HOR.**

Sometimes, however, Diastolæ arises from the necessities of the verse (as in proper names), or is owing to a pause (Punctuation).

> Nec quas *Priamides in aquosis vallibus Idae.*—**Ov.**

> Desine plura puér—et quod nunc instat agamus.—**Verg.**

**Remarks.**—1. Scholars are not agreed on all these points.

2. Notice especially -$quæ$:

> Sideraquæ ventique nocent avidæque volucres. **Ov.**
716. Systolé.—Long syllables which had begun to shorten in prose, are shortened (Systolé).

Obstupui stetéruntque comae vox faucibus haesit.—VERG.
El terra magnum alterius spectare laborem.—LUCR.
Unius ad certam formam primordia rerum.—LUCR.
Nullius addictus jure in verba magistri.—HOR.

Remarks.—1. Many regard the short penult of the Perf. in stetérunt, dedérunt, as original (dedro in inscriptions).
2. In earlier poetry (e.g. Plautus), many syllables otherwise long by position are shortened: So ³l³, and its forms ³ste, more rarely ³ps³. Also ³nde, ³ünde, and others.

717. Hardening.—The vowels i and u assert their half-consonant nature (Hardening): ábjéta, (ábijtéta), gënvē (gënúá), tënvía (tënúía).

Fláviorum rex Eridanus camposque per omnes.—VERG.
Nam quae tënvía sunt hiscendist nulla potestas.—LUCR.

718. Dialysis.—The consonants j and v assert their half-vowel nature (Diálisis): dissólúo (dissolve), Gávus (Gájus, from Gávius).

Adulteretur et columba miluo.—HOR.

719. Syncopé.—Short vowels are dropped between consonants, as often in prose (Syncopé): calfacio for calesfacio.

Templorum postor templorum sancte reþostor.—Ov.
Quiddam magnum addens unum me surpitë (= surripite) morti.—HOR.

720. Tmësis.—Compound words are separated into their parts (Tmësis).

Quo me cunque rapit tempestas deferor hospes.—HOR.

Remark.—The earlier poets carry Tmësis much further in unwise emulation of the Greek. Celebrated is:

Saxo cære comminuit brum. ENNIUS.

721. Synizësis.—Vowels are connected by a slur (Synizësis), as often in the living language: dëinde, dëinosps.

Quid faciam roger anne rogem? quid dëinde rogabo?—Ov
So even when h intervenes, as dehino:
Eurum ad sê Zephyrumque vocat, dehino talia fatur. VERG.
VERSIFICATION.

722. Peculiarities of S.—In the older poetry, final s, preceded by a short vowel, is dropped before a consonant.

In somnis vidit prius quam sam (= eam) discere c6epit.—Ennius.
Often in Lucretius.

Remark.—In comic poetry, a short final syllable in S blends with est, and sometimes with es: opust (= opus est); similis (= similis es).

VERSIFICATION.

723. Rhythm.—Rhythm means harmonious movement. In language, Rhythm is marked by the stress of voice (Accent). The accented part is called the Arsis; the unaccented, the Thesis. The Rhythmical Accent is called the Ictus (blow, beat).

Remark.—Besides the dominant Ictus, there is a subordinate or secondary Ictus, just as there is a dominant and a secondary Accent in words.

724. Metre.—Rhythm, when represented in language, is embodied in Metre (Measure). A Metre is a system of syllables standing in a determined order.

725. Unit of Measure.—The Unit of Measure is the short syllable: Mora, Tempus (Time), 0.

The value in music is ♩ = ¼.

The long 0 is the double of the short.

The value in music is ♩ = ½.

Remark.—Any quantity that cannot be measured by the standard unit is called irrational.

726. Resolution and Contraction.—In some verses, two short syllables may be used instead of a long (Resolution), or a long instead of two short (Contraction).

Resolution, 00 ♩ ♩. Contraction, 00 ♩ ♩ ♩.

727. Feet.—As elements of musical strains, Metres are called Bars.
As elements of verses, Metres are called Feet.
As musical strains are composed of equal bars, so verses are composed of equal feet, marked as in music, thus |.

REMARK.—Theoretically, the number of metres is unrestricted; practically, only those metres are important that serve to embody the principal rhythms.

728. Names of the Feet.—The feet in use are the following:

### Feet of Three Times

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trochee,</th>
<th>— — —</th>
<th>lēgit.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iambus,</td>
<td>— — —</td>
<td>lēgūnt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribrach,</td>
<td>— — — —</td>
<td>lēgūtē.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feet of Four Times

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dactyl,</th>
<th>— — — —</th>
<th>lēgimūs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anapaest,</td>
<td>— — —</td>
<td>lēgerēnt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spondee,</td>
<td>— — —</td>
<td>lēgl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feet of Five Times

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cretic,</th>
<th>— — — —</th>
<th>lēgerēnt.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Paeon,</td>
<td>— — — —</td>
<td>lēgerētēs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth Paeon,</td>
<td>— — — —</td>
<td>lēgimūnts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacchius,</td>
<td>— — —</td>
<td>lēgebānt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibacchius,</td>
<td>— — —</td>
<td>lēgīstēs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Feet of Six Times

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Iōnicus ā mājōrī,</th>
<th>— — — — — —</th>
<th>collēgimūs.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iōnicus ā minōrī,</td>
<td>— — — — — —</td>
<td>relēgebānt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choriambus,</td>
<td>— — — — — —</td>
<td>collēgerēnt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ditrochee,</td>
<td>— — — — — —</td>
<td>collēgūntūr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ditiambus,</td>
<td>— — — — — —</td>
<td>lēgūmintūr.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Digitized by Google
VERSIFICATION.

Rem. — Other feet are put down in Latin Grammars, but they do not occur in Latin verse, if in any, such as:

Pyrhonic, ℗ ℗ légit. | Antispast, ℗ ℗ ℗ légēbāris.
First Epitrite, ℗ ℗ ℗ rēlēgōrūnt. | Dispondee, ℗ ℗ ℗ sēlēgōrūnt.
Second Epitrite, ℗ ℗ ℗ sēlēgōrūnt. | Second Pasōn, ℗ ℗ ℗ lēgēnτībūs.
Third Epitrite, ℗ ℗ ℗ sēlēgōrīnt. | Third Pasōn, ℗ ℗ ℗ lēgītōtē.
Fourth Epitrite, ℗ ℗ ℗ cōllēgīstīs. | Molossus, ℗ ℗ ℗ lēgōrūnt.

729. Ascending and Descending Rhythms.—Rhythms are divided into ascending and descending. If the Arsis follows, the Rhythm is called ascending; if it precedes, descending. So the Trochee has a descending, the Iambus an ascending, rhythm.

Ascending rhythms may become descending by Anacrusis.

When the Thesis precedes the Arsis, it is cut off and called an Anacrusis (upward stroke, signal-beat). So the Iambus is regarded as an Anacrustic Trochee, the Anapaest as an Anacrustic Dactyl, the Ionicus a minōri as an Anacrustic Ionicus a mājōri. The sign of the Anacrusis is::

730. Names of Rhythms.—Rhythms are commonly called after their principal metrical representative. So the Trochaic Rhythm, the Anapaestic Rhythm, the Iambic Rhythm, the Dactylic Rhythm, the Ionic Rhythm.

731. Classes of Rhythms.—In Latin, the musical element of versification is subordinate, and the principles of Greek rhythm have but a limited application.

The Greek classes are based on the relation of Arsis to Thesis.
I. Equal Class, in which the Arsis is equal to the Thesis (γένος ἱκον).
   This may be called the Dactylico-Anapaestic class.
II. Unequal Class, in which the Arsis is double of the Thesis (γένος διπλάσιον).
   This may be called the Trochaico-Iambic class.
III. Quinquepartite or Paemian Class (Five-eighths class), of which the Cretic and Bacchius are the chief representatives (γένος ἡμιόλιον).

732. Rhythmical Series.—A Rhythmical Series is an uninterrupted succession of rhythmical feet, and takes its name from the number of feet that compose it.

Monopody = one foot. Tetrapody = four feet.
Dipody = two feet. Pentapody = five feet.
Tripody = three feet. Hexapody = six feet.
REMARKS.—1. The Dipody is the ordinary unit of measure (meter) in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse. In these rhythms a monometer contains two feet, a dimeter four, a trimeter six, a tetrameter eight.
2. There are limits to the extension of series.
   In Latin, four feet is the limit of the Dactylic, six of the Trochaic and Iambic series. All beyond these are compounds.

733. Equality of the Feet.—Every rhythmical series is composed of equal parts. To restore this equality, when it is violated by language, there are four methods:

1. Syllaba Anceps.
2. Catalēxis.
3. Protraction.
4. Correption.

734. Syllaba Anceps.—The final syllable of a series or verse may be short or long indifferently. It may be short when the metre demands a long; long when the metre demands a short. Such a syllable is called a Syllaba Anceps.

735. Catalēxis and Pause.—A complete series is called Catalectic; an incomplete series is called Catalectic. A series or verse is said to be Catalectic in syllabam, in dissyllabum, in trisyllabum, according to the number of syllables in the catalectic foot.

\[ \underline{\text{\text{-}}} \underline{\text{\text{-}}} \underline{\text{\text{-}}} \text{ Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in syllabam.} \]
\[ \underline{\text{\text{-}}} \underline{\text{\text{-}}} \underline{\text{\text{-}}} \underline{\text{\text{-}}} \text{ Trimeter dactylicus catalēcticus in dissyllabum.} \]

The time is made up by Pause.

The omission of one mora is marked

\[ " \text{ two morae } \] ^{\wedge} \]

736. Protraction and Syncope.—Protraction (τονὴ) consists in drawing out a long syllable beyond its normal quantity. It occurs in the body of a verse, and serves to make up for the omission of one or more theses, which omission is called Syncope.

\[ \text{—} = 3 = \downarrow \quad \text{—} = 4 = \downarrow \]

737. Correption.—Correption is the shortening of a syllable to suit the measure.
So \( \omega \) = two short syllables with the value of one.
So the ordinary (heavy) dactyl is \(-\omega\omega = 4 \, \ddots\ddots\)
The light (irrational) dactyl is \(-\omega\omega = 3 (1\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} + 1) \, \ddots\ddots\)

**Remark.**—Under this head, notice the frequent use of the irrational long in Trochaic and Iambic verses, and in Anacrusis. The irrational long is marked >.

The following line illustrates all the points mentioned:

\[-\to a \quad -\omega b \quad \to c \quad -\omega b \quad \to c \quad -\omega \quad -\omega \quad \to d e\]

Nullam | Vare sa- | ora | vite pri- | us | severis | arbo | -rem. Hor.


738. **Verse.**—A Simple Rhythm is one that consists of a simple series.

A Compound Rhythm is one that consists of two or more series.

A Verse is a simple or compound rhythmical series, which forms a distinct and separate unit. The end of a verse is marked—

1. By closing with a full word. Two verses cannot divide a word between them.
2. By the Syllaba Anceps, which can stand unconditionally.
3. By the Hiatus, i. e., the verse may end with a vowel, though the next verse begin with one.

**Remark.**—Occasionally, one verse is run into another by Elision. This is called **Synaphès** (συναφής). It is a violation of the fundamental law, and is not to be imitated. Verse. Aen. i., 333–3, 448–9; ii., 745–6.

739. **Methods of Combining Verses.**—The same verse may be repeated throughout without recurring groups. So the Heroic Hexameter, the Iambic Trimeter (Linear Composition). Or the same verse or different verses may be grouped in pairs (distichs), triplets (tristichs), fours (tetrameters). Beyond these simple stanzas Latin versification seldom ventured.

Larger groups of series are called Systems.

Larger groups of verses are called Strophes, a name sometimes attached to the Horatian stanzas.

740. **Union of Language with Rhythm.**—When embodied in language, rhythm has to deal with rhythmical groups already
in existence. Every full word is a rhythmical group with its accent, is a metrical group with its long or short syllables, is a word-foot. Ictus sometimes conflicts with accent; the unity of the verse-foot breaks up the unity of the word-foot.

741. Conflict of Ictus and Accent.—In earlier Latin poetry, the coincidence and conflict of Ictus and Accent are regulated by subtle laws, the exposition of which would require too much space. In ordinary Latin verse, Ictus overrides Accent, at least according to modern pronunciation.

742. Conflict of Word-foot and Verse-foot.—The conflict of word-foot and verse-foot gives rise to Caesura. Caesura means an incision produced by the end of a word in the middle of a verse-foot, and is marked †.

This incision serves as a pause, partly to rest the voice for a more vigorous effort, partly to prevent monotony by distributing the masses of the verse.

Remarks.—1. So in the Heroic Hexameter the great caesura falls before the middle of the verse, to give the voice strength for the first arsis of the second half.

\[\text{Una salus victis} \uparrow \text{nulam sperare salutem. Verse.}\]

It does not occur at the middle, as in that case the verse would become monotonous.

2. In many treatises any incision in a verse is called a Caesura.

743. Masculine and Feminine Caesurae.—In trisyllabic metres, when the end of the word within the verse-foot falls on an arsis, it is called a Masculine Caesura; when on a thesis, a Feminine Caesura.

Una sa \[\uparrow\text{bus} + \text{vi} | \text{otis} + \text{nul} | \text{lam} + \text{spe} | \text{rare} + \text{sa} | \text{lutem.}\]

\[a, b, c,\] are Masculine Caesurae; \[d,\] a Feminine Caesura.

744. Diaeresis.—When verse-foot and word-foot coincide, Diaeresis arises, marked thus: ||.

Ite domum saturae \[+ \text{venit} | \text{Hesperus} | \text{ite capellae.}—\text{VERG.}\]

Remark.—Diaeresis, like Caesura, serves to distribute the masses of the verse and prevent monotony. What is Caesura in an ascending rhythm becomes Diaeresis as soon as the rhythm is treated anacrastically.

Suis \[+ \text{i} | \text{psa} + \text{Ro} | \text{ma vi} | \text{ribus} + \text{rulit.} \text{Iambic Trimeter.}\]

Suis \[+ \text{i} | \text{psa} | \text{Roma vi} | \text{bus} + \text{ru} | \text{it.} \text{Troch. Trimeter. Catal. with Anacrusis.}\]
745. Recitation.—When the word-foot runs over into the next verse-foot, a more energetic recitation is required, in order to preserve the sense, and hence the multiplication of Caesurae lends vigor to the verse.

Remark.—The ordinary mode of scanning, or singing out the elements of a verse, without reference to signification, cannot be too strongly condemned, as,

Unasa, lusvic, tisnul, lamspe, raresa, lutem!

• Trochaic Rhythms.

746. The Trochaic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which the arsis is double of the thesis. It is represented—

By the Trochee: \( \underline{X} \),
By the Tribrach: \( \underline{X} \underline{X} \), and, at the end of a series,
By the Spondeon: \( \underline{X} - \), or rather the irrational Trochee, \( - \).

Remarks.—1. Anapaests are rare. Dactyls are used only in proper names. Both are of course irrational. In the earlier poets, however, the treatment of the Trochaic verse is very free.
2. Trochaic-meters, being compounded of dipodies (ditrochaei), have \( \frac{3}{4} \) instead of \( \frac{3}{4} \) time (729). The second trochee of each dipody (-meter) may be irrational on the principle of syllaba aneps. Hence the rule:

747. Trochaic-meters admit the substitution of a long for the short of the even places.

1. Trochaic Tripody (Rhyphallic).
   Bassareu bicornis.—ATIL. FORT. \( \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \).
2. Trochaic Tetrapody (Catalectic).
   Aúla divitem manet.—HOR. \( \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \).
   a. Vivè lactus quisque vivis. \( \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \).
   b. Vita parvom minus est.—ANTHOL. LAT. \( \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \).
4. Trochaic Dimeter with Anacrusis (Alcaic).
   Si fráctus illabátur orbis.—HOR. \( \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \).

748. 5. Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic (Octónarius).

\( \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \underline{X} \).

Párce jam camónea vati párce jam sacré furori.—SERVIUS.

Remark.—This verse and the following are compounds. The Octónarius is compounded of two Dimeters acatalectic; hence regular Diaeresis after the Dimeter; freely handled in comedy; Hiatus in the Diaeresis; Monotonous, on account of the division into two equal parts. It occurs occasionally in Plautus and Terence.
VERSIFICATION.

Verba dum sint, verum si ad rem conferentur, vapulabit. Ter.
Sine modo et modestia sum sine bono jure atque honore. Plaut.
Petulans pròtervo irascundo animo indomito incogitato. Plaut.

749. 6. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic (Septenarius).

\[ \underline{\text{\textcircled{i} \textcircled{i}}} \rightarrow \underline{\text{\textcircled{i} \textcircled{i}}} \rightarrow \underline{\text{\textcircled{i} \textcircled{i}}} \rightarrow \underline{\text{\textcircled{i} \textcircled{i}}} \rightarrow \underline{\text{\textcircled{i}}} \]

Cras amet qui nunquam amavit | quique amavit cras amet. Pervig.

Ven.

Tu me amoris magis quam honoris | servavisti gratia. Ennius.
Vapulare te vehementer | jubeo : ne me territes. Plaut.

Remark.—The Trochaic Tetrameter (so called by eminence) is of frequent occurrence in comic poetry. It is compounded of Dimeter + Dimeter Catalectic. Hiatus is often found at the break.

Manibus puris capite opere | ibi continuo contonat. Plaut.

IAMBIC RHYTHMS.

750. The Iambic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the asris is double of the thesis. It is represented

By the Iambus: \( \underline{\text{i}} \).
By the Tribrach: \( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} \).
By the Spondee: \( \underline{\text{s} \text{s}} \) (in -meters);
By the Dactyl: \( \underline{\text{s} \text{s}} \) (sometimes); and
By the Anapaest: \( \underline{\text{i} \text{i}} \).

Remark.—Of course, Spondee, Dactyl, and Anapaest, are all irrational. The Spondee \( \underline{\text{s} \text{s}} \), the Anapaest, \( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} \), and the Dactyl, \( \underline{\text{i} \text{i}} \).

751. Iambic -meters admit substitution of a long for the short of the odd feet.

Remark.—Regarding the Iambus as an Anacrustic Trochee, the same rule and reason hold for the substitution in the one, as in the other (746, R. 2).

752. 7. Iambic Dimeter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inanit aestuosis</th>
<th>Usual Scheme</th>
<th>Anacrustic Scheme</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imbres nivesque com-</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parat</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Videre properantes</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domum</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ast ego vicissim ri-</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soro. Hor.</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
<td>( \underline{\text{i} \text{i} \text{i} \text{i}} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remark.—According to the Anacrustic Scheme, the Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic is a Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic with Anacrusis.
753. 8. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.

Mea renidet in domo lacunar  
Regumque pueris nec satelles Orcl. Hor.  
Anacrustic Scheme: 

> : - • | - > | - • | - • | - | - • (with Syn- 
copé).

754. 9. Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic (Sénarius).

Suis et ipsa † Roma viribus ruit  
Heu me † per urbem † nam pudet tanti 
mali  
Deripere lunam † vocibus possim meis  
Infamis Helenae † Castor † offensus 
vicem  
Optat quietem † Pelopis infidi pater  
Alitibus atque † canibus homicidam 
Hectorem  
Vectabor humeris † tunc ego inimicis 
eques  
Pavidumque leporem et † advenam 
laqueo gruem. Hor.  
Anacrustic Scheme: 

> : - • | - > | - • | - • | - • | - • | - • (withSyn- 
copé).

Remarks.—1. The Iambic Trimeter when kept pure has a rapid aggressive movement. Hence, it is thus used in lampoons and invectives. It admits the Spondee in the odd places (first, third, fifth foot); the Tribrach in any but the last; the Dactyl in the first and third. The Anapaest is rare. When carefully handled, the closing part of the verse is kept light, so as to preserve the character. Special study is necessary to understand the treatment of the comic Trimeter.

2. Caesurae.—The principal caesura is the Penthemimeral, which falls on the middle of the third foot (περ Ῥήματος = 2½) and is rarely wanting. Less important is the Hepthemimeral (ἐφ Ῥήματος = 3½), which falls on the middle of the fourth foot.

> | - • | - • | - • | - • | - • | - •  

Levis crepante † lympha † de silit pede. Hor.

Of course in the Anacrustic Scheme the Caesura of the ordinary scheme becomes Diaeresis.

Le : vis cre | pante | lympha | desl | lit pe | de.

3. A break (Diaeresis) at the middle of the verse is avoided. Short particles, which adhere closely to the following word, do not constitute exceptions.

Laboriosa nec cohors Ulixel. Hor.

Adulteretur et columba miluo. Hor.

In like manner explain—

Refertque tanta grex amicus ubera. Hor.
755. 10. **Trimeter Iambicus Claudus** (Choliambus); **Scazon**
(= Hobbler) Hippōnactēs.

**Miser Catulle desinas inoptire. Cat.** Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ

**Fulsero quondam candidi tibi soles. Cat.** ＿ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ

**Dominis parantur ista; serviiunt vobis.**

**MART.** Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ Λ

**REMARKS.**—1. In the Choliambus the rhythm is reversed at the close, by putting a
trochee or spondee in the sixth foot. The lighter the first part of the verse, the
greater the surprise. It is intended to express comic anger, resentment, disappoint-
ment.

2. The Anacrustis measurement is as follows:

❯ : ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿. Trochaic Trimeter with Anacrusis

Syncopé and Protraction.

756. 11. **Iambic Tetrameter Acatalectic** (Octōnārius).

❯ Λ Λ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿. Hic finis est iambe salve ῶ vindicio doctor mali. **SERVIUS.**

Te cum securi caudicali ῶ praeficio provinciae. **PLAUT.**

**REMARK.**—This verse occurs frequently in the comic poets, and is to be regarded as a
compound. It either divides itself into equal parts at the end of the first Dimeter (with
Hiatus and Syllaba Anceps) or has a Caesura in the first Thesis of the third Dimeter.

1. O Troja, 0 patria, 0 Pergamum, 0 Priame, peristi senex. **PLAUT.**

Is perro me autem verberat ῶ incursat pugnis calibus. **PLAUT.**

2. Facile omnes quum valemus recta ῶ consilia aegrotis damus. **TER.**

757. 12. **Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic** (Septenarius).

❯ Λ Λ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿. Remitte pallium mihi ῶ meum quod involasti. **CAT.**

**REMARKS.**—1. This verse is to be regarded as a compound of Dimeter + Dimeter Ca-
talectic: hence, regular Diaeresis after the first Dimeter:

With Syllaba Anceps:

Si abduxeris celabitur ῶ itidem ut celata adhuc est. **PLAUT.**

With Hiatus:

Sed si tibi viginti minae ῶ argenti proferuntur. **PLAUT.**

2. It may be measured anacrustically:

❯ : ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿ ＿. DACTYLIC RHYTHMS.

758. The Dactylic Rhythm is a descending rhythm, in which
the Arsis is equal to the Thesis (2 = 2).

The Dactylic Rhythm is represented by the Dactyl: Λ Λ Λ.

Often, also, by the Spondee: ＿ ＿.
A Dactylic verse of one Dactyl is called a Monometer; of two, a Dimeter; of three, a Trimeter; of four, a Tetrameter; of five, a Pentameter; of six, an Hexameter.


Terruit urbem. Hor. 2 0 0 2 0 0

REMARK.—Though generally measured thus, this verse is properly logaoedic, and will recur under that head.


Pulvis et umbra sumus. Hor. 2 0 0 2 0 0 2

15. Dactylic Tetrameter Catalectic in Dissyllabum.

Aut Epheson bimarisve Corinthi 2 0 0 2 0 0 2 0 0 2
O fortes pejoraque passi 2 2 2 2 0 0 2 0 0 2
Mensorem cohibent Archyta. Hor. 2 0 2 0 2 2 2 0 0


Nunc decet aut viridi nitidum caput 2 0 0 2 0 0 2 0 0 0
Pallida mors aequo pulsat pede 2 0 2 2 2 2 2 0 0
Vitae summa brevis spem nos vetat 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 0 0
Occurs only in combination.

HEROIC HEXAMETER.

761. 17. n 2 0 0 | 2 0 0 | 2 0 0 | 2 0 0 | 2 \(\frac{(-)}{)} | 2 0

1. Ut fugiunt aquilas \+ timidissima \+ turba columbae. Ov.
2. At tuba terribilis \+ sonitu \+ procul \+ aere canoro. Verg.
3. Quadrupedante putrem \+ sonitu \+ quasit \+ ungula campum. Verg.
4. Cum medio celeres \+ revolant \+ ex sequore mergi. Verg.
5. Vastius insurgens \+ decimae \+ ruit \+ impetus undae. Ov.
6. Et rebeat rancum \+ regio \+ oita \+ barbara \+ bombum. Lucri.
7. Muta metu terram \+ genibus \+ summissa petebat. Lucri.
8. Inter cunctantes \+ secidit \+ moribunda ministros. Verg.
9. Ne turbata volent \+ rapidis \+ ludibria ventis. Verg.
10. Versaque in obnixos \+ urgentur \+ cornua vasto. Verg.
11. Processit longe \+ flammantia \+ moenia mundi. Lucri.
12. Portam vi multa \+ converso \+ cardine torquet. Verg.
13. Tectum augustum ingens \+ centum sublime columnis. Verg.

\{ Four Dactyls. \}
\{ Three Dactyls. \}
\{ Two Dactyls. \}
\{ One Dactyl. \}
\{ No Dactyl. \}
19. Parturient montes + tacnatur + ridiculus + mus. Hor.
25. Me me adsum qui feci in me convertite ferrum. Vers.

Remarks.—1. The Heroic Hexameter is composed of two dactylic tripodies, the second of which ends in a spondee. Spondees may be substituted for the dactyl in the first four feet; in the fifth foot, only when a special effect is to be produced. Such verses are called Spondaic. The longest hexameter contains five dactyls and one spondee (or trochee)—in all, seventeen syllables; the shortest in use, five spondees and one dactyl—in all, thirteen syllables. This variety in the length of the verse, combined with the great number of caesural pauses, gives the Hexameter peculiar advantages for continuous composition.

2. The two reigning locuses are the first and fourth, and the pauses are so arranged as to give special prominence to them—the first by the pause at the end of the preceding verse, the fourth by pauses within the verse, both before and after the arsis.

3. The principal Caesura in Latin poetry is the Penthemimerial (2344), i.e., in the arsis of the third foot, or masculine caesura of the third foot. The next is the feminine caesura of the third foot, the so-called Third Trochee, which is less used among the Romans than among the Greeks; then the Hephthemimerial (3434) in the arsis of the fourth foot. As Greek poetry is largely rhetorical, and the caesura is of more importance for recitation than for singing, the Roman poets are very exact in the observance of these pauses.

4. The Diversus which is most carefully avoided is the one after the third foot, especially if that foot ends in a spondee (23), and the verse is thereby split in half.

Examples are found occasionally, and if the regular caesura precedes, the verse is not positively faulty.

His lacrimis vitam + damus + et miseressimus ultrin. Vers.
It is abominable when no other caesura proper is combined with it.

Poeni + pverortentes + omnin + circumcursant. Ennius.

On the other hand, the Bucolic triad of the foot, or pause at the end of the fourth foot divides the verse into proportionate parts (12 and 8 morae or 2 to 1), and gives a graceful trochaic movement to the hexameter. It is often sought after.

Ita domum satusae + venit Hesperus + and capellae. Vers.

5. Much of the beauty of the Hexameter depends on the selection and arrangement of the words considered as metrical elements. The examples given above have been chosen with especial reference to the picturesque effect of the verse. Monosyllables at the end of the Hexameter denote surprise; anaepastic words, rapid movement, and the like.

Again, the Hexameter may be lowered to a conversational tone by large masses of spondees, and free handling of the caesura. Compare the Hexameters of Horace in the Odes with those in the Satires.
VERSIFICATION.

762. 18. Elegiac Pentameter (Catalectic Trimeter repeated).

Át dolor in lacrimás | vérerat ómne
merúm. Tíb. 2002002
Mé legat ét lectó | cármíne dóctus
amét. Ov. 20022002
Át nunc bárbaríes | grándis habére
nihíl. Ov. 20022
Cóncessúm nullá | lége redíbit iter.
Prop. 22222

The Elegiac Pentameter occurs only as a clausula to the Heroic Hexameter, with which it forms the Elegiac Distich.

Saepe ego tentávi curas depellere víno
At dolor in lacrimás | vérerat ómne merúm. Tíb.

Ingenium quondam fuerat pretiosíus auro
At nunc barbaríes | grándis habére nihíl. Ov.

Par erat inferior versus: risíssè Cupido
Décitur atque unum | surripíssè pedem. Ov.

Saepe ego cum domínae dulces a limíne duro
Agnosco voce | haec negat esse domi. Tíb.

REMARKS.—1. The Elegiac Pentameter consists of two Catalectic Trimeters or Pen-themimers, the first of which admits spondees, the second does not. There is a fixed Diaeresis in the middle of the verse, as marked above. The Pentameter derives its name from the old measurement: _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ ; and the name is a convenient one, because the verse consists of \( \frac{3}{5} + \frac{3}{5} \) Dactyls. The Elegiac Distich is used in sentimental, anatory, epigrammatic poetry.

2. The musical measurement of the Pentameter is as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
- & - & - & - & - & - \\
\end{array}
\]

This shows why neither Syllaba Anceps nor Hiatus is allowed at the Diaeresis, and explains the preference for length by nature at that point.

3. As the Latin language is heavier than the Greek, the Roman lightens the close of the Pentameter as much as possible. The Ovidian Distich of the best period shows great mechanical exactness. Almost every pentameter ends in a dissyllable, and elision is avoided.

ANAPAESTIC RHYTHMS.

763. The Anapaestic Rhythm is an ascending rhythm, in which the arsis is to the thesis as 2 to 2. It is represented—

By the Anapaest: _ _ _ ; or
By the Spondee: - ; or
By the Dactyl: _ _ _ .

The Anapaestic -meter consists of two feet. The measure is little used among the Romans.
19. *Dimeter Catalëcticus (Paroemiacus).*

Volucér pede corpore púlcher
Línguā catus ore canórus
Verúm memorare magis quam
Functúm laudare decósbit. *AUSON.*

20. *Dimeter Acatalëcticus.*

Veniént annís | saécúla serís
Quibus Óceánum | vincúla rerúm
Laxós et ingens | pateát tellús
Tethýsque novos | detégat orbés
Neó sit terrís | última Thule. *SEn. TRAG.*

SYLLABA Anceps is rare.

REMARKS.—Latin anapaests, as found in later writers, are mere metrical imitations of the Greek anapaests, and do not correspond to their original in contents. The Greek anapaest was an anacrusitic dactylic measure or march (in 4/4 time). Hence the use of Pause to bring out the four bars.

Paroemiacus: *Anacrusitic Scheme.*

Volucér pede corpore púlcher

Dimeter Acatalëcticus: *Anacrusitic Scheme.*

Quibus Óceánum vincúla rerúm

The Theses of the last feet are supplied by the Anacrusis of the following verse.

LOGAOEDIC RHYTHMS.

764. The Logaoedic Rhythm is a peculiar form of the trochaic rhythm in which the thesis has a stronger secondary ictus than the ordinary trochee.

Instead of the trochee, the light dactyl may be employed. This light or cyclical dactyl is represented in morae by 1½, ½, 1; in music, by \( \frac{1}{2} \).

When dactyls are employed, the trochee preceding is called a Basis, or tread. This trochee may be irrational \( ightarrow \) (so-called spondee). If the basis is double, the second is almost always irrational in Latin poetry. The basis is commonly marked \( x \). Instead of the trochee, an iambus is sometimes prefixed. Anacrusis and Syncope are also found.

REMARKS.—1. Logaoedic comes from \( λόγος \), prose, and \( ὀιδή \), song, because the rhythms seem to vary as in prose.
2. Dactyls are not necessarily employed. No. 4 (Alcaic enneasyllabic) is logaoedic.
VERSIFICATION.

ONE DACTYL.

21. Aдоніс. (See No. 13.)
Террит урбем. Hor.

22. Aristophanic (Choriambic).
Лідія діо per omnes. Hor.

765. ONE DACTYL, WITH BASIS.

23. Pherecroдan.
Nigris aequora vêntis. Hor.

24. Glyconic.
Emirabitur insolôns. Hor.

25. Phalaeсean (Hendecasyllabic).
Pásser mórtuos est meae puellae
Aridá modo pâmice expolitum
Túae Léshia sint satís superque. Cat.

REMARK.—The so-called spurious Phalaescean admits the Spondee —> in the place of the dactyl.
Quæs vidit vultu tamen sereno. Cat.

766. ONE DACTYL, WITH DOUBLE BASIS.

26. Sapphic (Hendecasyllabic).
Audîtél civés † acuisse ferrum. Hor.

REMARK.—The Greek measure (Catullus) is

767. ONE DACTYL WITH DOUBLE BASIS AND ANACRUSIS.

27. Alcaic (Greater) Hendecasyllabic.
Vidéss ut álta | stêt nive cándidâm
Soracte néc jam | sustineánt omús. Hor.

REMARK.—The second basis always a spondee in Horace.

768. TWO DACTYLS.

28. Alcaic (Lesser) or Decasyllabic.
Wértre funeribus triumphos. Hor.
VERSIFICATION.

In all these, the Dactyl has a diminished value. More questionable is the logaoedic character of the Greater Archilochian.


\[ \text{\textit{Solvitur acris hiems grata vice}} \text{\textit{veris et Favoni. Hor.}} \]

**Remark.**—If measured logaoedically, the two shorts of the dactyl must be reduced in value to one \((\omega = \omega)\), and the logaoedic scheme is

\[ \rightarrow \omega \mid \omega \mid \rightarrow \omega \mid \rightarrow \omega \mid \rightarrow \omega \mid \neg \omega \mid \neg \omega \mid \neg \omega \]

Logaoedic tetrapody + Logaoedic tetrapody with Syncopé.

770. Choriambic Rhythms.—When a logaoedic series is syncopated, apparent choriambi arise. What is \(\neg \omega \mid \neg \omega \mid \omega \) seems to be \(\neg \omega \mid \neg \omega \). Genuine choriambi do not exist in Latin.

80. Asclépiadēan (Lesser). \[ \_x \rightarrow \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \]
Maecenas atavis | edite
regibus. Hor.

81. Asclépiadēan (Greater). \[ \_x \rightarrow \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \]
Nullam Vare sacra | vite
prius | severis arbo-
rem. Hor.

82. Sapphic (Greater). \[ \_x \rightarrow \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \]
Te deos oro Sybarin | cur
properas amando.
Hor.

83. Priāpean (Glyconic + Pherecraitēan). \[ \_x \rightarrow \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \mid \omega \]
Hunc lucum tibi dedico |
consecroque Priape.
Cat.

**Cretic and Bacchic Rhythms.**

771. These passionate rhythms are found occasionally in the comic poets. They both belong to the Quinquepartite or Five-Eighths class.

1. The distribution of the Creticus is \(3 + 2\) morae.
The metrical value of the Creticus is \(\neg \omega \) (Amphimacer).
VERSIFICATION.

Second long resolved – O O Paeon Primus.
First long resolved O O O Paeon Quartus.

34. Tetrameter Catalæcticus.

Da mi(hi) hoc mel meum si me amas saudes. Plaut.

35. Tetrameter Acatalæcticus.

Ex bonis pessumi et fraudulentissumi. Plaut.

2. The Bacchius has the following measure: O 1 + 2 + 2 morae (↑↑↓), or if the descending form – – be regarded as the normal one 2 + 2 + 1 morae (↑↑↑).

36. Bacchic Tetrameter.

Quibus nec locust ullu’ nec spes parata
Misericordior nulla mest feminarum

IONIC RHYTHM.

772. The Ionic Rhythm is represented by Ιόνικος a májóri – – –. For the Ιόνικος a májóri may be substituted the Ditrochaeus – – –. This is called Anáclasis (breaking-up).

The verse is commonly anacrustic, so that it begins with the thesis – – –. Such verses are called Ιόνικος a minóri.

The second long has a strong secondary ictus.

773. 37. An Ionic System is found in Horace, Od. iii. 12. It consists of two periods, the first being made up of two dipodies, the second of two tripodies.

Ιόνικος a minóri scheme:
Miserarum est neque amori dare ludum neque dulci
mala vino lavere aut examinari metuientes patruae verbera linguae

Ιόνικος a májóri scheme:

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I. 3

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. 3

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Digitized by Google
VERSIFICATION.

REMARKS.—1. The Roman numerals refer to periods, the Arabic to the number of feet or bars, the dots indicate the end of a line.
The Ionics is an excited measure, and serves to express the frenzy of distress as well as the madness of triumph.

774. 38. Tetrameter Catalectic.

The Galliambic verse (Tetrameter Catalectic) is found in a famous poem by Catullus (lxxxiii).

Ordinary Scheme:
Without Anacolus: 002_002_002_002
With Anacolus: 0020202_002002

Anacrustic Scheme:
Without Anacolus: 00:_0_0 | _-_0_0 | _-_0_0_0_0_0
With Anacolus: 00:_0_0 | _-_0_0 | _-_0_0_0_0_0

The Anacolastic form is the more common. The Anacrustas may be contracted (9 times in the Attis).
The frequent resolutions and conversions give this verse a peculiarly wild character.

Et earum omnia adirem furebunda
latibula
Quo nos decet cihis celerare tri-
pudii
Raque ut domum Cybebes tectigere
tassulae
Super alta vectus Attis celeri rate
maria
Jam jam dolet quod egi jam jam-
que paenitet

775. Verses COMPOUNDED OF IAMBI AND DACTYLS.

39. 1. Iambeleus. Iambic Dimeter and Dactylic Penthemimeris.

Tu vina Torquato move | consul
pressa meo. Hor.

Or as two verses:

>:_0_0_0_0_0_0

Digitized by Google
VERSIFICATION.

776.
40. 2. Elegiambus (Dactylic Pentemeteris and Iambic Dimeter).
Desinet imparibus | certare submo-
tus pudor. Hor.

Or as two verses:

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} 
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\end{array} \]

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c} 
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\end{array} \]

**Saturnian Verse.**

777. The Saturnian verse is an old Italian rhythm which occurs in the earlier monuments of Latin literature. It divides itself into two parts, with three Arses in each:—

*The queen was in her parlour,*

*Eating bread and honey.*

Dabunt malum Metelli Naevio postae
Iterum triumphans in urbem Romam reedit
Duello magno dirimundo regibus subigundis.

778. **Lyric Metres of Horace.**

I. Asclepiadean Strophe No. 1. Lesser Asclepiadean Verse (No. 30) repeated in tetrastichs.

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c} 
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\end{array} \]

Or thus:

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c} 
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\end{array} \]

In Od. i. 1; iii. 30; iv. 8.

II. Asclepiadean Strophe No. 2. Glyconius (No. 24) and Lesser Asclepiadean (No. 30) alternating, and so forming tetrastichs.

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c|c} 
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\end{array} \]
VERSIFICATION.

Or thus:

\[ \Rightarrow | \sim \circ | - \sim | - \circ | - \_ \wedge | - \circ | - \circ | - \_ \wedge \]

In Od. i. 6, 15, 24, 33; ii. 12; iii. 10, 16; iv. 5, 12.

IV. Asclepiadean Strophe No. 4. Two Lesser Asclepiadean Verses (No. 30), a Pherecratan (No. 23), and a Glyconic (No. 24).

\[ \Rightarrow | \sim \circ | - \sim | - \circ | - \_ \wedge | - \circ | - \circ | - \_ \wedge | - \circ | - \circ | - \_ \wedge | - \circ | - \circ | - \_ \wedge \]

In Od. i. 5, 14, 21, 23; iii. 7, 13; iv. 818.

V. Asclepiadean Strophe No. 5. Greater Asclepiadean (No. 81), repeated in fours.

\[ \Rightarrow | \sim \circ | - \sim | - \circ | - \_ \wedge | - \circ | - \circ | - \_ \wedge | - \circ | - \circ | - \_ \wedge | - \circ | - \circ | - \_ \wedge \]

In Od. i. 11, 18; iv. 10.
VI. Sapphic Strophe. Three Lesser Sapphics (No. 26), and an Adonic (No. 21), which is merely a clausula. In No. 26 Horace regularly breaks the Dactyl.

\[ \text{In Od. i. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; ii. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; iii. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; iv. 2, 6, 11; Carmen Saeculare.
Word divided at the end of the third verse; Od. i. 2, 19; 25, 11; ii. 16, 7.} \]

VII. Lesser Sapphic Strophe. Aristophanic (No. 22), and Greater Sapphic (No. 32). Two pairs are combined into a tetrastich.

\[ \text{Or thus:} \]

\[ \text{In Od. i. 8.} \]

VIII. Alcaic Strophe. Two Alcaic verses of eleven syllables (No. 27) one of nine (No. 4), and one of ten (No. 28).

\[ \text{In Od. i. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15 17, 19, 20; iii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; iv. 4, 9, 15, 17.} \]
IX. Archilochian Strophe No. 1. Hexameter (No. 17), and Lesser Archilochian (No. 14), two pairs to a tetrastich.

\[ \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \]

Or thus:

\[ \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \]

In Od. iv. 7.

X. Archilochian Strophe No. 2. A Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), and an Iambic Hexameter (No. 39).

\[ \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \]

Or thus:

\[ \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \]

Epod. 18.

XI. Archilochian Strophe No. 3. An Iambic Trimeter (No. 9), followed by an Elegiambus (No. 40).

\[ \underline{0} \_ \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \]

\[ \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \]

Epod 11.

XII. Archilochian Strophe No. 4. Greater Archilochian (No. 29), and Trimeter Iambic Catalectic (No. 8). Two pairs combined to form a tetrastich

\[ \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} | \underline{2} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \_ \underline{0} \]

Od. i. 4.

Remark.—This verse is sometimes considered as logaoedic.
XIII. Alcmanian Strophe. Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), followed by Catalectic Dactylic Tetramer (No. 15).

In Od. i. 7, 28. Epod. 12.

REMARK.—The Tetramer may be considered catalectic with a spondee in the fourth place.

XIV. Iambic Trimeter repeated (No. 9).

In Epod. 17.

XV. Iambic Strophe. Iambic Trimeter (No. 9), and Dimeter (No. 7).

In Epod. 1–10.

XVI. Pythiambic Strophe No. 1. Dactylic Hexameter No. 17 (Versus Pythius), and Iambic Dimeter (No. 7).

Epod. 14, 15.

XVII. Pythiambic Strophe No. 2. Dactylic Hexameter (No. 17), and Iambic Trimeter (No. 9).

Epod. 16.

16*
VERSIFICATION.

XVIII. Trochaic Strophe. Catalectic Trochaic Dimeter (No. 3), and a Catalectic Iambic Trimeter (No. 8). Two pairs make a tetrasstich.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{\textbullet} & \quad \text{\textbullet} \\
\text{\textbullet} & \quad \text{\textbullet} \\
\end{align*}
\]

In Od. ii. 18.

XIX. Ionic System.
In Od. iii. 12. (See No. 37.)

779. INDEX OF HORATIAN ODES AND METRES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BOOK. ODE.</th>
<th>METRE.</th>
<th>BOOK. ODE.</th>
<th>METRE.</th>
<th>BOOK. ODE.</th>
<th>METRE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. 1</td>
<td>i.</td>
<td>II. 1</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>III. 18</td>
<td>vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>19.</td>
<td>ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>vii.</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>xii.</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>21.</td>
<td>vii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>iv.</td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>22.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>6.</td>
<td>vii.</td>
<td>23.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>xiii.</td>
<td>7.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>24.</td>
<td>ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>8.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>25.</td>
<td>i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>v.</td>
<td>10.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>27.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>11.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>28.</td>
<td>ii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>12.</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>29.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>vii.</td>
<td>13.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>30.</td>
<td>i.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td>15.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>16.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td>17.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>v.</td>
<td>18.</td>
<td>xviii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>ii.</td>
<td>19.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>iv.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>iv.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>vii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>vii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>xiii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>ii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>xix.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>iv.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>vii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>x.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>xii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>i.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>iii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>vii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>viii.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>vi.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>xiv.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Carmen Saeculare. vi.
Epod. 1-10. xv.

11. xi.
12. xiii.
13. x.
14. xvi.
15. xvi.
16. xvii.
17. xiv.
APPENDIX.

ROMAN CALENDAR.

The names of the Roman months were originally adjectives. The substantive mensis, month, may or may not be expressed: (mensis) Jānuārius, Februārius, and so on. Before Augustus, the months July and August were called, not Jūlius and Augustus, but Quintiīs and Sextiīs. The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (Kalendae), Nones (Nōnae), and Ides (Idūs), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: Kalendae Jānuāriae, Nōnae Februāriae, Idūs Martiae. The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July, and October, the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the 15th day,
The Nones the 7th; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward ("come next calends, next nones, next ides") the Romans used for "the day before" prīdē with the accus. prīdē kalendās Jānuāriās, Dec. 31, prīdē nōnās Jān. = Jan. 4, prīdē Id. Jan. = Jan. 12.

The longer intervals are expressed by ante diem tertium, quartum, etc., before the accusative, so that ante diem tertium kal. Jan. means "two days before the calends of January;" ante diem quartum, or a. d. iv., or iv. kal. Jan., "three days before," and so on. This remarkable combination is treated as one word, so that it can be used with the prepositions ex and in: ex ante diem iii. Nōnās Jūniās usque ad prīdē kal. Septembris, from June 3 to August 31; dīfferre alicui in ante diem xv. kal. Nov., to postpone a matter to the 18th of October.

LEAP YEAR.—In leap year the intercalary day was counted between a. d. vi. kal. Mart. and a. d. vii. kal. Mart. It was called a. d. bis sextum kal. Mart., so that a. d. vii. kal. Mart. corresponded to our February 28d, just as in the ordinary year.

TO TURN Roman Dates INTO English.

For Nones and Ides.—I. Add one to the date of the Nones and Ides, and subtract the given number.

For Calends.—II. Add two to the days of the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

INDEX OF SYNTAX.

The Figures refer to the Sections.

A.

A, ab, abs, with ablative, 412; of agent, 205, 408; of origin, 395; of part affected, 398; ad eteron, ab oriente, ad spatium, 386, R. 2.

Ablative, syntax of, 393–409; of place where, 384–387; of place whence, 388–390; of attendance, 391; of time when, 392, 3; of origin, 395; of material, 396; of measure, 397–400, 566; of manner, 401; of quality, 402; of means, 403; of price, 404; with sundry verbs, 405; of cause, 406; ablative absolute, 408, 409; prepositions with, 418, 420; abl. of gerund and gerundive, 432; of supine, 437.

Absolute ablative, 408; restrictions of use, 409, R. 3.

Absque, w. abl. 418.

Abstract nouns in plural 195, R. 5; as attribute and vice versa, 357, R. 4.

Abiatur, 405, 428; R. 3.

Ac atque, 479, 615.

Accedit, constr., 525, R. 3.

Accidit, sequence after, 513, R. 2.

Accipio, with two datives, 350.

Accusative, 337–340. Direct object, inner, outer object, 327; general view, 328; with active transitive verbs, 329; with verbs compd. with prepositions, 330: cognate, 331; adverbial, 331, R. 3; of part affected, 332; double, 333–334; of local objects (terminal accusative), 342, 410; of extent in space, 335, 336; in time, 337, 338; in exclamations and explanatory questions, 340; with interjections, 340; with prepositions, 417; of infinitive, 424; of gerund, 426; of gerundive, 431; of supine, 436. Accusative and infinitive, 341–536.

Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, —constr., 377.

Ac si, 389.

Action, stage of, 213; period of, 213.

Active voice, 204; for passive, 205; R. 1.

Active genitive, 361.

Ad, in compds. with acc., 380; with dat., 346. Preposition with accus., 356, R. 1, 417; whither, 341, R. 2; ad Vestae, 360, R. 2; w. gerund, 437, R. 2; ad, hence, 400, R. 3.

Adire aliquem, 330, R. 2.


Adnominal genitive, 359.

Adulator, constr. 347.

Advantage, dative of, 345.

Adverbial accus., 331, R. 3; abl. 401.

Adverbial sentences, 507.

Adversative particles for copulative, 484.
Adversative sentences, 486–493.
Adversus, w. accus., 356, R. 2, 417.
Aeger, w. gen., 374, R. 2.
Aemulo, 347.
Aequârâ, 345, R. 1.
Aequi bonique facio, 180, R. 2.
Aestimô, constr., 180, R. 1.
Affatim, w. gen., 371, R. 3.
Affection of the mind, 374, R. 2.
Affinâs, constr., 356, and R. 1.
Affirmative, indefinite, and general, 448, R.
Agent, abl. of, w. a (ab), 203, 403; without a (ab), 202, R. 2; dative of, 203, 552, 553.
Agreement of predicate and subject, 199, 281, 283; of attribute and substantive, 285, 286; of relative and antecedent, 616.
Ajo, 651, R.
Alienus, w. dat., 356; with gen., 356, R. 1; w. abl., R. 5.
Aliquis, aliqui, 301.
Alter with atque, 646; with sin, 503.
Alit—alî, 321.
Altus, 306; with abl., 399, R. 2; with atque, 645.
Altus, 336.
Amicus, constr., 356 and R. 1.
An, 459, 462.
Anacoluthon, 694.
Animi, constr., 374, R. 3.
Annûn, 461.
Antecedent, 615; repeated, 617; incorporated, 618; attraction into, 619; omission of, 623.
Antequam, constr., 576 foll.
Aorist, 212.
Apodosis, 590; omitted, 603 foll.
Apodotic period, 686.
Aposiopesis, 691.
Apposition, 319. Partitive (restrictive), 320. Distributive, 321; with nomen, 322; to a sentence, 323.
Predicative, 324. Apposition of antecedent incorporated, 618.
Apud, w. accus., 417.
Arrangement of words, 674, foll. of clauses.
As, 324, R. 3.
Aspergo, constr., 348.
Asseverations, 255.
Assis, 379.
Assuetus, w. abl., 403, R. 2.
Asyndeton, 472, 480.
Attempted actions by present, 218, R. 2; by imperf., 224.
Attendance, ablative of, 391.
Ate, for quam, 311, R. 6. See ac.
Atqui, 498.
Attraction of pronoun, 199, R. 5. Attraction of names of persons, 322.
Attraction of mood, 509, 666; w. quod., 541, R. 2. Attraction of relative, 619; inverted, 619, R. 2.
Aut, 493.
Autem, 486.
Ax, verbs in, w. gen. 174.

B.
Becoming, verbs of, 193.
Belli, 409, R. 3.
Beseeking, verbs of, 546.
Bewareing, verbs of, 548.
Bonus emere, vender, 381, R. 3.
Bidding, verbs of, 345 and R. 1.
Birth, part. of, 395.
Bonâ cónsul, 380, R. 2.
Brachylogy, 689.

C.
Capitã, and capita, 377, R. 1.
Captus, w. abl., 398.
Causâ, grâtiâ, w. gen., 372, 407.
Causal particles, 500, sentences, 588, foll.
Causal participle, 669.
Causation, verbs of, w. partic., 537.
Cause, abl. of, 406.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Case, with subj. for imperat., 264.  
Caveo, w. acc. and dat., 347; nē ut, 548, R. 3.  
Célo, 333 and R. 2.  
Céterum, 490.  
Chiasmus, 684.  
Choosing, verbs of, 197, 334.  
Circō, circiter, w. accus., 417.  
Circum, compds. w. acc., 580; circum, w. acc., 417.  
Circumdo, constr., 348.  
Cs, citrā, w. accus., 417.  
Citations in abl., 330.  
Cities, names of, 410–412.  
Clam, w. abl., 417, R.  
Clauses, 474.  
Coepit sum, 424, R.  
Cognate, accus., 383.  
Cognātus, constr., 356, R. 1.  
Coincident action, 583.  
Collocāre in, w. abl., 384, R.  
Com, con, in compds., w. dat., 346.  
Combination of relative sentences, 639.  
Comitor, constr., 347.  
Communícāre, const., 346, R.  
Commūnis, 356, R. 1.  
Comparative degree with quam, 311, 647, foll.; with abl., 399; with gen., 370.  
Comparative particles for copulatives, 484. C. sentences, 645, foll.  
Comparison, 311; standard of, omitted, 323: of qualities, 314.  
Complementary final sentences, 541, 543.  
Compos, w. gen., 373.  
Compound sentences, 192, 474.  
Compounds of preposit. with acc., 390; w. two acc., 390; w. dat. 346.  
Conceiving, verbs of, 523.  
Concord of predicate, w. subj., 202, 281; gender, 292; number, 281; of attribute, 285; common attribute, 286: of apposition, 349; of relative, 616.  
Concords, the three, 198.  
Condemning, verbs of, 377.  
Condition, resulting, 225, 280.  
Conditional sentences, 590–604; logical, 597; ideal, 595; unreal, 599; incompleta, 600; in qualitu obliqua, 659, foll.; conditional participle, 670.  
Conducere, constr., 378.  
Conjunctions.—Coordinating, copulative, 477, 484; adversative, 488–493; disjunctive, 494–497; causāl, 500; illative, 501–504; subordinate, causal, 538; final, 543; temporal, 561; conditional, 591.  
Obnasci, w. gen., 373, R. 1.  
Cōnsidere in, 384, R. 1.  
Cōstitūrum est, w. inf. 429, R. 3.  
Cōstituere in, 384, R.  
Cōnsta, 370.  
Cōnsulō, 347, 390, R. 2.  
Constructio praegnans, 666.  
Contentus, w. abl., 373, R. 1.  
Continuance, verbs of, 424.  
Contigit, sequence after, 513, R. 2.  
Contrā, as adv., 416, R.; w. acc., 217.  
Contrārius, 356, R. 1.  
Convenero, 347.  
Convulting, verbs of, 377.  
Coordinating conjunctions. See conjunctions.  
Copula, 196; omitted, 200; agreement with predicate, 202, R. 1.  
Copulative conjunctions, 477–484; inserted, 483; omitted, 475–483.  
Copulative verbs, 1.  
Coram, with abl., 418.  
Cum, prep., abl., with and without, 391–401; postpositive, 414, R. 1; with abl., 418.  
Cum (quum) primum, 563; cum (const.), 581; temporal, 582; coincident action, 583; lapse of time, 582, R. 3; conditional, 584; iterative, 585; historical, 586; causal, 587; concessive, adversative, 588; cum tum, 587.  
Cumque, compounds with, 246, R. 4.  
Cupidus, w. gen., 373.  
Cupio, 532.  
Cūrā ut, 264.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

D.

Dative, 348–358; w. transitive verbs, 344; w. intrans. verbs, 345; w. compd. verbs, 348; differs from accus., 347; with verbs of giving and putting, 348; with esse, 349; of the object for which, 350; ethical dat., 351; of agent, 352; with gerund, 353; of participles, 354; with derivative nouns, 355; with adjectives, 356. Dative of gerund, 430.

Dō, with abl. 418; for gen., 371, R. 4, 377, R. 2; of time, 393, R.; of origin, 395; with abl. of measure, 396.

Dēbēbam, 246, R.

Decēre, 355, R. 1.

Declarative mood, 246.

Dēcerno, 446, R. 2.

Dēficere, 355, R. 1.

Defigere in, abl., 384, R.

Definite price, 404.

Delay, verbs of, 551.

Demanding, verbs of, 546.

Demonstratives, use of, 290–292.

Deponent verbs, 211.

Depriving, verbs of, 389.

Derivative nouns with dat., 355.

Design, sentences of, 544, foll.; represented, 544, R.

Dēsīno, 424.

Desire, adj. of, w. gen., 373; verbs of, w. inf., 542; w. partic., 547.

Dēsitūs sum, 424, R. 1.

Dēspēro, w. acc., 339.

Destination, 377, R. 3.

Determinative pronouns, 298–298.

Dëtërreo, constr., 546, R. 1.

Difference, abl. of, 400.

Dī, dīs, compounds with, 388, R. 1.

Dignor, 398, R. 2.

Dignus, 373, R. 3; 398, R. 2. Dignus qui, 556, R. 2.

Direct discourse, 509.

Direct object, 327.

Direct question, 454.

Disadvantage, dat. of, 345.

Disgust, adj. of, 373.

Disjunctive conjunctions, 494–497.

Dispar, 356, R. 1.

Disproportion, 313.

Distance, abl. of, 400, R. 2.

Distāre, w. dat., 388, R. 1; with abl., 400, R. 1, 2; with acc., 335.

Distributives, 310.

Dō, with two datives, 350.

Doceo, 333, 424, R. 3.

Docutus, constr., 403, R. 2.

Doleo, w. acc., 329, R. 1, w. quod, 542.

Dolō, 401, R. 1.

Domī, 412, R. 2.

Domō, 411, R. 2.

Domōs, domum, 410.

Dōnec. See Dum.

Doubt, verbs of, 351.

Dūco, with two dat., 350, with gen., 378.

Dubitō an, 469, R.

Dubitō, other constr. 550, R.

Dum, with pres., 217, R. 1, 573; w. ind., 571, 573; with subj., 574.

Dum, Dummodo, 575.

E.

E or ex. with abl., 417; for gen., 571, R. 4; of origin, 395; ex fugā 388, R. 1.

Ecco, 340.

Egeo, 389, R. 1.

Ellipsis of substantive, 195, R. 1.

Ellipsis, 688.

Emo, 378.

Emotion, verbs of, 406, 542.

En, 340.

End, verbs of, 424.

Endevor, verbs of, 546.

Entrē, 500.

Enumeration in abl., 384, R.

Eō, w. gen., 571, R. 3.

Ergā, w. accus., 356, R. 2, 417.

Ergō, w. gen., 372.

Ergō, conj., 504.

Est qui, 426.

Et, 534; et ipsum, 297, R. 2; et nēmo, 422; et nōn, 534.

Etenim, 497.

Etiam, 477.

Ethical dative, 351.

Etiamēri, est, 605, 606.

Exclamations, 340 with acc. and inf. 534; with ut, 560.

Expers, w. gen., 373.

Exspectāre, constr., 574.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Extent in space, 335, 336.
External qualities, 403, R.
Extrd, as an adverb, 406, R.; with acc., 417.

F.

Fac, in circumlocutions, 284.
Facio, with gen., 365, R., 379; w. inf., 527, R. 1; w. part., 536; w. subj., 557.
Feeling, dat. of, 351.
Fearing, verbs of, 347, 552.
Fido, 345, R. 1, 402.
Filling, verbs of, 374, R. 6, 389.
Final sentences, 543, foll.
Fine, abl. of, 377, R. 1.
Fio, with two nom., 197; with two dat., 349; with abl., 403, R. 2.
Fitness, adjectives of, 356.
Fitagito, 333 and R. 2.
Forbidding, verbs of, 355.
Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 375.
Frequens, 324, R. 2.
Frequentative. See Iterative.
Frētus, with abl., 378, R. 1.
Friendliness, adj. of, 356.
Frōr, 413; fruendus, 428, R. 3.
Fui, perf. partic. pass. with, 240.
Fullness, adjectives of, 322.
Fungor, 405; fungendus, 428, R. 3.
Future, 237; periphrastic, 237; in subjunctive, 514; inf., 529.
Future participle, 279.
Future perfect, 233, foll.; iterative use, 659.
Futūrum esse, fore ut, 237, 531, R.
Futūrum fuisse ut, 240, R. 2, 659.

G.

Gaudeo, w. abl., 406; w. inf., 533; w. quod, 528.
Generic relative with ind., 248, R. 4.
Genitive, 357–382; appositive gen., or gen. of specification, 359; possess. gen., 360; active and passive, 361–363; gen. of quality, 364; as a predicate, 365; partitive gen., 366, foll. g. generis, 367, R.; gen. with prepositional substantives, 372; with adj., 373; with verbal and participles, 374; with verbs of memory, 375; with verbs of emotion, 376; w. judicial verbs, 377; with verbs of rating and buying, 376, 377; gen. with interest and réfert, 381; 382; apparent gen., 413; gen. of gerund and gerundive, 429; cases of, 427.
Gerund and gerundive, 426–432; gerundive for gerund, 428; after prepositions, 428, R. 1; gerundive formation restricted, 428, R. 2; 428, R. 3; genitive of, 429; dative of, 430; accus. of, 431; ablative of, 432.
Glōrior, with abl., 407.
Gratiā, with gen., 372, 407.

H.

Habeo, w. perf. part. pass., 229; with two dat., 350; with gen., 378; with inf., 424, R.; nihò habeo quod and inf. habeo quid, 634.
Habit, verbs of, 424.
Happening, verbs of, 525, 558.
Haud, 442. Haud scio an, 457, R.
Hendiadys, 695.
Hei, 340, R. 2.
Heu, 540.
Hac, 390; of time, 388, R. 2.
Historical tenses, 213. Historical present, 227. Historical cum, 596.
Hodiernus, 324, R. 6.
Hope, verbs of, 424, R. 3.
Horrère, w. accus., 529, R.

Ideal second person, 250, 267. Ideal conditional sentence, 598.
Idem, 296; predicative use of, 324, R. 2; with dat., 356, R. 6.
Idoneus, with dat., 356; qui, 556, R. 2.
Igitur, 563.
Ignárus, w. gen. 373.
Ignorance, adjectives of, w. gen. 373.
Illative conjunctions, 502–504.
Ille, 292; of time, 395, R. 2.
Immemor, w. gen., 373.
Impedio, constr., 540, 549.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Imperative, 259–369; tenses, 259–262; negative, 263; periphrases for, 264; representatives of positive imperative, 265; of negative, 266; of positive and negative, 267, 268; time of, 272: Imperative in órdió obíquá, 655; used modally, 246, R.

Imperfect tense, indicative, 223, foll.; subjunctive, 250; in sequence of tenses, 517; in unreal conditional sentences, 599, R. 2.

Impero, w. inf., 533, R. 1.

Impersonal verbs, 345.

Impertio, 345.

Imprimere in, abl., 384, R.

In, in compounds with acc., 380; with dat., 346. In, with abl. of place, 384, R.; with acc., 413, R.; with acc. and abl., 419. In, with abl. of time, 393.

Inclination, verbs of, 324.

Incorporation of antecedents, 618; antecedent, 623.

Indefinite perfect, 312; pronouns, 302–304.

Indicative mood, 246; for subjunctive, 399, R. 4. See the different classes of sentences.

Indígeo, constr., 393, R. 1.

Indígnus, w. abl., 378, R. 3; 398, R. 3. Indígnus qui, 556, R. 2.

Indirect discourse. See órdó obíquá.

Indirect object, 208, 343.

Indirect questions, 463.

Indúo, constr., 348.

In eó esse ut, 237, 241.

Infinitive, tenses of, 273, foll. 314; subject of, 337, 525; as a noun, 420, 422; as a subject, 428; as an object, 424; as a predicate, 425; accus. and inf., 526; ambiguity of accus. and inf., 527, R. 4; accus. and inf., with verbs of will and desire, 532; with verbs of emotion, 533; in exclamations, 534; accus. and inf., as a subject, 585; in relative sentences, 538.

Inftrá, as an adverb, 416 R.; with accus., 417.

Inquam, 499.

Inquiry, verbs of, 338.

Inscribere in, abl., 384, R.

Instar, with gen., 370.

Instrument, abl. of, 205, 103.

Inter, in compound with dat., 346. Inter, with accus., 417; with accus. for gen., 371, R. 4. Inter sè, 212. Inter of time, 393, R.

Intercalary period, 686.

Interest, constr., 373–381.

Interjections, 194, R. 2; with divers cases, 340.

Interrogative sentences, 449, 473.

Intrá, with accus., 417; of time, 393, R.

Intransitive verbs, 204, 345.

Inverted attraction, 618, R. 2.

Invitus, 324, R. 6.

Ipse, use of, 297, foll.

It, with supine, 437.

Islands, names of smaller, constr., 410, 411, 412.

Itaque, 499.

Ita—ut, restrictive, 556, R. 5.

Itém, itidem, 645.

Iterative tenses, 568–9.

J.

Judeo, constr., 533, R.; 546, R. 1.

Júre, 398.

Justī, 407.

Juvo, w. accus., 315, R. 1.

K.

Knowledge, adjectives of, 373.

L.

Látus, constr., 336.

Lège, 398.

Letters, tenses in, 244; date, 411, R. 3.

Liber, 324, R. 6.

Liber, 373, R.; libéro, w. abl., 388.

Librō, and in librō, 385, R.

Licère, constr., 373.

Licit, constr., 535, R. 2.

Likeness, adjectives of, 356; with acc., 646.

Locāre, constr., 878.

Locative, 412.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Locê, 385, R.
Longê, with superl., 317.
Longus, w. accus., 336.

M.
Macte, 324, R. 1.
Magis quam, 314.
Magni, 377; magno, 380.
Making, verbs of, with two accus., 334; passive of, w. two nom., 196.
Male, emere, vendere, 380, R. 3.
Miûo, constr., 532, R. 4; 546, R. 3.
Manner, abl. of, 401.
Material, abl. of, 396.
Mátûtins, 324, R. 6.
Measure, abl. of, 398–400; of difference, 398.
Medeor, w. dat., 345, R. 2; medendus, 428, R. 3.
Melius, w. indic., 246, R. 1.
Meminî, w. pres. inf., 27, R.; w. gen. 375.
Memor, w. gen., 373.
Memoria teneo, 277, R.
Memory, verbs of constr., 375.
Meluo, w. dat. and acc., 347.
Militiae, 412, R. 2.
Mille, 308.
Minôris, 380.
Minor, minus, without quam, 311, R. 4.
Mirâri, with accus., 329, R. 1.
Mirum quantum, 469, R. 2.
Misereor, miserâsco, miserât, w. gen., 376.
Mittere, w. two dat., 350.
Moderor, with dat. and accus., 347.
Modo, with subjunct., 575.
Modo modo, 481.
Moneo, w. gen., 375 and R. 1; with ut, 546; with inf., 546, R. 2.
Mood, attraction of, 506.
Moods, 244; indic., 246, foll.; subjunctive, 247, foll.; imperfect, 259; infinitive, 245, R.
Morîs est, 365.
Moving cause, 407, R.
Multiplication of subjects, 282, foll.
Mutilû, w. superlat., 317.
Mutilus, with et, 468.
Mûto, constr., 404, R.

N.
Nam, namque, 500.
Name, dat. of, 323; gen. of, 359.
Names of cities and small islands, constr., 410, 411, 412.
Naming, verbs of, with two accus., 334.
Nâtus, w. accus., 388; w. abl., 395.
—Ne, 456, 462.
Nê, with optative subj., 253; with imper. subj., 256, 266; with imperat., 263, 264; with sentences of design, 543; of result, 566, R. 4; nê provided that, 610.
Nearness, adjectives of, 256.
Necessae est, 344, R.
Necessity, expressed how, 246, R. 1.
Nece, 461.
Nec non, 448, R. 3.
Nedum, 464, R. 2.
Negative, of optative subjunctive, 253; of imperative, 263; negatives, 442, foll.; subdivision of, 444; position of, 447; two negatives, 448.
Nego, 446.
Nêmo, 304.
Nempe, 500, R.
Neque, 483. Nê- quidem, 484.
Nêscio an, 404.
Nêscio quis quômodo, with indic., 489, R. 2.
Neuter adjective as substantive, 199, R. 4; as cognate accus., 331, R. 2; as adverb, R. 3; with partitive gen., 371.
Ni, 592, R. 5.
Nihîl, 301; nihîli, 379.
Nisi aud si non, 592; nisi and nisi si = only, 592, R. 2; nisi quod, R. 3; nisi fortæ, R. 3.
Nitor, with abl., 403, R. 3.
No, 473.
Nêi, with inf. for imperat., 264.
Nêo, 532.
Nomem est, 323. Nomen w. gen., 359.
Nominative, 194; double, 196; nom. for accus., 528; with inf., 525.
Non, 442; position of, 447; non quod, quod, 541, R. 1.
Nôn alius quam, 646, R. 2.
Nônon modo-sûlum tantum, 484.
Nônne, 457.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Non possum non, 448, R. 1.
Nos = ego, 195, R. 7.
Nostrî, nostrum, 382 and R.
Nouns. See Substantive and Adjective.
Nûbo, with dat., 345, R. 2.
Nullus, 300, 304; for non, R. 2.
Num, 458.
Number, singular for plural, 195, R. 7 and 8; agreement in, 199.
Nunc-nunc, 494.

O.

O, with voc., 194, R. 2; w. accus., 340.
Ô si, 254, 388.
Ob, in compds. with acc., 330; with dat., 346. Ob, w. accus., 417.
Object, direct, 204; indirect, 205; infin. as object, 424; object sentences, 523–537; with quod, 525; with acc. and inf., 326, foll.
Object, for which, 350.
Obligation expressed, 246, R. 1.
Oblique cases, 327–406.
Obliquity, partial, 503.
Obliviscor, constr., 375, R. 1.
Oltre and redolère, w. accus., 329, R.
Omitting, verbs of, 551.
Omnès, 399, R. 1.
Opiniône, 399, R. 1.
Oportet, 355, R. 1; 559, R. 1.
Optative, subjunctive, 256.
Opto, 424, R. 2; 546.
Opus, 390.
Oratio obliqua, 509, 651–655; moods in, 509, 653, 654; tenses in, 655, foll.; condit. sentences in, 659; pronouns in, 663; involved, 655–6.
Ordinals for cardinals, 309.
Ordine, 401.
Origin, abl. of, 395.
Ortus, 395.

P.

Paenitet, 376; paenitendus, 428, R. 8.
Par and dispär, constr., 356, R. 1.
Part, accus. of, 332.
Particeps, w. gen., 373.
Participial clauses, interrogative in, 470.
Participial sentences, 667, foll.
Participles, tenses, 278–9; w. genitive, 374; subordination, by means of, 409, R. 2; 667, R. 1; participle as substant., 483; as adjective, 439; after verbs of Perception and Representation, 524, R. 1, 533; verbs of Causation and Desire, 534.
Participation, adjectives of, 373.
Partition in English, none in Latin, 369, R. 1.
Partitive genitive, 366–371.
Partitive, use of attribute, 287, R.; apposition, 321.
Parum, w. gen., 371.
Parvi, 380.
Passionate Question, 258.
Passive voice, 205; passive of intransitive verbs, 199, R.; 204, 208; passive genitive, 361.
Peculiäris, constr., 356, R. 1.
Pedibus, 401, R. 1.
Penes, w. accus., 415.
Per, in compds. with acc., 330; per with acc., 417; position, 416, R.
Per, of space, 335; of time, 337; of manner, 401, R.
Perceiving, verbs of, constr., 527, 536.
Perfect, pure, 227; historical, 231; passive, 242; perfect in letters, 244; perfect subjunctive potential, 250; optative, 254; imperative, 256, R. 1, 266; time of, 271; in sequence, 511; in sentences of result, 513; perfect infin., 275; as representative of indic., 277, and perf. part., 278; after verbs of causation and desire, 537; concessive, 670.
Period of action, 213.
Peritus, w. gen., 373.
Permitto ut, 532, R. 1.
Person, concord of, 202, 283.
Personal pronoun omitted, 195; gen. of, 363; personal pronoun w. gerundive, 429, R. 1.
Person interested, 206.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Persuadœ, 345, R. 1; w. Inf., 546, R. 2.

Per taœum est, 376.

Petö, 333, R. 2.

Piget, 376.

Placing, verbs of, 384, R. 1.

Place, whither, 332, 410; where, 384–387, 418; whence, 388; place, as cause, manner, or instrument, 387.

Plenus, 373 and R. 2.

Pluperfect, 283; indic. for subj., 246, R. 3; 599, R. 3; iterative, 569; pluperf. subj. as imperat. of past, 286, R. 2; in sequence, 511; iterative, 569, R. 2; in conditional, 599.

Plural of abstracts, 195, R. 5, 6; for sing., R. 7.

Plurimœ, 380.

Pluris, 380.


Pone, w. accus., 417.

Ponere in, abl., 384, R.

Posco, constr., 333 and R.

Position of attribute, 287, 288; of preposition, 404, foll.; of adverb, 441; of negative, 447, foll.; position, in interrogative sentences, 470; of relative, 614.

Posse, for future, 240, R. 3; 662, R. 2.

Possessive genitive, 360.

Possessive pronouns, use of, 299; apposition with gen., 319, R. 2; for genitive, 363; with refer and interest, 381; reflexive, 295, R. 1, 521.

Possessor, dative of, 349.

Possibility expressed, 246, R. 1.

Post, in compounds with dat., 346; in expressions of time, 400, R. 3.

Post, w. accus., 417.

Post quam, 563–567.

Postulo, constr., 333, R. 2.

Potential subjunctive, 250, foll., 519, 543.

Poteram, 246, R.

Potior, constr., 405, and R. 3.

Pottius quam, 362, R.

Potuisse, for futurum fuisset ut, 659, R. 2.

Power expressed, 246, R. 1; adjectives of, 373.

Præc, in compounds w. dat., 346; with abl., 407, R.; 418.

Præcidus, w. abl., 373, R. 1.

Præstóror, constr., 347.

Præter, in compds., w. accus., 329.

Præter, w. accus., 417.

Predicate, 192; predicative apposition and attribution, 324.

Prepositions, 413–419; origin of word, 413, R. 3; position of, 214, 315; repetition and omission of, 216; adverbial, 416, R.; prepositions w. acc., 417; with abl., 418; with accus. and abl., 419; with gerundive, 428, R. 1; with abl. gerund., 433.

Present indicat., 215–218; of endeavor, 215, R. 2; for future, 219; for past, 220; with jam, jamdiœ, jampridem, 221; present subjunctive, time of, 271; in sequence of tenses, 511; for future, 514; in conditional sentences, 381; present infinitive, 273; of contemporaneous action, 529; present participle, 278.

Preventing cause, 407, R. 2; verbs of, 543, 549.

Price, gen. of, 378; abl. of, 404.

Primo, primum, 324, R. 7.

Principal clauses, 474.

Prior, primum, as predicates, 324, R. 6, 7; w. gen., 370.

Prius quam, constr., 576–9.

Prô, interjection, 340.

Prô, in compounds, w. dat., 346.


Prohibeo, constr., 547.

Prolœpsus, 470.

Promise, verbs of, 424, R. 2.

Pronouns, 290–304; demonstrative, 290–293; reflexive, 294, 520–522; determinative, 296–298; possessive, 299; indefinite, 300–304; in oratio obliqua, 663.

Prope, w. accus., 417.


Proprius, 356, R. 1.

Propter, w. accus., 417.

Protasis, 590; omitted, 252, R. 1, 608.

Proximœ, w. accus., 356, R. 4.

Prœdens, as adv., 594, R. 5.
INDEX OF SYNTAX.

Pudef, 376.
Pure perfect, 212.
Puto, w. gen., 378.
Putting, verbs of, constr., 348, 384, R.

Q.

Quod prudentia est, 618, R. 1.
Qualification of subject, 284.
Quidis, 483.
Quality, gen. of, 364; ablative of, 403.
Qualities, two compared, 314.
Quam, w. comparatives, 311, 647; w. superlatives, 317; quam pro ut qui, 518; quam quod, 525; quam si, 604; quam omitted, 311, R. 4.
Quamdiu, 570, 645.
Quanquam, 607.
Quamvis, 608.
Quando. Quandoque, 588.
Quant, 400 and R.; Quantus, 645.
Quasi, 604.
—Que, 478.
Questions. See Interrogative Sentences.
Qui, indef., 302.
Qui, 612, foll. See relative.
Quia, 588; non quia, 541, R. 1.
Quicunque, 266, R. 1.
Quidam, 300.
Quidem, 298, R.
Quid me vis, 381, R. 3.
Quin, in questions, 268; quin, 550; after verbs of omitting, etc., 551; for qui non, 556; non quin, 541, R. 1.
Quis, indef., 309
Quispiam, 303.
Quisquam, 304.
Quisque, 305; ut quisque, 645, R. 2.
Quisquis, w. ind., 246, R. 4.
Quod, measure of difference, 400 = that thereby, 545; quod quisque, 645, R. 2.
Quod, with gen., 371, R. 3; Constr., 573.
Quoq, in object sentences, 525; in causal sentences, 538–541; w. verbs of emotion, 542, foll.; nisi quod, 592, R. 3; quodsi ubi, 612, R. 1.
Quodominus, 549.

Quoniam, 538, foll.
Quoque, 481.
Quot, w. gen., 368, R.; correlat., 645.
Quoties, 569; correl., 645.
Quotquot, w. ind., 246, R. 4.
Quum. See cum.

R.

Rating, verbs of, constr., 378.
Reciprocal relations, 213.
Recordor, 277, R.
Recusus, constr., 548.
Reddo, 334, R.
Refert, constr., 381, 382.
Refertus, constr., 374, R. 1.
Reflexive pronoun, 294; in subordinate sentences, 630–632.
Refraining, verbs of, 551.
Refusing, verbs of, 548.
Relative sentences, 506, 612, foll.; relative, position of, 614; concord of, 616; attraction of, 619; correlatives of, 620; relative clause, position of, 622; tenses in, 624, 625; moods in, 626, foll.; ind., 626, foll.; subj., 629, foll.; in oratio obliqua, 630; by attraction, 631; when qui ut = is, 632, 634; when qui = cum is, 635; accus., rel. and inf., 638; combination of relative sentences, 639; relative in oratio obliqua, 658, R. 1 and 2; relative represented by participle, 640, 671.
Restituo, with two datives, 350.
Remaining, verbs of, 197.
Remembering, verbs of, 375.
Reminding, verbs of, 375.
Reminiscor, 375 and R. 2.
Repeated action. See Iterative.
Representatives of imperative, 265–268.
Representation, verbs of, with participle, 536.
Requiring, verbs of, 333.
Res, use of, 195.
Resisting, verbs of, 345.
Restriction to the comparative, 315.
Restrictive apposition, 320.
Result, subjunctive of, 340, foll.;
exceptional sequence in sentences of result, 513.
Resolve, verbs of, 424, and R. 2.
Rhetorical questions, 452, R. 2; in
ordinary obliqua, 654, R.
Rideo, w. accus., 339.
Rogati, 407.
Rure, 410, 411; rus, 410.
Ruri, 412.

S.

Sacer, 356, R. 1.
Sacrifice, 403, R. 2.
Satis, w. gen., 371.
Saying, verbs of, constr., 523–529.
Sciens, 324, R. 5.
Seat of feeling, 374, R. 3.
Sed, 487.
Seeming, verbs of, 196.
Sentences, simple; expanded, 281; compound, coordinate and
subordinate, 474; copulative, 477, 
foll.; adversative, 486, foll.; disjunctive, 485, foll.; causal, 500; 
ilative, 502; object, 503, foll.; 
causal, 538, foll.; final, 543, foll.;
consecutive, 553, foll.; temporal, 
567, foll.; conditional, 590, foll.; 
concessive, 605, foll.; relative, 
612, foll.; comparative, 641, foll.;
abridged, 649, foll.
Varyation, abl. of, 388.
Sequence of tenses, 511, foll.
See. See Sive.
Showing, verbs of, with two nom., 
197; with two accus., 334; with 
accus. and infin., 526–529.
Si, whether, 462; if, 591.
Sign of conditional omitted, 600.
Silenti, 401, R. 1.
Similis, constr., 356, R. 1.
Simple sentences, 195; expanded, 
280, foll.
Simplu—simul, 484.
Simulac, 563.
Sin (minus, secus, aliter), 593.
Sì non, 592.
Sine, with abl., 418; not used with
gerund, 432.
Singular for plural, 195, R. 7 and 8.
Sino, w. accus. and inf., 424, R. 3; 
with ut, 546, R. 3; without ut, 
546, R. 3.

Sitio, with accus., 329, R.
Sive—sive, 498, 499.
Space, extent in, 335, 336.
Spì, comparative with, 399, R. 1
Specification, genitive of, 354.
Specific characteristic, 357.
Stage of action, 213.
Standard of comparison omitted, 
312.
Statuò in, abl., 384, R.
Sto, constr., 378; with abl., 403, 
R. 3.
Stultitiae est, 365, R.
Sub, in compounds with acc., 330; 
with dat., 346; with acc. and abl., 
488; comp., 413, R.
Subject, the forms of, 195; object 
for, 470; accus. subj. of infin., 
535, R.; subject omitted, 526, R. 
2; 532, R. 4; nom. subj. for ac-
cus., 528.
Subjective genitive, 361.
Subjunctive, 247; ideal and unreal, 
248; potential, 250; optative, 
253; in asseverations, 255; as imper-
perative, 256; as concessive, 257.
Subjunctive, future, how represent-
ed, 511. See different classes of
sentences.
Sublimis, 324, R. 6.
Subordinate clauses, 474.
Subordination by means of partici-
ple, 409, R. 2.
Substantive adjectiva, 199.
Substantive, agreement of attribute 
with, 285, foll.; substantive sen-
tences, 307.
Subter, in compounds with accus., 
330; with acc. and abl., 219.
Sum. See Reflexive.
Sum, with dat., 349, 350; w. dative 
of gerund, 430; with predicative
genitive, 365.
Sum qui, 426.
Super, in compounds with acc., 
330; with dat., 346; super, with 
acc., and abl., 419.
Superlative, 316; strengthened, 317; 
with gen., 371.
Supine, 435–437; accus. 436; ablat.
437.
Supplìco, w. dat., 345, R. 2.
Suprà, as adv., 416, R.; with accus., 
417.
INDEX OF SYNTAX. 383

Suus, use of, 294, 299, R.
Synesis, 203.
Syntax, defined, 193.

T.
Table of temporal relations, 217.
Taeutet, 376.
Taking, verbs of, 334.
Talis, 645.
Tandem, 645.
Tamen, 493.
Tamen, 606.
Tam quam, tam quam si, 604.
Tantä, 380; tantum abest ut, 556, R. 1; tantus, 645.
Teaching, verbs of, 383.
Tempore, constr., 347.
Temporal conjunctions for copulative, 484; conjunctions, 561; temporal relations, table of, 214.
Tempus est, 429, R. 8.
Tendency, sentences of, 340, foll.
Tenes, w. perf., part., passa, 227.
Tenses, 213, foll.; number of, 214; present, 218-221; perfect pure, 227-230; historical, 231; imperfect, 221, foll.; pluperfect, 232-3; future, 234; future perfect, 235; periphrastic, 235; active, 236; passive, 240-243; in letters, 244; tenses of indicative, 270; subjunctive, 270; imperative, 272; infinitive, 273, foll.; participle, 278; sequence of tenses, 510, foll.; dependent infinitive, 529, foll.; iterative, 568, 569; in oratio obliqua, 656, foll.
Tenus, position, 414, R.; with abl. and gen., 419.
Thinking, verbs of, 197; with accus. and inf., 526-529.
Time, accus. of, 337-8; abl. of, 392, 393; with in, 393; with ante, post, abhinc, 400, R. 3; participle, 552.
Timeo, w. dat., 347.
Tot, 645.
Toties, 645.
Totus, of space, 386; of time, 392, R. 1.
Towns, names of, 410-412.
Tranx, in compounds, w. accus., 330; with two accus., 330, R. 1, 2; w. accus., 417.

Transient qualities, 402, R. 1.
Transitive verbs, 204, 317.
Tum-cum, 364.
Tum-tum, 484.
Tuus, 299, R.

U.
Ubi, w. gen., 371, R. 3; of time, 563.
Ultus, 304.
Ultimus, 324, R. 5.
Ultrâ, as adv., 416; with accus., 417.
Unreal conditional sentence, 599.
Unus, unus omnium, with superlat., 317.
Unus, how translated, 324, R. 5; unus qui, 633.
Urging, verbs of, 546.
Usus, 390, 322, R.
Ut-ita, concessive, 484.
Ut uti, design, 545; tendency, 554; ut omitted, 545, R. 3; 579, R.
Ut qui, 627, R., 630; ut, of cause, 645, R. 4.
Ut, in explanatory questions, 560.
Ut non, 543; 556, R. 6.
Ut si, 604.
Ut quisque-ita, 645, R. 2.
Uter, 315.
Uterque, 370, R. 2.
Utinam, 253.
Utior, 405; utiendus, 428, R. 3.
Ut primum, 563.
Utrum, 460, 461, R.

V.
Vacâre, 347.
Vacuvus, constr., 388.
Vae, 340, R. 2.
Value, gen. of, 879.
—Ve, 497.
Vel, with superl., 317; vel, 496.
Vel—vel, 496.
Velle, for future, 240, R. 3; velle sibi, 351.
Velut velutiss, 604.
Vendo, 378.
Venec, 378.
Venio, with two dat., 350.
Venit in mentem, 375, R. 8.
Verb, voices, active, 204; passive, 205; reflexive, 209; deponent, 201; tenses, 213; foll.; moods, 244, foll. See Voice, Mood, Tense.

Verbal nouns, sequence after, 518.
Verb, w. gen., 359.
Verum, 484. 552; w. dat., 347.
Versi, 489.
Versus, position, 414; w. accus., 417.
Verum, 488.
Verbo, w. two dat., 350.
Vescor, 405; vescendus, 428, R. 3.
Vespertinus, 324, R. 5.
Vestris vestrum, 963, R.
Veto, w. acc., 345, R. 1; with inf., 424, R. 3.
Vid et ratione, 401, R.
Videre ne, 552, R. 3.
Vid et armis, 401, R.
Vivo, w. abl., 405, R. 3.
Vocativa, 194, R. 3.
Voice, active, 204; passive, 205.
Volens, 324, R. 6; volemus, 354.
Volo, 532, and R. 4; 526, and R. 8.
Voti damnari, 377, R. 3.
Vox, with gen., 359.

W.

Want, verbs of, 389; adj. of, 378 R. 1; 389, R. 2.
Warning, verbs of, 546.
Whither? 313, 410.
Wishing, verbs of, 532, 546, mood.

Y.

Yes, 473.
Yielding, verbs of, w. dat., 345.

Z.

Zeugma, 690.
## COMPARATIVE SECTIONS OF SYNTAX.

The numbers in the first column of each division below indicate sections in former editions of the Grammar; those in the second refer to corresponding sections in the revised Latin Grammar.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>192-8</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>250-2</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>318</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>168</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>194</td>
<td>55-6</td>
<td>253-4</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>314</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>169</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>315</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>170</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>196-7</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>316</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>171</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>317</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>172</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>199</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>319</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>173</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>320</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>174</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>321</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>175</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>203 R.4</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>263</td>
<td>121</td>
<td>322</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>176</td>
<td>379-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>203 R.5</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>264</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>323</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>177-8</td>
<td>381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>324</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>179</td>
<td>382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>266</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>180</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>269</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>181</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>277</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>182</td>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>288</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>183</td>
<td>442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-17</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>297</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>184</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>296</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>185-6</td>
<td>386-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>72-8</td>
<td>271</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>187</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>273</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>188</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>274</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>189</td>
<td>390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>275</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>190</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>277</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>191</td>
<td>392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>278</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>192 d</td>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>279</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>192 b</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>218 R.2</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>281</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>193</td>
<td>395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>283</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>194</td>
<td>396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>283 R.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>195</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>283</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>196</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>227-8</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>284</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>199</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 R.2</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>285</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 R.3</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>286</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>201</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 c</td>
<td>222-3</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>289</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>202</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 d</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>289</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>204</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-33</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>289</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>205</td>
<td>414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>226-3</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>290</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>206</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>91-3</td>
<td>292</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>207</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>293</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>208</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>295</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>209</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38-41</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>296</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>210</td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>297</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>211</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>299</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>212</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>213</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>214</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>215</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>301</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>216-7</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>303</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>217</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>303</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>218</td>
<td>427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>306</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>219</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>307</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>220</td>
<td>429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>304</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>221</td>
<td>430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>312</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>222</td>
<td>431</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Digitized by Google
## COMPARATIVE SECTIONS OF SYNTAX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>269</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>319</td>
<td>534</td>
<td>375</td>
<td>567</td>
<td>392-4</td>
<td>592 R.4</td>
<td>426</td>
<td>634-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270</td>
<td>505</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>535</td>
<td>356</td>
<td>568-9</td>
<td>395</td>
<td>597 R.4</td>
<td>427</td>
<td>636-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>291</td>
<td>505</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>536</td>
<td>357</td>
<td>570</td>
<td>396</td>
<td>575</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>537</td>
<td>358</td>
<td>573</td>
<td>397</td>
<td>605</td>
<td>439</td>
<td>639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>293</td>
<td>507-8</td>
<td>323-5</td>
<td>539</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>574</td>
<td>398</td>
<td>606</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>294</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>324</td>
<td>540</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>575</td>
<td>399</td>
<td>607</td>
<td>451</td>
<td>642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>295</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>541</td>
<td>361</td>
<td>576</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>608</td>
<td>432</td>
<td>644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>296</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>326-9</td>
<td>542</td>
<td>362</td>
<td>579</td>
<td>401</td>
<td>609</td>
<td>433-4</td>
<td>645</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>297</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>327</td>
<td>543</td>
<td>363</td>
<td>581</td>
<td>402</td>
<td>610</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298</td>
<td>514-6</td>
<td>328</td>
<td>544</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>582</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>611</td>
<td>436</td>
<td>647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>299</td>
<td>518</td>
<td>329-4</td>
<td>545</td>
<td>365</td>
<td>583</td>
<td>404</td>
<td>612</td>
<td>437</td>
<td>649</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>330</td>
<td>546</td>
<td>366</td>
<td>584</td>
<td>405</td>
<td>613</td>
<td>438</td>
<td>650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>331</td>
<td>547</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>585</td>
<td>406</td>
<td>614</td>
<td>439</td>
<td>651-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>332-7</td>
<td>548</td>
<td>368</td>
<td>586</td>
<td>407</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>440</td>
<td>653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>518</td>
<td>333</td>
<td>549</td>
<td>369</td>
<td>587</td>
<td>408</td>
<td>616</td>
<td>441</td>
<td>654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>339-4</td>
<td>551</td>
<td>370</td>
<td>588</td>
<td>409</td>
<td>442</td>
<td>655</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>520</td>
<td>340-5</td>
<td>552-5</td>
<td>371</td>
<td>589</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>656</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>306</td>
<td>520</td>
<td>341</td>
<td>553</td>
<td>372</td>
<td>590</td>
<td>411</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>657-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>307</td>
<td>521</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>555</td>
<td>373</td>
<td>591</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>445</td>
<td>659</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>308</td>
<td>522</td>
<td>343</td>
<td>556</td>
<td>374</td>
<td>594</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>446-51</td>
<td>660</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>309</td>
<td>523</td>
<td>344</td>
<td>559</td>
<td>374-5</td>
<td>595</td>
<td>415</td>
<td>447</td>
<td>661</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>524</td>
<td>345</td>
<td>560</td>
<td>375</td>
<td>596</td>
<td>416</td>
<td>448-53</td>
<td>662</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>311</td>
<td>527</td>
<td>346</td>
<td>564</td>
<td>377</td>
<td>597</td>
<td>417</td>
<td>449</td>
<td>663</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312 a</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>347</td>
<td>566 R.4</td>
<td>378</td>
<td>598</td>
<td>419</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>665</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312 b</td>
<td>527</td>
<td>348</td>
<td>629</td>
<td>379-80</td>
<td>597</td>
<td>419</td>
<td>451</td>
<td>666</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>313</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>561</td>
<td>381</td>
<td>596</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>452</td>
<td>667</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>314</td>
<td>529</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>562</td>
<td>382-5</td>
<td>599</td>
<td>421</td>
<td>461</td>
<td>668</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315</td>
<td>531</td>
<td>351-5</td>
<td>563</td>
<td>383</td>
<td>601</td>
<td>422</td>
<td>462</td>
<td>669</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>316</td>
<td>527 R.4</td>
<td>352</td>
<td>564</td>
<td>384-80</td>
<td>602</td>
<td>423</td>
<td>463</td>
<td>670</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>317</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>353</td>
<td>565-6</td>
<td>389-90</td>
<td>604</td>
<td>424</td>
<td>631</td>
<td>464</td>
<td>671</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ERRATA AND CORRECTIONS.

The following list does not embrace the more evident mistakes in the notation of quantity, nor the false references. Some of the worst errors have been corrected in the second impression.

Page 149, line 14 from bottom, read Lärisæorum.
   " 164, " 9 " " for "affected" read "effected."
   " 167, " 4 " " " effected " affected.
   " 172, " 12 " " " off " from.
   " 191, " 9 " " " ear " fear.
   " 223, " 1 " " " used to use " used, to use.
   " 224, " 17 " " " unwisely " unjustly.
   " 241, " 14 " " " Cic. " Nef.
   " 242, " 12 " top, read the eyes like watchmen.
   " 13 " " " periculō.
   " 250, " 17 " " Fam. vi. 12, 3.
   " 251, " 16 " " " what would prevent me.
   " 263, " 1 " " " Accusatives read Sentences.
   " 265, " 20 " " " sed quod " quam quod.
   " 276, " 23 " " " sumus " simus.
   " 299, " 3 " " " annis " annōs.
   " 310, " 2 " " .read which (= for it, in that it).
   " 312, " 11 " " " for " Optative Relative" read " Relative."
   " 313, " 18 " bottom, " possessat (A.) read possidet.
   " 317, " 18 " top, read optimum ita rārissimum est.
   " 318, " 11 " bottom, for " see" read " and."
   " 329, " 17 " top 2d col., " nūdātōs " read " nūdāti."
   " " 25 " 1st col., " futūrum " futūram.
   " 330, " 14 " bottom, " attractive " attraction.
   " 334, " 1 " top, " Dēmocritus read Dionysius.
   " 338, " 7 " " omit "governing."
   " 339, " 11 " " " for " Gāius " read " Gāius."
   " 350, " 3 " bottom, " = 4 = read = 4 = 4
   " 358, " 3 " " " " conventional " read " conversational."
   " 362, " 10 " top, " " tripsy " read " tetrapody.
   " " 21 " " " Sapphic (Greater) _x_, etc.
   " 363, " 3 " bottom, " the right-hand scheme of the Sapphic
   " 367, " 4 " top, " strope is printed wrong. Correct by
   " 369, " 4 " " for

   " >
   " < read ->